



4126 3187



311











Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2013

JOURNAL  
OF A  
RESIDENCE IN ENGLAND

Vol. I

پرخاله جان احمد

نوشته شما از از میرداماد که دیدم افین افین خط فخری را خوب نوشتم بودی  
 ان شاء الله بهتر از این عوامی نوشت هر جا که بایست خداوند عالم تورا مفتی کند  
 پرخاله جان امروز طوفان شیدایی است و هوا زرد و سیاه تر از پیش است و ادا دارم هر کس  
 که دور در بانه سی از احوالات و محلات زیر سر پنج نشینی که کرده  
 رفتی خوش کنی و عسرت ماننیم در غربت فدایم هر یک است باری کاغذی  
 به سپهر خاله شریف سزاوارتم در وقت کاغذ سینه است از شرم یا هر جا که ادم روانه باشد  
 در کاغذ خاجیک بکشد اردو تا بکشد کنی که در کربلا شریف سزاوارتم نه ما را خبر بگو  
 مکن کاغذ بنویس که از احوالت مطلع باشم باقی و السلام کمر افنی جمعه در مقام حال  
 محقق

FAC-SIMILE of a letter addressed to ASSAAD Y KAYAT  
 by H. R. H. NAJAF KOOLEE MEERZA

For a translation of this document, see page XVIII

Day E. Haggle Lib. to the Queen

JOURNAL  
OF A  
RESIDENCE IN ENGLAND,  
AND OF A  
JOURNEY FROM AND TO SYRIA,  
OF THEIR ROYAL HIGHNESSES  
REEZA KOOLEE MEERZA, NAJAF KOOLEE MEERZA,  
AND TAYMOOR MEERZA, OF PERSIA.  
TO WHICH ARE PREFIXED  
SOME PARTICULARS RESPECTING MODERN PERSIA,  
AND THE  
**Death of the late Shah.**  
ORIGINALLY WRITTEN IN PERSIAN,  
BY H. R. H. NAJAF KOOLEE MEERZA,  
*Son of Prince Firmân Firmân, Grandson of H. M. Fathali  
Shah, the late Emperor of Persia ;*  
AND TRANSLATED, WITH EXPLANATORY NOTES,  
BY ASSAAD Y. KAYAT.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

VOL. I.

PRINTED FOR PRIVATE CIRCULATION ONLY.

Reprinted from an original in  
the India. Office Library.

D  
975  
N319  
1839a

All rights reserved. No part of this publication  
may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system,  
or transmitted, in any form or by any means,  
electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording,  
or otherwise without the prior permission of  
Gregg International Publishers Limited.



ISBN 0 576 03479 7

Republished in 1971 by Gregg International Publishers Limited  
Westmead, Farnborough, Hants., England.

Printed in Offset by Kingprint Limited  
Richmond, Surrey, England.

TO THE RIGHT HONOURABLE

SIR GORE OUSELEY, BART.,

&c. &c. &c.

SIR,

THE affectionate terms in which the Persian Princes have always spoken of you, the inexpressible kindness which you have shown to myself, and the deep interest you take in the literature and general welfare of the East, make me fully sensible of the privilege I enjoy in being permitted to dedicate to you the translation of this Journal.

I have the honour to be,

SIR,

Your most obedient, humble servant,

ASSAAD Y. KAYAT.





PREFACE

OF

THE TRANSLATOR.

---

IT is rarely that the English Public obtain such an opportunity of learning what is said of them by the people of other nations, as in the work now presented. It is not uncommon to have European travellers in this country; but to have Asiatic travellers, men of distinction, who write their views on all they have observed, is a singular phenomenon. Such a work may teach by comparison the state of civilization to which Britain has attained; the difference between those customs which belong to its own habits and prejudices, and those which are the result of experience, convenience, and propriety. Here may be noticed the effect of manners,

customs, &c. upon the minds of Asiatics; and from this may be ascertained how this country may best exercise a moral and transforming influence upon them. And we may learn further, what a vast interest might accrue to the English nation, and what great benefits may be conferred upon the East, by visits like this, of three Mohammedan Princes of royal blood, or other personages of distinction.

Many will remember the visit which the three members of the Royal Family of Persia made to England in the summer of the year 1836. Their names were Reeza Koolee Meerza, Najaf Koolee Meerza, (Wali,) Taymoor Meerza: they were the sons of Firmân Firmân, late Prince of Shiraz and Fars, grandsons of Fathali Shah, the late king of Persia, and first cousins to his present Majesty Mohammed Shah of Persia. These three royal personages are well known to many of this country who have been in Persia.

During the reign of the late Shah, the empire was divided into a certain number of provinces, which the Shah committed to his principal sons to govern, (for he had a great many harems and sons)

on condition of their paying an annual sum to the throne. Since the time of this Shah, it has been the custom of all the princes of Persia to nominate their eldest sons as their successors to their principalities, which were almost independent. The principality of Azerbaijan, governed by Abas Meerza, and that of Fars, ruled by Firmân Firmân, were very powerful. In their provinces they acted as sovereigns, held levees, had crowns on their heads; and that the father of these Princes, Firmân Firmân, at Shiraz especially, held a magnificent court, and army, &c. with full control over the Persian Gulf for forty years, and fully expected to ascend the throne after the death of his father, may be seen from the modern history of Persia in this work. He was a Prince of a great influence in Persia, as well as the brother Shojâh el Sultané, who possessed the province of Kirmân, and was generally considered the most courageous and enterprising Prince in the empire. The first of these princes is Reeza Koolee Meerza, a man of superior talent and wisdom, who was the vicegerent of his father; the second, Najaf Koolee Meerza; and the third, Taymoor Meerza, were governors of

some districts in the principality. Najaf Koolee Meerza is a well known Persian and Arabic scholar, an excellent poet, and consulted as an oracle on many subjects, being exceedingly fond of literature. Taymoor Meerza is a celebrated warrior, horseman, and hunter : he governed Bushir for many years, and had seen many English who visited the Persian Gulf. These Princes were the first members of the Persian Royal Family that ever visited England. They were induced to take the journey by order of their father Firmân Firmân, who was taken to Teheran, and who sent to tell them that, although he was persuaded that they were ready to use all their endeavours to relieve him by civil wars, yet such proceedings were entirely against the welfare of the empire ; especially as he himself was in the hands of Mohammed Shah, who might on this account treat him in a different manner ; for Mohammed Shah had imprisoned almost all his uncles, and put out the eyes of some of them, and some of his own brothers were treated in the same manner. But, although Firmân Firmân went to war against him and fell ultimately into his hands, and was brought

to Teheran, yet he was respectfully treated in the capital, and no insult whatever was offered to him. Firmân Firmân therefore in his letters to his sons persuaded them not to go to war, but to try to find their way to England, and to solicit His Britannic Majesty's friendly mediation with Mohammed Shah on his behalf, from which he anticipated a good result by the manner in which he was treated by the Shah. The Princes accordingly were encouraged to take the journey, and had full hope that such mediation would immediately be granted. In fact, they could do nothing else, as they had only their lives left. When they arrived in the Arabian dominions, they crossed the desert to Syria, and prosecuted their journey to this country for the above-mentioned object. When they reached London, they being so nearly related to the present Shah of Persia, and on account of the friendly understanding which exists between the two empires, His Britannic Majesty, after receiving their application which proved their state and blood, manifested kindness towards them, and was pleased to settle their embarrassment through the friendly mediation with the Shah. They were entertained by the

hospitality of the British Government; and their journal is a sufficient proof of what they felt on that point in regard to England.

Najaf Koolee Meerza, (Wali,) being a person of intellectual character, a poet, and a man of observation, was the prince who wrote this journal. As to the matter which composes the work, it will be seen that it consists of three parts, viz. An account of the accession of Mohammed Shah to the throne; a journal of their voyage to, and residence in England; and their tour over land to Constantinople and Bagdad. The first is an interesting but sad picture of the state of Persia, unfolding the numerous elements of discord, and the clan-like manner of their carrying on war, &c. As to the general current of facts, it contains details that we can obtain from no other quarter, although not entirely exempt from the exaggeration so common to all Persian writings. Tens and thousands, mountains and hills, fields and paradises, heavens and earths, houris and angels, &c. in Persian composition may be used almost synonymously; and yet every Persian who hears or reads them knows how to make the necessary allow-

ance. The estimate of the number of troops in the different armies may, however, be relied on as correct.

The Second Part will however be the most interesting to the general reader, as entering into details more immediately under their own observation. This work will also be found to contain some details on the Governments, education, population, manners, customs, soil, commerce, religions, and forces of several of the kingdoms of the four quarters of the globe. The account of England is the most lengthened, in which the Prince's views and opinions in regard to this country are amply given, as also of Christendom in general; the author has even attempted to describe many objects and events with which the English themselves are quite familiar, but of which he himself imperfectly comprehended the bearings. It is in this very thing, in a great measure, that the interest of the book chiefly consists. Here may be observed those objects which most strike a stranger. Some who are acquainted with the scenes through which their Royal Highnesses passed, and were in company with them at the time, will perhaps



be astonished that they themselves saw not the same things which are described. To this it is but candid to reply, that their Royal Highnesses could not see with the same eyes as Englishmen, and, being in a strange land, their language must seem to be quite *de travers*, while yet it expresses the impressions which were made upon their own minds.

The translation of this work having been accomplished solely by myself, it may be proper to inform my readers that I was born in Syria, and for some years, by the blessing of God, received as much as could be obtained of an oriental education. In the East also, I acquired with much labour and perseverance what I know of occidental literature. My attachment to the English language was my principal inducement to acquire it. Providence favoured me with the acquaintance of several good and pious missionaries, who endeavoured in every respect to encourage and assist me in the acquisition of this language. This I value above every other knowledge of a similar kind which I possess, as through it I hope to obtain whatever information I may re-



quire in my future labours, in promoting, by all the means in my power, the Christian education of my own country-people—an object to which I humbly desire to dedicate my life and all the powers I possess. By my acquaintance with the English, I was enabled to fill the office of Principal Interpreter to the British Consulate-general at Damascus for more than five years; during which period I had the honour of forming the acquaintance of many illustrious English travellers who visited that country. I always had an anxious desire to visit England, which desire was gratified when I had the honour of joining the company of their Royal Highnesses, the Persian Princes, to this country, as their interpreter; in which capacity I also accompanied them in their whole journey, for the Arabic, Persian, Turkish, and occidental languages. Their Royal Highnesses having, on their return to the East, obtained a residence at Bagdad, through the favour of the Grand Seignior, I followed them thither, obtained from them a copy of this work, and executed the translation.

In reference to the part which I have performed in preparing this work for the English Public,

I beg to observe that I have endeavoured simply to render the Persian text into English, with the closest adherence to the original, that could be tolerated consistently with an exhibition of the meaning of the Author. I have naturally supposed that greater interest would be excited in the work, the more perfectly it should be clothed in its oriental dress. In numerous *cases* where a metaphor, or word, would have in English but a remote or no allusion to the thing intended, I have still chosen to retain the word or phrase, for the purpose of showing the Persian actual style of writing and genius of the language. The Author has also in some cases used flights of language which, in the present refined state of the English, may be considered as deficient in taste. I however have not ventured to modify them, for the abovementioned reason, but have chosen rather to annex some explanatory notes, which I hope will lead to their meaning, &c. Whatever errors, in point of fact, may be discovered in the book, I will warrant my faithfulness in retaining the meaning of the illustrious Author ; the errors are not my own.

Notwithstanding my persevering endeavours

to become master of the English tongue, still I must acknowledge that I feel I am appearing before the Public in a language which is not my own, a language far remote in its forms and idioms from the Eastern and many of the occidental tongues. There will therefore remain traces of the oriental origin of the book, other than that of its having been composed in an oriental language. Whatever may be the deficiencies of the English garb in which this work appears, I will most humbly acknowledge them; but at the same time I would plead for those gracious allowances which the magnanimous and well cultivated people of England are so readily disposed to extend to strangers. My acquaintance with the Persian and Arabic languages might afford a pledge that the work has been faithfully performed; still the style ought not to be a matter for criticism by those who have not read Persian, and I trust that my readers will not approach the translation as they would the work of an English scholar.

My friends having considered that an autograph letter of one of the Persian Princes would

be interesting, I have given one as a frontispiece, and I here insert a literal translation.

“MY DEAR ASSAAD,

“YOUR letter from Smyrna just arrived. Well done! well done! Persian writing you have cultivated very well; please God, you will still write better. May the God of the world preserve you wherever you may be, dear Assaad! There was a great storm to-day, and a cold wind, which caused us to be anxious about you. Would to God that you were not on the sea! You did not give us the details of the beauty of Smyrna. You went, and are in the enjoyment of every good society, and we remain in a strange land. May God also be gracious to us! I enclose you a letter for Shah Rookh Meerza, which you will forward from Damascus, or any other place, to him. You had better enclose it to Katchik, and urge him to send it immediately to Shah Rookh Meerza at Karbellâh. Do not forget us. Write to us, and let us know how you are going on. Peace! Written on Friday the 18th of Showal.

“NAJAF KOOLEE.”

I cannot conclude these remarks without attempting to express, however inadequately, my most humble and hearty thanks for the kindness, hospitality, instruction, and Christian love, which I have received at the University of Cambridge, and in this happy country in general. My limits will not admit of my expressing my gratitude severally to each friend in the Metropolis, Stamford, Exton, Tinwell, Bedwell Park, Brompton Park, Hemingford-Abbotts, Kendal, Liverpool, Manchester, Radcliffe, Sheffield, Attercliffe, Carlton-hall, Huddersfield, Brighton, Uxbridge, and, indeed, I ought to say, in every place which I have visited in England. But as I have received all this in the name of Jesus Christ, to whom I owe all good things, and who is the only author of happiness, Him I most humbly entreat to recompense all those who have been kind to me, and who have supported the Christian cause which I have at heart, and to bless and prosper this kingdom at large.

ASSAAD Y. KAYAT.



## CONTENTS OF VOL. I.

---

	Page
Account of the Death of Fath Ali Shah, the late lamented King of Persia; of the claim of the Royal Princes to the Throne; and of the Events in the 1250th year of the Hegira . . . . .	1
Account of the Shah's Death . . . . .	4
Account of what took place after the Shah died, and how his body was carried to Massoomi Koom . . . .	5
Account of Prince Zel el Sultan, and how he was placed on the throne, and what happened to him, &c. . . .	9
Account how Mohammed Shah became King, and overturned the Government of Zel el Sultan . . . .	11
Account of the Princes' treatment by Mohammed Shah; containing, first, an account of those Princes who had Governments in their hands, and their coming to Mohammed Shah at Teheran . . . . .	25

	Page
Account of one of the Princes, called Mohammed Taki	
Meerza Melk Arâ, and how he was treated, &c. . . . .	25
Singular account of Sheikh Ali Meerza Sheikh el Moolook	28
Account of Seif el Dawlé, Sultan Mohammed Meerza . . . . .	30
Account of Ismâel Meerza . . . . .	32
Account of Bihman Meerza . . . . .	33
Extraordinary account of Hider Koolee Meerza Sahib	
Ikhtiar . . . . .	34
Account of the Kaïmakam, Mohammed Shah's Prime	
Minister, and how he was assassinated . . . . .	44
Account of the Çastle of Ardabil, and what sort of a	
place it is . . . . .	51
Account of Zel el Sultan being also sent to the Castle of	
Ardabil . . . . .	52
Account of His Holiness Firmân Firmân, Prince of Shi-	
raz, and the Divine will respecting his government . . . . .	54
Account of Firmân Firmân's accession at Shiraz . . . . .	73
Account of Reeza Koolee Meerza's Journey to Sapha	
Karmin and Bushîr; of his return to Shiraz after the	
death of the Shah; and of his Journey with Shojâh el	
Sultané in the expedition against Irâk, &c. . . . .	74
Account of Shojâh el Sultané's arrival at Shiraz, and the	
expedition against Irâk; and the conclusion of the	
narrative, &c. . . . .	79
JOURNAL . . . . .	129
Account of Lebanon . . . . .	155
Account of Alexandria . . . . .	176



	Page
Account of Africa . . . . .	176
Account of Egypt . . . . .	180
Description of the Mails, Posts, &c. in England . . .	248
Account of the Annual Meeting of the Schools at St. Paul's . . . . .	268
Description of the Zoological Gardens . . . . .	281



SOME PARTICULARS  
RESPECTING  
MODERN PERSIA.

---

IN THE NAME OF THE MOST MERCIFUL GOD.

*Account of the Death of Faïh Ali Shah, the late lamented King of Persia ; of the claim of the Royal Princes to the Throne ; and of the Events in the 1250th year of the Hegira.*

AFTER the arrival of the great camp of His Imperial Majesty at the royal gate of Isfahân,\* orders were issued to Firmân Firmân,† the Prince of Shiraz and of Fars, to meet him there. Firmân Firmân went therefore to be honoured by the presence of His Imperial Majesty, and I,‡ by the Prince's orders, went to Bandar bu Sheher,§ to

\* From Teheran, the capital of Persia.

† This name is accorded to the successors of the Princes of Shiraz and Fars.

‡ Reeza Koolee Meerza.

§ A city on the Persian Gulf.

collect troops, that in case His Imperial Majesty should be kind to Firmân Firmân, in answer to his supplications and hopes, well and good, and this was the sum of our desires. But if, on the other hand, His Imperial Majesty should demand the remainder of the annual tribute of Fars, and on that account should detain Firmân Firmân with him, and appoint another prince to Fars, we should be able, after the return of the Imperial camp to Teheran, to defend ourselves in Fars. I went, therefore, to Bandar bu Sheher, to execute my commission ; and Firmân Firmân, accompanied by my dear brother, Hissâm el Dawlé,\* went to be honoured by the dust of the foot of His Imperial Majesty. After he arrived there, on account of the 100,000 tomans,† the balance of the tribute to the throne due and unpaid, he had some difficulty with those officers whose duty it is to look after the tribute. His Imperial Majesty, suffering daily from a sickness of long standing, with pains

\* All the royal princes have descriptive names, bestowed by the Shah, as will be seen in the sequel. This prince was known, when in England, by the name Taymoor Meerza, Hissâm el Dawlé, or Sword of the Kingdom.

† The tomân is worth about ten shillings English.

in his chest, and his disorder continually getting worse, and signs of his last end appearing in his blessed face—His Imperial Majesty being in this state, had felt tenderly towards his son Firmân Firmân, and feared lest, if he himself should die, Firmân Firmân would have some trouble, on account of the aforesaid balance due. He sent, therefore, Mohammed Taki Meerza,\* Hissâm el Sultané,† to go and secure this balance, Firmân Firmân returning with him to Fars for the purpose. Abdullah Khan, Assef el Dawlé, the Grand Vizier, was directed to follow them with 10,000 soldiers, cavalry and infantry, and four pieces of cannon, with orders that the balance of the tribute must be recovered and paid, within ten days after his arrival. If not paid, he was to inform the Shah, who would come in person with his camp to Fars. Firmân Firmân and M. Taki Meerza went and took leave of the Shah, and departed for Fars. Assef el Dawlé, the Grand Vizier, went also out of Isfahân, to prepare for his journey, that he might start ten days after the departure of Firmân.

\* Meerza, before the name, means royal prince; after the name, doctor of religion, or learned man.

† That is, Sword of the Government.

*Account of the Shah's Death.*

On Thursday, the 9th of Gemad el Thani,\* His Imperial Majesty, whose home is now in heaven, came out from the seraglio, or harem, and gave a grand audience. He at that time gave directions to the Grand Vizier for his journey, and addressed, in kind terms, all his viziers and generals, each one according to his rank. In the midst of this ceremony an attack of ague occurred to him, which obliged him to dismiss the audience. He went to the harem, took a warm bath, and had his hair cut off.† About five o'clock in the afternoon of the same day, becoming worse, he asked Aga Bihrâm one of the eunuchs, to sit behind him, as for a pillow, and he put his feet in the lap of Taj‡ el Dawlé, his favourite queen, and passed a very painful hour. He afterwards spoke to Taj el Dawlé as follows: "My days are finished, and now every one of you must think of himself." He then

\* Throughout the narrative we have preserved the dates according to the Mohammedan calendar.

† It is the custom in the bath, both in health as well as in sickness, to shave off all the hair of the body.

‡ That is, Crown of the Kingdom.

asked for bittern seed and sugar-candy, took a few spoonfuls, and lay down on the pillow with his face toward the south.\* While engaged in repeating with eloquence the good word,† he forsook the crown, left this transitory world, and chose his abode in the everlasting kingdom.

---

*Account of what took place after the Shah died, and how his body was carried to Massoomi Koom.*

After the Shah had departed from this fleeting world, the royal princes who were present, to perform his commands at that time, were about twenty in number, but all of them were under the control of the eldest, Ali Taki Meerza, Riken el Dawlé,‡ for a considerable time prince and governor of Kazween, till at last his son was appointed to that government, and he himself became one of the Shah's favourite attendants, and had the honour to be in his presence night and day, standing always

\* As well on their death bed as in the grave, Mussulmans are placed with their faces in the direction of Mecca and Medina.

† The confession, "There is no God but God, and Mohammed is his Prophet," ought to be repeated by every Mussulman while dying.

‡ That is, Pillar of the State.

at the threshold of the door, or at the opening of the tent. By the advice and consent of Allah ya Rikhan Assef el Dawlé,\* and all the royal princes and ministers of state, the crown was placed on his head, and the royal band again began to play. All the royal khans, the ministers, and the royal princes paid him the respect due to sovereignty. He well arranged and ordered all affairs, both civil and military.

From the time of this most lamentable event, the death of the Shah, no one had taken breath. For three days after it all of them continued in Isfahân. Amin el Dawlé, the Grand Vizier to the late Shah, was in favour of Firmân Firmân, and wanted to put him on the throne. He being, as was before mentioned, out of Isfahân, preparing to go to Shiraz, after hearing of the Shah's death, his troops deserted him, and he saw himself in rather a bad plight. He, therefore, came to the city, and went directly to the house of his excellency Moshtahedi Aga Seid, Mohammed Baker Reshti,† accompanied by some men to guard him, and remained quietly

\* Sword of the State. He was commander-in-chief of the army.

† The name of the chief Mulla or Mohammedan Priest of Isfahân.



and safely in his house. Prince Seif el Dawlé,\* who was the governor of Isfahân, becoming afraid of Riken el Dawlé, left the place, and went to the tribe of the Bachtari. As to Riken el Dawlé and Assef el Dawlé, the commander-in-chief, they endeavoured exceedingly to lay hold on Amin el Dawlé, the prime minister; but all their labour was in vain, on account of his being at the house of the great Mulla. On the fourth day after the Shah's death, the imperial camp, in all its former splendour, moved from Isfahân, the artillery behind the irregular troops, and the regular troops behind the artillery, and, after them all, the Royal Harem. The body of the Shah was laid on a splendid bier, and Riken el Dawlé and ministers followed behind the carriage, with Koshighji Bashi,† and all the Persian princes and soldiers, all in order, and well arranged, and passed on till they arrived at Mas-soomi Koom.‡ All the Royal Kajar§ Princes put on the black mourning dress, and creeping under the carriage where the body was, lamented and

\* Sword of Government, one of the late Shah's sons.

† A great officer in the Shah's household.

‡ Where the funeral was to take place.

§ The name of the present royal family.

wept exceedingly, and placed dust on their heads,\* until the holy body of the Shah was put into the tomb which had been built by his orders before his death. A large marble slab surrounded the tomb, on which were verses written by the Shah himself. Thus was that innocent body placed in that tomb. There was brought and put into it from the tomb of the Imâm Hossein, Lord of the Martyrs, the fifth of those who are clothed with the Robe,† some of the remains of his holy dust.‡ About 800 drachms of that dust were, during the life of the Shah, brought and put into his prepared tomb. As said a poet, “Thou hast said, let the Shah not be in the world.”

Now Assef el Dawlé, the minister, being afraid of Ali Shah, Zel el Sultan,§ was in favour of

\* An oriental custom.

† That is, the Prophet Mohammed and his family. He, according to the Persian view, was the first; Fatima, his daughter, the second; Ali, his son-in-law, the third; Hassan, the fourth; and Hossein, the fifth.

‡ The tomb of Imâm Hossein is at Kerbelâh, a place near Bagdad. Kerbelâh and Najef el Ashref are considered holy by the Persians. It is the custom of the Persians to inter their dead at these places, or at least to obtain some dust from thence, to be deposited in their tombs. They believe that the deceased are thus preserved from punishment.

§ One of the late Shah's principal sons.

Mohammed Meerza Naïb el Sultané.\* For that reason the minister did not proceed with the princes to Teheran, but remained on the tomb of the Shah, appearing as if he was devoting himself to reading the Koran over the tomb; but in heart he was endeavouring to destroy the interest of Zel el Sultan. Riken el Dawlé, and the royal princes, khans, and the rest, went to Teheran, having with them treasures and jewels, and Zel el Sultan in contemplating these diamonds, Daraï Noor, Taj Mah, and Noor Elain,† saw clearly that he had in his possession the standard of government.

---

*Account of Prince Zel el Sultan, and how he was placed on the throne, and what happened to him, &c.*

On Thursday the 14th of Rajeb Hegira, at a fortunate hour, Zel el Sultan seated himself on the throne, and held a levee. The royal princes at the capital, and generals of the army, and officers

\* The Prince Regent, and now Shah.

† Three large diamonds belonging to the crown; the first means, sea of light; the second, crown of the moon; the third, the light of the eye. The first is the largest of the three, and one of the largest diamonds in the world.

of state, and of Irâk and Mazandaran,\* all of them paid him the respect due to sovereignty, and bowed their heads to him at the levee. Coins were struck in his name, the Khotbe† was read in the mosques with his name in the prayer. Zel el Sultan now very generously began to give presents to every one of the royal princes, ministers, and generals of the army; and to the natives of Teheran presents were distributed, to each according to his state and rank. In about forty days about two kooroor of money from that treasury, the gift of God, were given to the people. He was kind to all the royal princes, and the late Shah's harem and family, and to all his subjects in general. His name rose very high in his office as a king, he also directed firmâns of friendship to be written and forwarded to all the princes that were in office, and were governors in different districts and provinces. He also directed them how to act in respect to their subjects, whom God Almighty had

\* Two large provinces of Persia.

† An oration delivered every Friday in the principal Mosques, in which they praise God, bless Mohammed and his descendants, and pray for the King. This was formerly pronounced by the Khalifs, but it is now said by the Imâms.

intrusted to their care, and that the government and kingdom should be in repose and happiness. He opened the treasures, and was engaged in putting his army in order, and collecting troops.

---

*Account how Mohammed Shah became King, and overturned the Government of Zel el Sultan.*

From the time that the pardoned Shah went to Paradise, Mohammed Shah remained in Tabriz, engaged in his own affairs. Mohammed Reeza Meerza, a prince who was in favour of Mohammed Shah, after what had taken place since the Shah's death, left all his affairs in Isfahân, and with a Tartar and four horsemen of his servants, all well mounted, left Isfahân, and arrived at Tabriz in four days, and informed Mohammed Shah of all which had taken place. Mohammed Shah, on account of the discontent of the natives of Azerbaijan, and one year's pay to his troops being now due and unpaid, and not having any money or jewels, for these reasons did not see himself in a situation to make any movements for the throne, or do any thing of the kind. But, at last, through the encou-

ragement of the celebrated Meerza Abu el Kâsseem, his minister, and through the influence of the English and Russian Ambassadors, he stood up and claimed the throne.

On Monday, the 17th of Rajeb he sat as a king ; coins were struck in his name, and his name was proclaimed in the mosques. This news reached Zel el Sultan at Teheran, but as he (Zel el Sultan) was old, and Mahommed Shah was young, he thought proper and prudent, at first, to send an envoy to Mohammed Shah at Tabriz, with a firmân of good counsel, and to put out of his head all such vain ideas. So Riken el Dawlé\* was appointed to this mission ; a very splendid suit, with fine jewels, were ordered to be sent to Mohammed Shah ; also a very friendly and kind firmân, containing good advice, was written to him. The substance of this firmân was as follows :—“ Useless trouble will be created ; what good can result from the attempt ? Out of the 5000 persons in the family of the pardoned king, some one must be the head, to take charge of the kingdom and of the family. I be-

\* This Riken el Dawlé, though he bears the same name, yet is a different person from Riken el Dawlé, the Royal Prince.

came the head, through the wish, and in the presence, of the Royal Princes, the generals of the army, and many of the subjects. Moreover all the rest of the Royal Princes are here present. In this view of the case, you have the choice before you. Banish these foolish ideas from your head, and be faithful and obedient, and the Governments of Azerbaijan and Khorassan shall be given to you and your brothers, and let us enjoy the kingdom as the gift of God together; and if you do not listen, be prepared for war, and an innumerable army will be sent against you." About 300,000 tomâns were put into the hands of Riken el Dawlé, and he set out for Azerbaijan. When he arrived at Tabriz, at first he was well received; afterwards, through the advice of the Kaïmakam, Mohammed Shah's minister, he was arrested, and orders were strictly given that no one should go to him, and that no news should be sent out. On that very day Mohammed Shah left Tabriz for Teheran, with seven pieces of cannon and 7000 men. His troops had no money, and from not having their pay and rations for a long time, and it also being winter, they had no wish or power to



start, and began to excuse themselves. Kaïmakam, Mohammed Shah's minister, with his management and address, borrowed from the Russian and English Ambassadors, who were then at Tabriz, the sum of 100,000 tomâns,\* received the said loan, gave some money for the expenses of the troops, and kept the greater part for future purposes. The troops, some of them through fear and some through hope, marched on; but the greater part being dissatisfied, were much disposed, whenever they met the enemy, to go over to them, and turn against Mohammed Shah. He left Tabriz and arrived at Ardabil, where there were two of his brothers, but of a different mother, who was of the Azerbaijan nobility. One of them was 19 years of age, and was called Kossrow Meerza, and the other a young Prince of 15 years of age, called Gihangir Meerza. The inhabitants of Azerbaijan, many of whom live in tents, were very much in favour of these two young Princes, and there was not much friendship between them and Mohammed Shah. When he arrived at Ardabil, Kossrow Meerza was there, who had been

\* See Note A.



formerly sent by the late Shah to the court of St. Petersburg, and was a very sensible and well-bred Prince, and much liked in St. Petersburg, where his portrait was taken by the Russians, and placed on many fancy articles. This fine young Prince, with his brother Gihangir Meerza, went out to meet their brother, Mohammed Shah, and offered him their services; but Mohammed Shah was seized with some foolish and unjust ideas. It entered into his mind that they were beloved by the Azerbaijan people, and he thought that they might do some mischief. This idea being continually present to his mind, he sent that very night and had these two brothers brought before him, and ordered their eyes to be put out. This was done immediately, and those unfortunate young Princes lost their eyes; moreover, they were imprisoned in the castle of Ardabil. That one should do thus for the sake of a few days of this world, will be blamed by every man, old and young.\*

After this had taken place, he left Ardabil and went to Koomshi. The Prince of Koomshi, Fathalla Meerza, could not help obeying Mohammed

\* See Note B.

Shah, who, as soon as he arrived at Zanzan, confiscated whatever property and horses Prince Fathalla Meerza had, and they were added to his own store; after which he marched for Kazween. Just before he arrived at Kazween, Manoochir Khan Koorji, who was by the late Shah appointed Governor of Rashet and Ghilan, came with 500 horsemen and joined Mohammed Shah. He also brought with him a present of 50,000 tomâns, and was very well received by Mohammed Shah.

Assef el Dawlé, the minister who was engaged in reading the Korân over the Shah's tomb at Massoomi Koom, now hearing of Mohammed Shah's movement, declared himself to be in his favour, left the prayers and reading at the tomb, and having collected from the villages near Koom, and from Kamro, and Kalamro, about 2000 men, came and joined Mohammed Shah. Thus, in a few days, two distinguished men of influence came to the aid of Mohammed Shah. He marched onwards till he arrived at Kazween, and encamped outside the town; and the people of Kazween, one after another, came and obtained employment in the camp. At last this news reached Zel el Sultan,

at that time Shah, at the capital, Teheran. He had immediately a review of his army. Thirty thousand troops, cavalry and infantry, headed by Imâm Werdi Meerza, a royal Prince, and with him a Major-general, a well known officer in the late Shah's service, were directed to march against Mohammed Shah. Soon after they left the capital, Sahrab Khan Koorji, with another expedition of 2000 men and twenty pieces of cannon, left to join the camp ; immediately after, another expedition of 3000 left the capital, headed by Kayoomarth Meerza Abu el Moolook (a Royal Prince). All these troops were paid all that was due to them, before they left, by Zel el Sultan, who paid them himself ; they were paid also in advance for future months, twenty tomâns to a horseman, and ten to a foot soldier, and to each of the generals and officers, arms, shawls, horses, and different presents, were given, according to his rank. Horses for the artillery were purchased at 50 and 40 tomâns each. Thus his army was magnificently equipped ; in truth, such a well arranged army had not for a long time been found in Persia. Zel el Sultan, with several of the Royal

Princes, and Mohammed Baker Khan, Kalâh Bashi, and brother of Assef el Dawlé, remained at Teheran. Imâm Werdi Meerza, the commander of the army, marched with them till he arrived near Kazween.

Riken el Dawlé, who was under arrest with Mohammed Shah, used to be frightened by Mohammed Shah, who told him—"If your brother should rise in arms against me, I will have your eyes taken out." Therefore the unfortunate Riken el Dawlé was obliged to write to his brother, the great general of Zel el Sultan, to tell him not to go to war with Mohammed Shah; and, through the persuasion of his letters, changed his brother's influence in favour of Mohammed Shah. Therefore, this general who is one who pays no regard to salt,\* on a cold night, when the army on account of rain and cold had removed to a valley, secretly left the camp, with ten or twelve horsemen, and went at once to Mohammed Shah's camp, going to the tent of the Russian Ambassador.

\* This phrase is in the East applied to a man who betrays his friends; and has reference to the well known pledge of mutual aid by eating bread and salt.

When Mohammed Shah heard of his arrival, he directed Mr. Lynch, his principal officer of artillery, to place four cannons against that camp, which had no man as head or chief. On the following morning, the camp of Zel el Sultan found that four cannons were pointed against them, and that their general was not to be found. While they were wondering at this, lo, a cry from Mohammed Shah's camp, from Mr. Lynch, saying, "Gentlemen, your general last night came to us, and entered into the service of Mohammed Shah ; if now you will obey, you are welcome to the service, and whosoever wishes to return to Teheran may go ; whosoever wishes to go home, let him go : if not, and on the contrary, you desire to fight, I shall immediately open upon you the battery, and beat down every one of you." These troops, seeing that their general was gone, and that there was no remedy, some of them entered the service of Mohammed Shah, some of them left for their homes, and some who had families at Teheran went there, so that, in a moment, this fine army was disbanded and scattered like the stars in the constellation of the Bear ; every one went to his place. Mo-

hammed Shah having thus obtained his end, namely victory, without fighting or trouble, became more anxious, and immediately left Kazween for Teheran. Now Abu el Moolook Meerza and Sahrab Khan the general, when they heard the sad news, each of them immediately sent and informed Zel el Sultan at Teheran of what had taken place, and waited the arrival of the then king, Zel el Sultan, with the great royal camp. While Mohammed Shah was approaching Teheran with Assef el Dawlé, he wrote secret letters to Mohammed Baker Khan, Kalâh Bashi,\* as follows, "When you arrive near Teheran you are requested to endeavour to lay your hands on Zel el Sultan, and all the royal princes, and imprison them till we enter Teheran." Zel el Sultan, when he heard of what had taken place, and having sent all his vizirs and generals against Mohammed Shah, thought of taking advice from Kalâh Bashi, as to what was to be done, the very man above-mentioned who had received the secret letters. This accursed man proposed to him, saying, Let two or three thousand men of one heart and mind be at

\* The person who commands the forts and castle of Teheran.

command, and we shall be able for two months to stand in the city against them ; in the mean time, we will write to Firmân Firmân, prince of Shiraz, and ask him to send his brother, Shojâh el Sultané with troops and cannons, &c. Of course Firmân Firmân will do so. The enemy not being prepared with provisions and ammunition will retire." Zel el Sultan, who had the intention to leave the capital, hearing the intended plan of this Baker Kkan, Kalâh Bashi, changed his intention of leaving, and remained in the city. He was advised by many others to leave the place, but he would take the advice of none other than the Kalâh Bashi, and remained ; it turned out as it is said, "If the fate comes, the eyes get blind."

The camp of Mohammed Shah having arrived near the capital, on Wednesday evening the 21st of Shabân, at four hours after sunset, Zel el Sultan, being asleep at his harem, Mohammed Baker Khan, the Kalâh Bashi, (who gave the advice,) a man without shame or blush, went into the harem of Zel el Sultan, and took him out of his bed, and had him arrested. On the following morning he went to meet Mohammed Shah, and the people went one



after the other to Mohammed Shah ; as it is said, “ Those who go first are received first.” Therefore the princes and others went out to meet and receive Mohammed Shah, and compliment him on his accession to the throne, and every man endeavoured to show himself a friend in order to gain his favour. Mohammed Baker Khan even brought with him to Nigaristan the very throne set with diamonds and precious stones that belonged to the late Shah, and every thing else that was splendid and necessary for sovereignty. The people also made, and sent to the Shah, all sorts of rich sweetmeats. Mohammed Shah arrived at that place on the 22nd of Shabân, and seated himself on the throne, all the princes of the blood, and generals, bowing their heads to him and saluting him on his accession. The unfortunate Zel el Sultan, from fear of losing his life, had no rest at all. Several ladies of Fath Ali Shah’s harem, such as Deja el Sultané,\* Fakhr el Dawlé,† were brought to the Shah, with all the treasures, jewels, crown, and the celebrated stones, Kooh Noor and Taj Mah ; and Zel el

\* Light of the kingdom.

† Ornament of the nation.



Sultan, in the greatest despondency, presented the jewels, and put the crown on the head of Mohammed Shah. Thus Mohammed Shah obtained possession of all this, without trouble or battles. So it pleased Almighty God to give to one without trouble or conflict, what others had obtained with pain and fatigue, only to be taken away from them; just as one says, "a farmer puts two hundred seeds of wheat into the ground, and not one springs up; such is the power of the firmament to operate wonderful transformations." Mohammed Shah now became very happy to see himself possessing all this without pain or trouble. Most true—"Possession that comes by itself is more pleasant than the garden of Eden, with suffering, and anxiety, and trouble." Then Mohammed Baker Khan, Kalâh Bashi, laid hands on Mohammed Giafar Khan Kashi, put him in chains, and brought him to the presence of Mohammed Shah; who, in return for the service performed him by the first, gave him liberty to take all the property of the prisoner, which was worth nearly 200,000 tomâns. At last Mohammed Shah, on the eighth, on a fortunate day, arrived at Teheran, on the great feast of the 1250th year of

the Hegira, and sat on the imperial throne, and held an audience, when the Princes, old and young, bowed their heads to him. Zel el Sultan was also brought to his presence in great abasement, and was treated with great contempt by the Shah. Indeed, such a wonderful dethronement and revolution no one had ever seen, and probably never read in the history of past ages. "As the stars of the spheres are perpetually changing, so fortune has her revolutions, and gives to whom she pleases." As to the other Royal Princes, each of whom thought at one time that his sword would reach the sky, all were now put down, and in complete subjection; and as for those that were beloved by the pardoned Shah, no one regarded them. Zel el Sultan, after the audience was over, was again put under arrest, and was allowed no will of his own. Other Royal Princes were also put under arrest.

*Account of the Princes' treatment by Mohammed Shah ; containing, first, an account of those Princes who had Governments in their hands, and their coming to Mohammed Shah at Teheran.*

After Mohammed Shah had become well established in the capital, and the Princes yielded him obedience, he obtained possession of all the jewels and treasures which had been left by so many Kings, by the Koorgané Emperors, and by Shah Rookh, and Nader Sultan ; and all sorts of valuable Indian and European ornaments and furniture. In short, he obtained possession of every thing, and every Prince bowed his head to him.

---

*Account of one of the Princes, called Mohammed Taki Meerza Melk Arâ, and how he was treated, &c.*

Mohammed Taki Meerza Melk Arâ was the oldest living of all the late Fathali Shah's family. This Prince had been for a long time Governor of Tabaristân and Astarabâd, for the late King, his father ; but now, on account of his bad health and

bad constitution, he had no wish for sovereignty, even although he was the oldest living of all, had many children, and about 20,000 men. Nevertheless, he was willing to submit to Mohammed Shah, and to favour his cause; and although he was advised by some of the nobility of that country to the opposite conduct, he would not listen, but, through the advice of Badih el Zamân Meerza Sahib Ikhtiar, sent his minister, Meerza Giafar, to the presence of Mohammed Shah. Afterwards he, with some of his sons, went to the capital, where he was very ill treated, and no notice was taken of him.

Another instance was that of Mohammed Hossein Meerza Hishmet el Dawlé, who had been appointed by the late Shah, who is now in heaven, to the government of Kirmanshow and Liristan Fili. He had a minister named Meerza Abu el Kassem Hamadâni. This minister was a friend of the Kaïmakam, or prime minister of Mohammed Shah; therefore he sent his minister before him to Teheran. The prime minister of the Shah received him very kindly, and promised him that his master, the above-mentioned Prince, should be

made Prince Regent, and that he would secure to him the favour of the Shah. The foolish minister immediately wrote to Hishmet el Dawlé, his master, and informed him of what had been promised him by the prime minister. This greedy Prince, though he had a numerous army, and his government was large, and near to the Ottoman territories, and to the Holy Land;\* and though, moreover, his father had been on bad terms with Abas Meerza, Mohammed Shah's father: notwithstanding all this, confiding in these promises, he rose, and went to Teheran alone. Even while the prime minister was alive, Bahrâm Meerza, Mohammed Shah's brother, was appointed to the government of this province, and property also was given to Bahrâm Meerza. At this time, Hishmet el Dawlé's situation was better than that of the other Princes; nevertheless, after the prime minister was killed, this Prince also became a prisoner at Ardabil.

Again, another Prince, Mohammed Taki Meerza Hissâm el Sultané, who was Governor of

\* Najef el Ashref Kerbelâh and Samerah Gazemen, near Bagdad, are the holy places or land.

Burnjood Backtiari, and Ahwaz, and Burustan Fili, was much afraid of Mohammed Shah.—However, some of Backtiari's Khans told him, that if he did not wish to remain, they could conduct him safely, with his family and whatever he might have with him, to the territories of Bagdad ; yet he chose to send his son, Abu el Fath Meerza, into Mohammed Shah's service. Afterwards he also followed him to Teheran, but soon was joined to the Ardabil\* caravan, and remained with his brothers a prisoner : his government and property also were given to one of Mohammed Shah's brothers.

---

*Singular Account of Sheikh Ali Meerza Sheikh el Moolook.*

This Prince was Governor of Tuserkan, and was disposed to make himself successor of the pardoned Shah. He had nothing of the requisites or preparation for sovereignty, except that he had a band of music, which he ordered to play also in the morning,† conceiving that he was the proper

\* Ardabil is the place where Mohammed Shah imprisoned his brothers and uncles, as will be mentioned hereafter.

† All the royal princes of governments have the band in the evening,

person to succeed his father and to possess the throne; so he collected a few men of the Zandick tribe, to which his mother belonged, and sat at home, quite in the opinion that he was a great King, very powerful, all-conquering, and was spending his money, until he heard of the majestic star of Mohammed Shah, that had appeared at Tabriz. He immediately gave up all his fantastical and vain thoughts of succession, and became perfectly obedient to Mohammed Shah; and sent his son, Nasser Ali Meerza, with two hundred horsemen, to Zenjan, to meet Mohammed Shah. When the Shah had entered Teheran, he also went there to offer his obedience and services to him, in hope that he would give him more than what he had before; namely, the provinces of Kalamro and Kalamo, which were under the command of Golâm Hossein Khan, one of the late Shah's officers, and which Mohammed Shah had taken from his hands. Mohammed Taki Meerza

as the morning band is only for the throne. This prince being also a son of the Shah, and not having any thing else but the band, thought he should become king by ordering it to beat both morning and evening, while he had not any thing else.

hoped that they would be given to him, never thinking that he also was to join his brothers in the imprisonment at Ardabil. For while the beasts were being made ready to send the Princes to Ardabil, this Prince directed 12,000 tomâns to be given to the Shah, still thinking that he should receive the above-mentioned two districts. On the contrary, mules, almost all without saddles, having been secured, for transporting the other Princes to Ardabil, he also was treated in the same manner, and at last, in this form, received Mohammed Shah's kindness.

---

*Account of Seif el Dawlé, Sultan\* Mohammed Meerza.*

Seif el Dawlé, S. M. Meerza, during the life of the pardoned Shah, his father, was Governor of Isfahân; but when the Shah died, he felt no confidence in Riken el Dawlé,† so he went to the Backtiari tribe, which gave him protection as

\* The *name* of Sultan in no wise implies the *office* of Sultan.

† Who was made Shah for the few days after the death of his father.



their guest. But after Riken el Dawlé left Isfahân, he returned thither and possessed himself of his office. When Zel el Sultan ascended the throne, he sent him a letter, in which he declared his obedience. Now when Mohammed Shah obtained the throne, he (Seif el Dawlé) wrote another letter of obedience to him, accompanied with some very rich presents worthy of a king; and, in the mean time, he directed the coins at Isfahân to be struck in the name of Mohammed Shah, and also prayers to be offered in the mosques of Isfahân on Friday, in his name.—When he received the orders of Mohammed Shah to come to Teheran, he sent letters of excuse for not being able to come. At last Mohammed Shah gave orders to Kossrow Khan Koorji to go to Isfahân, with five thousand men; and he was secretly directed by the Shah that, on his arrival at that city, he should lay hands on Seif el Dawlé, and send him to Teheran. The said Khan, according to the orders of Mohammed Shah, at once started for Isfahân, and, on his arrival there, seized Seif el Dawlé, put him into a carriage, and, with some soldiers, brought him to Teheran. Seif el

Dawlé, being the son of Taj el Dawlé, the favourite Queen of the late Shah, who had a large quantity of jewels, which had been given to her by the pardoned Shah : Mohammed Shah, in order to gain possession of these jewels, did not do any harm to her son, Seif el Dawlé, but simply kept him in the capital.

---

*Account of Ismâel Meerza.*

Ismâel Meerza, the Prince of Dogmân, was always in favour of Prince Shojâh el Sultané.\* This Prince was of distinguished courage, and also became renowned during the Russian war with Persia, on account of which he was beloved by the late pardoned Shah. At this time, as he was in favour of Shojâh el Sultané, whose arrival he expected daily, he would not submit to Mohammed Shah ; but when Kahrîman Meerza, brother

Shojâh el Sultané is the brother of Firmân Firmân, Prince of Shiraz, who was at this time making preparation against Mohammed Shah ; as, after the fall of Zel el Sultan, the opposite party against Mohammed Shah looked to Firmân Firmân as one whom they expected would at last have the throne. However, all this will be well explained afterwards, in the account of Firmân Firmân which follows.

of Mohammed Shah, was appointed prince and governor of Khorassân, and that he at this time with Assef el Dawlé had left the capital with troops for Khorassân; the above-mentioned Prince of Dogmân, seeing that these troops surrounded him in all directions, was obliged to submit, and immediately after was sent to the capital.

---

*Account of Bihman Meerza.*

Bihman Meerza, at this time Governor of Simnân, was a friend to Mohammed Shah, and also to his pardoned father. The mother of this prince had been, during the life of the late pardoned Shah, the treasurer to the late Shah, and knew all the jewels. This princess, during the time of Zel el Sultan, had, with her son, secretly written to Mohammed Shah, to prove that they were in his favour. At this time, Bihman Meerza, with some troops of his of Simnan went to Mohammed Shah as one of his party. Therefore, for the sake of his mother and the jewels which she was able to inform him of, he received some little attention.

*Extraordinary account of Hider Koolee Meerza Sahib  
Ikhtiar.*

Hider Koolee Meerza Sahib Ikhtiar was one of the great royal princes. This prince had the large government of Gulbaykan and Kalamro, and was very wealthy; his mother also was of the royal blood. At the death of the Shah, he was at Gulbaykan; when he heard this dreadful news, he opened his treasury of gold, through which he obtained the influence of many of the Backtiari Khans. Having so many millions of money, and the influence of the said Khans, it entered into his head, that as at this time Isfahân had no prince or any governor of courage to govern, and as that city is the best place in Persia, he determined therefore to collect troops and take possession of it, and attempt ascending the throne. In case he should not be able to ascend the throne, he was to write to Firmân Firmân, and offer himself to be of his party, trusting that Firmân Firmân would allow him the government of Isfahân. Thus he opened the gates of his wealth, and by the means of his letters and gold, assembled about him a large army.

In three days' time he was joined by a large number of the people of Kalamo and Kalamro ; also by the different officers of that country. The well-known Kossrow Khan, of the tribe of Backtiari Charlamank, with 4000 horse and 2000 foot, came to this prince's service. After other five days, another Khan, named Bahrâm Khan Sibah, one of the great Khans of the Haftlank of Backtiari, came to this prince with 3000 horse and 200 foot. In this manner, the prince daily received troops from Kalamo and Kalamro, which came to him in crowds. In short, in ten days' time he collected an army of 20,000 men. He then distributed to the generals and officers valuable presents, and was very generous to the troops. The 5th of Shabân was fixed for the expedition. When this prince was going to mount his horse, just as all the troops were starting, the following most singular accident happened. Some years before, a lean sickly mare had been stolen from a man in the tribe of Kossrow Khan Charlamank. The owner of the mare, just at the moment of departure, saw his said mare under a man of Bahrâm Khan's tribe ; upon which, he went to the man who was riding the mare, and

demanded it from him. A dispute arose between the two men on the subject, and the dispute was brought before the two tribes. A misunderstanding took place in consequence between them, and instantly the two tribes began to fight, and the matter became serious between them. About 12,000 men of the two tribes were immediately set in battle-array against each other, and nothing was to be seen but the dust of horses and glittering of swords. By this affair, in about ten minutes, nearly 400 men of the two parties were slain, and Bahrâm Khan himself was killed in this quarrel. Bahrâm Khan being killed, his tribe ran away, the Kossrow Khan followed them about two parasangs' distance\* out of the town, and brought back several prisoners and arms. This accident having taken place, the unfortunate prince remained in his house quite desponding and disturbed at the outrage of Kossrow Khan and his unjust tribe, and very much regretted that the said Khan had ever come to him. Kossrow Khan, after having returned from the pursuit of the other tribe, came back to the prince, saying

\* A *parasang* is a Persian measure of distance, equal to three English miles.

that he was capable of performing for the prince any services, and that he himself would undertake to do every thing for him, and that there was no necessity for having any body else in the service. The prince, on account of this dreadful accident, was obliged to put off his departure for another day.

As to the other tribe, having taken up the dead body of their chief, Bahrâm Khan, they carried it about, exposed, according to their custom, to all the tribes of Haftlank. All the Khans of the Haftlank Backtiari thereupon rose to claim retaliation, and to demand satisfaction for the blood of Bahrâm Khan. This news of the Haftlank Backtiari's claim for the blood of Bahrâm Khan reaching the inhabitants of Gulbaykan, Kalamo, and Kalamro, they became greatly alarmed, fearing, that if the Haftlank tribe should come to their country for the demand of the blood of the slain Bahrâm Khan, from the other Charlamank tribe, they would destroy every thing about them, and take all of them prisoners. The inhabitants of the above-mentioned places, therefore, seeing that the cause of all this was the presence of Kossrow Khan among them, and that he would be the cause of all

the mischief ; in order to be rid of the danger and exposure, they agreed among themselves in secret to force Kossrow Khan and his men out of the city. Thus, on that very night, before daybreak, when Kossrow Khan and his tribe were in the houses asleep, the natives surrounded them, and forced Kossrow Khan and his party out of town, and they were obliged to flee. The prince, seeing this, and that all his affairs were going badly, thought of securing the ready money he had at hand. He therefore, while this event was taking place in the city, trusted all his ready money into the hands of one of his wives, and sent her, with an old man, to a garden which he indicated to her, to dig some place in the earth, and there bury the money. His wife and the old man immediately accomplished the order, but when they came back to him, the prince was intending to kill the old man in order that no one should know what had been done, and the money be thus secure in its place. His wife, however, begged of him not to do any harm to the old man, that he might not be guilty of the sin of the poor old man's blood ; the prince then gave it up, and sent the old man about his business, after



he had strictly commanded him to keep the secret. The people, after they had settled the business of Kossrow Khan, met again to consult upon another matter, which was, that having forced Kossrow Khan out of the town, they conceived the prince would take the side of the Khan, and would be angry with them. At last they came to a conclusion upon what was to be done, viz., to abandon the prince also, and ask him to leave the place, and thus be quit of this business. So, early in the morning, they assembled around the prince's house, and sent to tell him that they were afraid of him, and that it was impossible for them to serve him any longer, and asked him to leave the place with his family at once. The prince, astonished at this demand, begged of them to give him a day's time to think upon it; they would not, but told him that he must leave at that very hour. The prince was obliged to leave with his family and a few servants, without taking with him any of the things. As soon as he left the place, these same people went into his house and plundered it. The old man, the gardener, who buried the money for the prince, and many of those who had been attached

to the prince's house, and used to serve him, were taken and threatened. At last the gardener was thrown down and beaten. Before he had received many lashes, his strength failed him, and he was forced to confess immediately. They then had the money brought, and divided it among themselves.

This prince being on his way to Isfahân, his horse happened accidentally to fall, and the prince fell with him, and was excessively injured, and hardly escaped having all his bones broken. I\* saw that prince some time ago, and, when I saw him since his fall, he was much changed, his face had five scars; when his wounds had been sewed up, he was carried like a dead person to Isfahân, and was brought to the house of his excellency the Mosh-tahedi, or Mulla, and was two months in bed. From such occurrences it might be learnt, as it is said, "Sovereignty is not gained by fatigue and labour, nor is the crown simply the reward of exertion and preparation;" and, as it is said again, "They wish to put out the light of God with their

\* See Note, page 1.

mouth, but God will perfect his light even though those who give partners to him,\* abhor it."† God had turned all preparations to vanity.

Two months afterwards, when the said prince had recovered, Firooz Meerza, Mohammed Shah's brother, was appointed to the government of Isfahân; Manoochir Khan and Mr. Lynch, with troops, were to accompany him against Fars. At the same time Firmân Firmân ordered Shojâh el Sultané, with the princes of Fars, to go with the army to Irâk.‡ When Firooz Meerza and Mr. Lynch arrived at Isfahân with 7000 regular troops, and 4000 cavalry, and 16 pieces of cannon, Prince Hider Koolee Meerza, hearing of Firooz Meerza's coming to Isfahân, left for Fars, and on his way he met the camp of Shojâh el Sultané, to whom he recounted all his extraordinary history. He remained with Shojâh el Sultané until they were defeated at Komishe. Whatever property was remaining to Hider Koolee Meerza was stolen at night by two

\* This phrase refers to the Christians; and, by extension, to all infidels.

† From the Korân.

‡ A large province in Persia; Isfahân is its capital.

of his servants, who ran away to Isfahân. The prince himself, with his three sons, went with Shojâh el Sultané to Shiraz; and when Firooz Meerza came to Shiraz, he went into the house of his excellency, Sheikh Abu Terâb, the great Mulla of Shiraz, for protection. Of course, out of respect to the said Mulla, the prince was allowed to remain safe at his house. However, a native of Shiraz, clothed in the garb of friendship, used to come often to see this prince at the house of the said Mulla. One day it happened, when this prince was sitting melancholy and absorbed in grief at what had happened to him, and vexed at being in the Mulla's house for so long a time without being able to go out of the house, this his pretended friend, companion to the devil, came to see him, and having seen the prince in that state of melancholy, he asked the prince in what way he could be of service to him, and whether he could do any thing for him. The prince replied to this accursed man, that he did not desire any thing of him, unless indeed he would do him the favour of providing him the means in some way or other to go out of town, that he might endeavour to find

his road to reach the holy land, where he might dwell and serve his God. This devil replied to him, "There is not in this any difficulty; to-morrow night I will have horses prepared for you. I," said the villain, "will lead you out of town, and will send a trusty person, who knows the road, to conduct you safe to the places you desire; I will also have some provisions prepared for you." The prince thanked him most heartily, and requested him to prepare that for him as soon as possible. The man then left the prince, and directly went to Manoochir Khan, Mohammed Shah's general at Shiraz, and informed him of all the conversation that had passed between him and the prince. Manoochir Khan was rejoiced at this opportunity, and ordered fifty men to be concealed at an appointed place in the town, where the prince would have to pass, watch the time of his arrival, and there to seize him. This wicked man then went to the prince, and told him that he had prepared horses and every thing necessary for his proposed journey. The prince thanked God and his friend, and went out with him, with his three sons, and rode upon the horses prepared by that

friend, and, leaving his refuge, came to the place where the fifty men were watching. Immediately they rose and seized him. One of his sons, however, escaped, and went back to the Mulla's house. The prince was brought to Manoochir Khan, who imprisoned him a few days in the castle of Arak Kârimkhani, and afterwards sent him to Teheran. As his family were at the Mulla's house, the Mulla sent letters of intercession for him to Mohammed Shah, that he might not be ill-treated—that the honour of his house might be maintained. No information has yet arrived of what happened to him. God knows.

---

*Account of the Kaïmakam, Mohammed Shah's Prime Minister, and how he was assassinated.*

It has been already mentioned, that after the death of the pardoned king, Mohammed Meerza, who became Shah, was then at Tabriz: and, on account of his not having the means of carrying on war, had not formed the idea of claiming the throne. But, afterwards, his Minister persuaded

and encouraged him to do so; the Minister told him privately that he hoped to be able to establish him on the throne; only, he would have him do nothing without his advice, not even to drink water without his counsel; Mohammed Shah gave him a written promise on the subject. The Minister, after taking such a word from Mohammed Shah, gave out word and writing to many in Persia, informing them that the Foreign Powers were in favour of Mohammed Shah, and that he was indeed the Prince entitled to the throne. This Minister borrowed 100,000 tomâns from the Russian and English Ambassadors, who on account of the money, accompanied Mohammed Shah in his journey. Their accompanying him proved to the Persians that it was a fact that the Foreign Powers were in his favour; and by means of the management of this sagacious Minister, the affair of Mohammed Shah was successful, and he also collected troops. Mohammed Shah was entirely in the hand of his Minister. Many of the Persians, nobility and great men, through the Minister's letters, came and joined Mohammed Shah. The coming even of Manoochir



Khan and Moatâmed el Dawlé\* to Mohammed Shah was also through the manœuvres of that Minister. The arrest of Riken el Dawlé, at Tabriz, was proposed by the Minister's advice. In short, this wise Minister had so well arranged the affair that Mohammed Shah actually sits on the throne. This Minister, in truth, was a philosopher like Plato ; he was a theologian, a grammarian, a good Arabic scholar,† and a distinguished poet. It was said that he knew 50,000 verses of Arabic poetry, with their meaning, by heart ; in fact, without inspiration from God, a man cannot become thus wise. From the time that Mohammed Shah left Azerbaijan, the said Minister had very strong influence with the Shah, insomuch that no man could see the Shah without the Minister's permission, and the Shah could not give away even a tomân without asking him. It happened once that the Shah gave a man a present of five tomâns ; when the Minister was

\* Trustee of Government, a minister of state in Persia.

† Arabic is much studied by the Persians and all Mohammedans, and especially for reading the Korân, which is written in Arabic, and ought not to be translated, as it is written in the book, " We have set it down in Arabic."



told of it he called the man who had received the five tomâns as a present, and took them from him. In this case the Minister transgressed the bounds of justice. One of his friends told him that by thus treating the Shah, by exercising over him such control, and by preventing people from going to see him, he would at last cause the Shah to be angry with him. He replied, that "This Shah is not acquainted with the exercise of sovereignty, and if I allow people of all classes to go and come to him, many things will be said to him; and if any thing were to happen to me through others, my heart would burn for the trouble I have taken. It is for this reason I do not allow others to go to him, and not from envy." At last the heart of the Shah was filled with enmity towards the Minister. There was a certain man called Meerza Agasi, who, not of family, but a common man of Erivan, yet was a schoolfellow of Mohammed Shah. From this unexpected quarter it pleased the Lord that this Meerza Agasi should begin to endeavour to persuade the Shah to take the life of his wise Minister, notwithstanding that he himself was afraid of the influence of the Minister.

This Meerza Agasi is one of the sect who embrace the opinions of the Sophites, and the Shah is also of the same sect. Day after day he continued secretly proposing this to the Shah, and in the mean time showed himself to the Minister as being a friend, while it pleased the Lord that the Minister should have no ideas of his plans. At this time the Shah ordered a firmân to be given to the Meerza Agasi, for a salary of 600 tomâns a-year. When the said firmân came to the hand of the Minister to examine it, he immediately took off the seal, and tore the firmân to pieces, saying, "These 600 tomâns might be better spent for the support of the army." This news reaching the Shah, he became very angry. A good opportunity soon offered itself to the Meerza Agasi to ask the Shah to destroy the Minister. On Sunday, the 9th of Safer, Mohammed Shah went out of the town, to the garden of Nigaristan, where all preparations were beforehand made for his reception. There he held a levee, and all the Khans and great men came to pay him their respects; and the prime Minister, as usual, came to pay his dutiful respects. After having conversed with the Shah on necessary

business, he took his leave and went home. An hour after he went, Mohammed Shah sent for him, and when he came to his presence, the Shah began to talk to him in a different language : reprimanding him for his actions. At last, the prime minister replied to the Shah, saying, “ I understand what you mean ; you will not be satisfied with reprimanding me, and with abusing me, but you would also kill me. But, allow me to say, you will afterwards repent your conduct to a servant like me, who, notwithstanding the discontent of the Azerbaijan people, and the divided opinions of Persians, and the want of money ; notwithstanding that Zel el Sultan was on the throne, and Firmân Firmân was as a king in Fars and Kirman ; notwithstanding all this, brought you out and placed you on the imperial throne. Now, without any reason whatever, do not perform such an act ; do not become guilty of the sin of my blood, which will destroy your influence among the people. Permit me also to say this ; that on the day we left Tabriz, I bought one ream of paper from the market, with one third of which, I gained for you the Persian kingdom ; the second third I intended for Turkey,

and the third for India and Europe. I beg you will allow me to offer you my services for those also." The Shah bestowed no attention on any thing that he said, but drew his dagger and stabbed him with his own hand; he immediately fell prostrate, and was carried away to another place, and at night he was beaten with the bayonets of muskets till he died. The Shah that night sent some soldiers to his house, to confiscate all his property. Thus now, the brilliant moon of the minister descended, and the star of Meerza Agasi arose. The people of the capital, hearing at night of this accident, and being very much attached to the minister, rose up, and every person in his house stood under arms. Mohammed Shah, hearing of this, ordered the cannons in the castle to be pointed against the town, and discharged. This was done till a part of the town was destroyed. On the following morning every thing was quiet again. Mohammed Shah now suspected that the arrested Princes were the causes of this tumult in the city, and he himself, in the mean time, on account of the plague in town, wanted to leave Teheran, but would not do it till he had settled the matters

which concerned those Princes. In order to do it at once, and that he might be able to go away from the plague, and by the advice of Meerza Agasi, on Thursday, the 15th of Safer, orders were given for 200 horsemen to be got ready to take the Royal Princes on mules, even without servants, and imprison them in the castle of Ardabil.

The names of the Princes who were taken, are as follows:—

Ali Taki Meerza Riked el Dawlé, Imam Werdi Meerza, Mohammed Meerza, Hissâm el Sultané, Sheikh Ali Meerza, Sheikh el Moolook, Mohammed Hossein Meerza, Hishmet el Dawlé, Ismaïl Meerza, and Shojâh el Sultané (whose eyes also were taken out.)

---

*Account of the Castle of Ardabil, and what sort of a place it is.*

The castle of Ardabil was built by Abas Meerza Naïb el Sultané. He built it very strongly, and made one narrow road to it. The water and air of this place are very bad ; no stranger could live

there. It becomes dark two hours before sunset, and the people are obliged to use lamps. Five hundred soldiers were assigned for the protection of the castle. In a month many of them died ; in fact, only the natives of that place could live there.

---

*Account of Zel el Sultan being also sent to the  
Castle of Ardabil.*

Now Mohammed Shah began to meditate in what manner he could contrive to send Zel el Sultan also to Ardabil ; for the people, on account of the former generosity of Zel el Sultan, were very much attached to him ; so much so, as to cause Mohammed Shah to think that if he were to send him to Ardabil, some disturbances might take place in the country ; also the son of Zel el Sultan had been for some time governor of Ardabil, and the people there were attached to him. For the reasons above mentioned, Mohammed Shah could not send Zel el Sultan openly to Ardabil. As to poor Zel el Sultan himself,

having been so long under arrest, and seeing what had happened to him during the course of a year, and his thoughts being very much troubled about his family, and his brothers, and the late Shah's family; all this was enough to make him ready to abandon life. At last he applied to Mohammed Shah, saying, "There is no use in guarding me in this sort of manner, either take away my life, or let me go to the Holy Land, and, as it is said, 'to thine angels who are about thy holy sacred place,' where I will spend my life." On receiving his request, Mohammed Shah granted it, and gave him permission. He immediately took away his family, and left Teheran, passed the Persian Irâk, and got as far as Hamâdan, on his way to the Holy Land. Just as he arrived at Hamâdan, he found an officer of Mohammed Shah, with 200 horsemen, and orders as follows, "Now, we do not see it fit that you should go to the Arabian Irâk and the Room dominion, you must go therefore to Moraga, where there is a place prepared for your reception, and we shall think upon what is to be done for you afterwards." The unfortunate prince was therefore taken to Moraga, and from thence he was sent to

the castle of Ardabil, and imprisoned with his brothers. "God knows the future."

---

*Account of His Holiness Firmân Firmân, Prince of Shiraz,  
and the Divine will respecting his government.*

Before the late pardoned Shah had started for Isfahân, an officer had been sent to Shiraz, with strict orders to Firmân Firmân to pay what was due to the treasury from Fars. And the late Shah's government were sending almost every day strict orders on the subject, and as the said balance rather sank, the country not being able to pay, Firmân Firmân used to put off the demands, answering the imperial messenger, "we will pay," "we will pay to-morrow," "we will see." The Shah had a strong bias for amassing wealth, which as some astrologers had said, foreboded what his fate would be. Indeed the Shah was very anxious to receive the outstanding balances of the revenue of Fars, and it was for that reason that he moved to Isfahân with the imperial camp; and strict orders were forwarded by express messengers to Firmân Firmân,



ordering him at once to appear before the throne, also to bring the balance. These orders, which came to Firmân Firmân, were written as follows, "You must come here and bring the balance; if not, the imperial camp of 100,000 men will come to Fars." Now Firmân Firmân thought that if he did not go, and the great royal camp should come to Fars, it would be a very expensive and injurious thing to that province; and, after taking every thing into consideration, he determined, for the sake of the good of the country, to go; therefore, on Thursday, the 18th of Gemad the first, he left Shiraz, City of Knowledge,\* for Isfahân, having with him his sons Taymoor Meerza, Acbar Meerza, and Shahrookh Meerza, and also his minister, Meerza Mohammed Ali. This minister was a partner with the devil, as he always treasured up something in heart against his master. Firmân Firmân, on the day he left, spent the night at his beautiful garden, which is outside of Shiraz, in order to let his family and friends, who went out with him, go back. At night he called me to his presence, saying, "It is known that from the death of Abas

\* Title of Shiraz.

Meerza Naïb el Sultané,\* as we had not been able to pay the stipulated money for the Shah to the Russians, one kars of money, His Imperial Majesty having appointed Mohammed Meerza to be Naïb el Sultané, His Imperial Majesty could not have that confidence in us which he had formerly. Abas Meerza was under the Russian influence, and we are known to be under English influence, and it is very probable that at the time when I shall be honoured by the presence of His Imperial Majesty, I may not receive attention and kindness, on account of the balances due to the Shah, and the government of Fars may be given to some other prince. These are the thoughts that have passed through my mind, and it is therefore prudent for every person to think beforehand what to do in such a case. Now, as I am going to Isfahân, you will go back and get ready to go to Bandar bu Sheher; put confidence in the English there, fortify the castle of that place as strong as you can, and collect troops. In short, accomplish as much as you can, and make as firm a stand as you can. If I receive kindness from the Shah, well and good;

\* Abas Meerza was the father of Mohammed Shah.

if not, then you will know what is to be done." So Firmân Firmân went to Isfahân, and I to Bandar bu Sheher.

When Firmân Firmân arrived at Isfahân, he had no little trouble on account of the demand of the balances. But as Shojâh el Sultané and other princes were at Fars; at last, after much discussion, and also on account of the Shah's illness, it was decided by the Shah, that Firmân Firmân should go back to Fars with prince Hissâm el Sultané as collector of revenue, in order, that in ten days after their arrival, the balance might be paid to the prime minister, Assef el Dawlé, in which case his Imperial Majesty would return to the capital. If it should not be paid, His Imperial Majesty and the royal camp would go to Fars; thus the business was settled, and Assef el Dawlé went to Fars to receive the money. The Shah having settled it so, still became every day worse and worse.

On Tuesday the 17th of Gemad the second, Firmân Firmân left Isfahân, and on Thursday arrived at Koomshi; on Friday he arrived at Æminabad; and at night, lo! Mohammed Kazim Khan, one of Firmân Firmân's officers, who had

remained at Isfahân in order to pay 30,000 to-mans, came this night and secretly informed Firmân Firmân of the Shah's death. He himself had been plundered at the camp at Isfahân, but having a very good horse, had been enabled to escape to Firmân Firmân, and informed him of this sad and most lamentable news: he was exceedingly grieved at the news of this irreparable loss to all Persia. Now Hissâm el Sultané's men being almost all Backtiarines, Firmân Firmân did not think it prudent to let the news be known, lest some mischief might arise by means of the troops of Hissâm el Sultané. So Firmân Firmân the same night sent to ask Hissâm el Sultané to come to him, saying that something had occurred to him which made it necessary that Hissâm el Sultané should go in person before the imperial throne; and the report is, that when he had come to him to learn what it was, he secretly informed him of the Shah's death, and asked his opinion on the subject. Hissâm el Sultané replied, "the eyes of all Persia always looked to you, Firmân Firmân, and all the royal family are under your wishes; now, if it pleases your Holiness, I should

feel honoured in being permitted to remain in your service, and to do any thing you may command me." Firmân Firmân told him, "You had better go to your government, because there you will be able and ready to offer better services." He then gave his promise to be faithful to Firmân Firmân, took his leave, and departed.

Firmân Firmân left this place, and travelled till he arrived at a place called Ized Khast, on the confines of Fars; he ordered all the Princes and officers who were with him to come to his presence; he then informed them of the news, and desired each of them to take the matter in consideration, and to let him know their opinions on this subject as to what was the best to be done. Some said, "Let us go back to Isfahân, and have the imperial camp disbanded, and take possession of that city, where we will think on other things; and may the will of God be done!" Some expressed a different opinion: "Let us remain where we are; send orders to all Fars, to collect troops; and call Shojâh el Sultané from Kirman, and go to Isfahân, and get possession of Irâk." Others said, "Let your Holiness, Firmân Firmân, go to

Shiraz, and send the other Princes with a few men to Koomshi, to take the opinion of Amin el Dawlé, and, if possible, to get possession of Isfahân, and let your Holiness know the result."

Now Firmân Firmân, in answer to their suggestions, replied as to the first proposal, "If we go back at this moment to Isfahân, while Fars, our own country, is not in order, our affairs from both sides will go wrong ; but as now all in Persia have confidence in Amin el Dawlé, the best is to ask his opinion, for without his advice we had better do nothing. As to remaining here and sending for troops, would be imprudent, for what preparation have we for war ? As to sending the princes without force, God forbid ! if there should be any adverse occurrences, it will be a very disgraceful business that, at our first movement, we were driven back. It appears to me, that the best way is to go to Shiraz, which is our home, and arrange the affairs of our own country, and have every thing ready for gaining other places."

The council declared his opinion to be the best ; he left that place and arrived at Sofaâ, where my brother Wali, who was at this time, by order of

Firmân Firmân, governor on the confines of Fars, came to him with some troops. When he heard from him of the dreadful news, he remained in the service of Firmân Firmân, by whom he was treated with much kindness; he was appointed to command the guard of Firmân Firmân on his journey.

The prince was expecting day after day to hear from Amin el Dawlé, a minister who kept delaying and delaying, and sent no letter of any kind. At last, Firmân Firmân appointed Shah Rookh Meerza to go to Kirman as governor. He wrote to the governor of that place, his brother Shojâh el Sultané, telling him, that the present is no time for pleasure, and to collect all the troops of Kirman and Listan, and to come here. He sent besides a messenger to Mocareb el Khakân Aga Baker Khan, a great officer of his, and his agent at Shiraz, and informed them of what had taken place, and told Baba Khan to do whatever he thought best. When his agent was informed of the news, he kept it to himself; he prepared the town, and had every thing well arranged, and prepared the palace for his reception, and ordered



all the nobility and great men of Shiraz out to meet his royal highness.

Thursday, the 27th of Gemad the first, Firmân Firmân entered the city of Shiraz; some people of sense, who went out to meet him, by seeing him in a black dress and with narrow cloak,\* understood the reason. But some of the low people of the town, getting up rumours among themselves, caused some trouble, but when Firmân Firmân entered the city every thing became quiet again. On the next day, his holiness held a levee, and received all his officers, ministers, nobles and merchants, and paid them great attention, inquiring after their health; and the people were very happy and very contented. He also gave orders for every thing concerning the city's tranquillity, so that every thing should be better for the people than in the time of the lamented Shah, and every man minded his own affairs.

Friday the 3rd of Shabân was appointed for his ascending the throne, and on that day all his ministers were engaged in preparing every thing for the new sovereignty. Firmân Firmân was

\* A part of mourning dress.



expecting night and day to hear from Amin el Dawlé, and from Prince Shojâh el Sultané. As to Shojâh el Sultané, before this, when he heard of the Shah's coming to Isfahân, he had sent an express messenger to that city to learn the news, and what was going on. When the Shah died, the said messenger started for Kirman, to give the news to Shojâh el Sultané, and on his way he met Firmân Firmân at Safad, just at the moment that Firmân Firmân was ordering Shah Rookh Meerza to go to Kirman, to call Prince Shojâh el Sultané to him. The messenger was therefore ordered to accompany the said Shah Rookh Meerza with fresh letters on the subject. Shah Rookh Meerza with the messenger took his leave, and arrived at a place called Castle of Bazem, where he found Meerza Mohammed Kâsseem, a nobleman of the country, with some Turkish troops, creating some disturbances. Shah Rookh Meerza seeing this, stopped where he was, and sent to inform Firmân Firmân of it, and in the mean time forwarded the despatches by that messenger to Shojâh el Sultané at Kirman; when the messenger arrived at Kirman,

and Shojâh el Sultané learned the sad loss, he was greatly grieved, and immediately began to set all matters in order, by preparing troops and other things.

Shojâh el Sultané ordered at the same time the mint to strike coins in the name of Firmân Firmân, and the Khotbé also to be read in the mosques in the name of Firmân Firmân. He made ready one thousand of the new Tomâns, with some rich articles, to be sent to Firmân Firmân as a present, with compliments on his accession to the throne, and answers to the despatches; the substance of his humble letter to Firmân Firmân was as follows:—"Thanks be to God Almighty, who always has bestowed his past, and will bestow his future mercies, in regard to His dispensation of the sovereignty of Irân,\* which he has always bestowed upon the most worthy, and never more so than in bestowing it on your holiness, King of the earth, for whom I give my soul a ransom, and not only myself, but all the family of the pardoned Shah. Moreover, none of the Persian Princes can be otherwise than

\* The Persian name for Persia.

most happy at your accession, and ready to obey your imperial commands. I am also in hope that through the aid of Almighty God, before long the Emperor of China and the Cæsar of Room\* will behold the light of the threshold of your Majesty's presence. As to your Majesty's most obedient humble servant, which I have always been, having always depended on your Majesty's kindness, and still am ready to obey my lord the Sovereign, in any command to any part in Persia, although I am the least of the slaves of my Lord the King; I trust that with the troops of Kirman Sistan Khorassân, I shall be able to go up against Room, and the sword will shine like the sun."

He sent the said letter with the presents to Firmân Firmân, and on the other hand he consulted with his celebrated wise minister, Nazâm el Alamâ; and by his advice every thing was arranged in perfect order: "and whatever ornamented the kingdom were the conceptions of his mind, and Plato might pass for having been one of his disciples."† It was by the advice of that minister, that

\* Rome is pronounced Room in Persia. The Cæsar of Room is a common expression applied to the Sultan of Constantinople.

† A Persian poet, describing extraordinary skill.

it was thought proper that his eldest son, Holacukhan, with ten thousand men, should go to Yazed, which was immediately put into execution.

When Holacukhan approached Yazed, the people, who had at this time Seif el Moolook Meerza, son of Zel el Sultan for Governor, asked him to leave the place, which he did, and went to his father at Teheran. The nobility and principal men of this place went out to meet and receive Holacukhan; he arrived at the city and entered the castle called Naren, which is known also by the name of prison of Alexander. As soon as he arrived there, he lost no time in performing his duty; he fortified the outside of the town, settled the surrounding country, and directed coins to be struck in the name of Firmân Firmân, and also prayers to be offered in his name in the mosques; and he made ready one thousand pieces of the new tomâns, with other worthy presents, and sent them, accompanied with a letter as follows; "Through the mercy of the Lord, I am in possession of the government of Yazed, where with all joy my King is recognized as Emperor. I have an innumerable army, and if my Sovereign

Lord should be pleased to order me to go and take possession of Isfahân, I am ready to do so; and in a very short time the coins and prayers of Irâk also will be in the name of your Majesty."

After the said presents and letter had arrived to the place of the foundation of justice, an answer to the letter of Holacukhan was sent by Firmân Firmân as follows: "We will give no orders at present, till I shall have received word from Amin el Dawlé; you, O! son, are not allowed to proceed at present. Remain at Yazed, and endeavour to arrange every thing rightly in that country, till further orders." A rich present, as a royal gift, was sent with the letter to Holacukhan.

Prince Wali was appointed to the confines of Irâk. It has been previously mentioned that Shah Rookh Meerza remained at the Bazem Castle, on account of Meerza Mohammed Hossein Khan's disturbances, and had applied to Firmân Firmân to know what to do in this case. When Firmân Firmân was informed of the matter, he became very angry with those Turks that created the disturbances. Prince Wali at this time hearing of these same disturbances, of course found it necessary to take strong measures against those

rebels, and to have them punished ; lest by degrees the evil should grow worse, and it was important to seize those who caused the disturbances and have them well punished. Prince Wali was at the same time directed to finish the matter, and to remain at Abaren to guard the confines ; also, to keep up frequent correspondences with Amin el Dawlé at Isfahân, and by express messengers to inform his Holiness Firmân Firmân of any new event that he might hear of from Amin el Dawlé, and of every thing else. Wali was very strictly ordered not to move to any place without Amin el Dawlé's direction, not even if he should be invited by the inhabitants of Isfahân. In fact, in every thing he must attend to Amin el Dawlé's directions. Wali, therefore, left Shiraz on the 10th of Rajeb ; and before he arrived at the appointed place, on the very night of his arrival at the Castle of Bazem, which was at this time besieged by Ali Khan, Mohammed Hossein Khan, and by the brothers of Meerza Kâsseem Khan, he immediately ordered the troops to fire upon them, and in a short time he obtained the victory ; many of the opposite party were killed, some were taken prisoners, and the rest had the good fortune to save themselves by

flight. Thus did my brother bring the affair to a termination, and took possession of the castle.

The inhabitants of Abarkoo sent to offer him their obedience. Shah Rookh Meerza now went to Abarkoo, where also the natives yielded him obedience ; but, about the same time there was a Khan called Hassan, Khan of Bachtiary, who began to create a tumult in the town, and at last succeeded in making the people rise up against Shah Rookh Meerza. When Shah Rookh Meerza became acquainted with the fact, he called the said Hassan Khan to his presence, and began to address him, reprimanding him for causing such troubles in the place, and daring to take so much upon himself. The Khan, in the presence of Shah Rookh Meerza, laid his hand on his sword, but Shah Rookh Meerza was not taken unawares, his gun being in his hand, he immediately discharged it, and the ball went through Hassan Khan's shoulders, and he fell down dead. Hassan Khan's men were standing outside of the door, trying to get in, but the Prince's attendants forced them away, killed some of them, and the remainder were obliged to flee ; so Shah Rookh Meerza had complete possession of the



town again, taking about twenty prisoners of the wicked Backtiarians.

As to Prince Wali, he, according to the sublime orders he had received, used every day to write to Amin el Dawlé, asking his opinion as to what was to be done. But he received scarcely any answers from Amin el Dawlé; and, if occasionally he wrote him a letter, he only spoke after this manner: "You have nothing better to do than to guard the boundaries. Keep all the roads safe, and have all the country in tranquillity. All the Persians look to you; there is no necessity for going to war; the time is not come for movement, for it is the winter season, and grain is scarce, and if you should determine on coming to these parts, the people on account of their not having provisions to offer you, and because of the winter season, will be opposed to you. I do not think it at all proper for the Prince to move at present."

All the excuses and reasons that he wrote gave us to understand that on account of Zel el Sultan being on the throne, he had changed his opinion in regard to this Government. I give now the reasons of this change. Before the death of the



late King who is in heaven, there was much misunderstanding between Zel el Sultan, and Amin el Dawlé. Yet after the death of the King, Amin el Dawlé was at Isfahân, and all his family and relations were with Zel el Sultan at the capital, in all nearly 500 persons. He at this time thought that he should not see them again; but when the Princes arrived at Teheran, and Zel el Sultan learnt that Amin el Dawlé was remaining at Isfahân, and gave up the service, Zel el Sultan now paid all kindness and attention to Amin el Dawlé's family and relations; moreover, he ordered 5000 tomâns to be given to them as presents, and allowed them to have the use of his own mules, that they might have every thing agreeable on their journey to Isfahân. With them he sent a letter to Amin el Dawlé, as follows:—"You have offered very great services to this Government, with which you always have stood in high credit. You and your descendants ought always to be honoured by the successors to the throne; you also are one to whom the favour of Government will always be extended. We now, according to your requests, have granted permission to your family and relations to go to you to Isfahân. Whenever you may be disposed to perform

the service, the honourable office of prime minister shall always be at your disposal; you will always be regarded just as you were during the time of the pardoned Shah. The respect shown to you will never be less, and as long as God Almighty preserves this government, you shall always be what you have ever been."

When Amin el Dawlé received from Zel el Sultan such a letter of kind promises, he was distracted between the two parties of Zel el Sultan and Firmân Firmân. So he thought that it was best for him to remain at Isfahân, and preserve the friendship of both of them. But he was forgetful of what is said, "Love must be to one." In such attempts to serve the two parties, the interest of the two parties was destroyed, and a third came to the sovereignty.\*

On account of Amin el Dawlé's former letter, the expedition towards Irâk was put off till Nawab Solimân Meerza brought the news to Fars of Mohammed Shah's victory over Zel el Sultan. Soliman Meerza is a very courageous prince, and had always from his heart a great predilection for Firmân Firmân's government. When Mohammed

\* Mohammed Shah.

Shah came to enter Teheran, Kalâh Beyî opened the gates that the Royal Princes might go out to meet Mohammed Shah. This Prince Solimân Meerza went out of the town with a few of his servants, as if he were going to meet Mohammed Shah, but as soon as he was out of the city, he took another direction toward Fars, and arriving at Isfahân, informed Amin el Dawlé of what had taken place. He did not obtain any decisive direct words from Amin el Dawlé, and left Isfahân for Shiraz, at the time that Wali and Shah Rookh Meerza were on the confines waiting for news and fresh letters from Amin el Dawlé. When therefore Solimân Meerza came and informed them of all that had taken place in Teheran, and of Mohammed Shah's victory, and of the fate of Zel el Sultan, Wali immediately sent an express messenger to Shiraz, informing Firmân Firmân of the news; afterwards he himself, with Solimân Meerza, went to Shiraz.

---

*Account of Firmân Firmân's accession at Shiraz.*

As Firmân Firmân was the eldest son of the late Shah, had been forty years the Prince of

Fars, had well governed that province, and had always been mild to the people, by whom he was very much beloved; therefore he had very strong grounds for expecting to obtain the succession. As to Shojâh el Sultané his brother, he was well known for his courage and generosity.

On Friday, third of Shabân, at a fortunate hour, he ascended the throne, and all the nobility, gentry, generals, officers, old and young, complimented him on it, and were excessively rejoiced at his succession. The coins were struck, and the prayers of Fridays were offered in the mosques, in his name. He bestowed gifts upon all the ministers, and officers, &c. and he also received professions of submission and presents from different parts.

---

*Account of my own Journey to Sapha Karmin and Bushir; of my return to Shiraz. After the death of the Shah; and of my journey with Shojâh el Sultané in the expedition against Irák, &c.*

It has been already mentioned, that formerly when Firmân Firmân went to Isfahân, I was or-

dered to go to Bushir,\* that in case any change were to take place in regard to Firmân Firmân, we might be able to defend ourselves, and our strength be maintained by some power. From the time of taking my leave, I journeyed till I arrived at Dalki. There I found Meerza Ali Khan, a minister of my brother Taymoor Meerza, then governor of Bushir. This minister informed me, that Gimâl Khan Rashini would not pay what was due from him to the government, and that he had come there to settle that business, and asked my opinion on the subject;† then he gave me his advice, that I had better first go to the province of Gimâl Khan Rashini, and settle the affairs of those parts, and recover the revenue due. This I regarded as very good advice, therefore with the troops I had, I went to Ahrem, where I spent five or six days in order to collect other troops. Here my troops amounted to the number of 12,000. Some of the Backtiary's and Elliat's Khans came with some troops into

\* Abbreviation of Bandar bu Sheher.

† This is an instance of Persian politeness. The minister first asks the prince's opinion on the business on which he was engaged, and afterwards gives his own.

my service. With 15,000 troops I marched against Gimâl Khan. The mother of Abdalla Khan with 2000 men came and joined my camp. We continued marching towards Kalâhkahi the castle of that Gimâl Khan. When the said Khan and his followers were informed of our expedition, they brought all their wealth into their castle, and fortified it in hope to render it impregnable. When we arrived there, all the country about submitted to me, except Gimâl Khan in the castle. Some other forts about them, I have put down, except that where Gimâl Khan remained in the castle. Now those that were with Gimâl Khan, seeing our force, came out of the castle to us, and abandoned Gimâl Khan. He now seeing his weakness, sent me letters begging pardon. But I, in order to excite the fears of all in that country, and to show our force, thought best to take possession of the castle by force and not by surrender.

While all this was going on, not aware of the Divine dispensation, Mohammed Saadee Khan, son of Hossein Kolee Khan, who was one of my governors at Mahal Kisht, came and informed me

secretly of the melancholy occurrence of the death of the pardoned Shah; and of the return of Firmân Firmân from Isfahân to Shiraz. When I heard this most afflicting news, I was nearly out of my senses, but at last I began to think on what was to be done.

In the mean time, I kept the news to myself, because if the different tribes of people who joined me were to hear the news, they might create some mischief. At length I asked the head chiefs who were with me to come to me, and told them, that I had been informed that Gimâl Khan was preparing to run away that night, having sent all his wealth to some village, and that if he should succeed in his escape, then all their labour would be in vain. But as they had done me good service, to reward them for it I allowed all his property to be plunder and spoil for them. They therefore might have permission to go and watch the roads, and try to seize him. They therefore left me, and I with my own troops took the direction of Bushir. When I arrived at Bushir, I sent an application to His Holiness Firmân Firmân to learn his sublime orders. His high orders



reached me, commanding me to come to Shiraz, that I might get ready to accompany Prince Shojâh el Sultané to Irâk. At the same time, he was pleased to appoint me Firmân Firmân, (a Prince of Shiraz,) and bestowed upon me the seal of that Principality, and sent me a Royal robe. I did not think it necessary to put on the Royal robe, nor to use the seal, but watched the arrival of a better opportunity.

In accordance with his orders I arranged what was necessary at Bushir, but when I was starting for Shiraz, news reached me, that Khan Ali Khan Ristinci had collected about him about 6000 or 7000 horsemen and footmen, with which he began to create disturbances, and was marching against the castle of Kalikan, the people of which from fear had left it for Bushir. When I heard of this revolt, I marched thither, and drove him away, and quieted that country. About the same day my brother Taymoor Meerza was hunting, and while he was going to enjoy his game at Kerdoon, Wali Khan, another rebel, with his tribe, went out to plunder. When my brother Taymoor heard of it, he left his game and went at once



against him. The Khan had met a flock of sheep which he plundered; my brother reached him at the same time. A battle took place between them; the Khan was beaten and driven to the mountains, whither Taymoor Meerza followed him till he destroyed his whole force. I by accident on my way met Taymoor returning, and he went with me to Shiraz, and had the honour to be admitted into the presence of his Holiness Firmân Firmân. We informed him of every thing that had taken place. I found his Holiness complaining of the delay of Shojâh el Sultané, and the want of news from Amin el Dawlé.

---

*Account of Shojâh el Sultané's arrival at Shiraz, and the expedition against Irâk; and the conclusion of the narrative, &c.*

It has been already mentioned, that Firmân Firmân had sent orders to Shojâh el Sultané, at Kirman to Shiraz. Firmân Firmân, on account of the delay of Shojâh el Sultané, began to think that there was no person at Kirman qualified to take charge of the business at Kirman and Listan, he therefore appointed Feroog el Dawlé for Kir-

man, in order that with Nazâm el Alamâ, the vizir of Shojâh el Sultané, they might exercise the government there, and Shojâh el Sultané in this case would be able to come immediately. When Feroog el Dawlé arrived there, Shojâh el Sultané had left for Shiraz.

On Friday, the 15th of Shabân, Shojâh el Sultané had the honour to come into the presence of his Holiness Firmân Firmân. A few days before this, news had come about Zel el Sultan's dethronement, and the victory of Mahommed Shah, and his accession to the throne at the capital; at the same time Amin el Dawlé, at Isfahân, seeing what had taken place in the capital, began to write to Firmân Firmân, urging him to send Shojâh el Sultané to Irâk. Almost every day couriers arrived with letters from Amin el Dawlé repeating the same thing, and adding, that on Shojâh el Sultané's arrival, many troops would come to him from Mazandaran, Khorassân, and every where; and that in case he came, there was no necessity for any large number of troops to be with him.

After the month of Ramazân was past, Shojâh el Sultané was directed to proceed to Irâk, accord-

ing to Amin el Dawlé's proposal, having with him 2000 cavalry, two regiments of infantry, and four pieces of cannon. I and my brother Wali were directed to go and enter the service of Shojâh el Sultané. I was appointed to the cavalry, and my brother Wali to the infantry. It was also ordered that 1000 musketeers and 5000 infantry of Yazed and Kirman should follow after us. Solimân Meerza was also directed to accompany the expedition.

We left Shiraz, and spent two days outside of the town in the garden of Firmân Firmân, in order to be ready. On the 5th of Shawal we marched, and that night arrived at Zirkân. From this place every man had carried what he could take under him, of provisions, &c. Also, about 10,000 mules and camels were loaded with provisions, &c.

This year, on account of the extraordinary winter, the snow had fallen so deep as to render the roads almost impassable, and we had rain almost every day. But Prince Shojâh el Sultané, with his usual smooth tongue of persuasion, disposed the army more willingly to serve, and to march if the mountains were all of fire instead of snow. His

affability made the troops regard the noise of firing and battle as if they were but the sound of a harp or a lute. One day was spent at this place in order that the servants, who were to follow us, might arrive. On the following day I rose up early in the morning to see how the camp was disposed. It appeared as if it would be a rainy day, but Shojâh el Sultané was determined to de-camp, even if fire should come down from heaven instead of water, and would not countermand his orders. On this rainy day, myself and my brother Wali gave directions for starting. Shackralla Khan, an old officer in the service, was very expert in his duty. So one hour after sunrise, in the midst of snow and rain, we started from Zarkan. After travelling several hours, and the snow and the rain falling so much that the plain between Zirkân and Palkân became like a sea, and it became so bad that the horses sunk to their bellies, all the cannons stuck in the mud, many animals had broken down with their loads, and the soldiers were failing. In this painful manner every one was endeavouring to pick out his road. Yet Shojâh el Sultané remained still as firm as ever, and

regarded the rain and snow as if he was amusing himself in a fine garden of roses. The army was on this day nearly destroyed by cold. In all we travelled that day five parasangs, till we came to a ruined village near Komestic, where we encamped. All the army had been dispersed on different roads, but at last all re-united at this place. Twenty-two men had died of fatigue, cold, and rain. Fifty horses and much property was also destroyed. As it is said, "If fate decrees, we are straitened in the land; and if fate decrees, our sight is blinded." In short, there was great confusion in the camp. At this ruined place, no provisions or shelter could be found, and we spent a very bitter night. On the following morning I was directed with Shakralla Khan, to remove those persons who had died, and to bury them, which I did. There was also some trouble in visiting the sick men, and in bringing up what was left behind; however, after I had arranged what was necessary, I came to Shojâh el Sultané to receive his orders. He ordered that on the following day we should go to Simnah. Wali was directed to proceed before us, in order to secure provisions; but on account of the scarcity of

this year, as the locusts had eaten all vegetation, and provisions were very difficult to be found, Wali with great trouble was able to obtain some.

We left Kamnarl and arrived at Sewanah. There for want of provisions, some quarrel arose among some of the troops in the camp. Shojâh el Sultané punished them. At this place, letters were received by an express messenger from Amin el Dawlé urging Shojâh el Sultané to come. Answers were returned by the same messenger. On the following day, I was directed to start with the artillery by the road of the river Kamin, and Shojâh el Sultané was to take the mountain road. The upper road was so bad that we did not arrive at Kamin till one hour after sunset, although the distance was not above three parasangs. I was obliged to draw the gun carriages through the water, which caused me much trouble. It took four hours' time to draw them through the water. The artillery horses being broken down in strength, my own led horses and the horses of some of the men with me, were ordered to be put to the cannon, and the men went on foot. We had a day of excessive fatigue; at last with very great trouble, and travelling till two

two hours after sunset, we arrived at Karmin. There I asked Shojâh el Sultané what were his orders ; he said, that at all events we must start the next day, and that I was to conduct the artillery to Em el Nebi, and that we must be there in the following evening. This night also we had no proper provisions. On the following day we left Karmin, and with great difficulty I brought the artillery to the appointed place. There Shojâh el Sultané, instead of provisions, gave the troops money. On the following day, we left Meshhed Em el Nebi, and marched five parasangs, or hours, till we arrived at a caravansara, where we were able to give our people some provisions. It was so cold, that the people suffered beyond measure. We left this caravansara on the following day, and arrived at another caravansara in the evening, where my brother Wali had obtained some good provisions ; many of our men died of cold and from want of provisions. We left this place and came to Sormae. My brother Wali at this time was at Abadel, where he received an express messenger from Amin el Dawlé with fresh letters. On receiving them, he immediately despatched the same messenger with



the letters to Shojâh el Sultané. On that night, Prince Shojâh el Sultané did me the honour to visit me in my tent, while I had the book of Hâfez \* in my hand, reading, and at the same time considering within myself on our affair, and what might be the end of all our business. The Prince did but desire me to take an omen by opening the book of **Hâfez**. I did, and fell upon the following couplet:—"O my heart! would that some one might come, bearing glad tidings, like the breath of Christ, on his sweet tongue." Shojâh el Sultané at once called one of his servants, and told him to go out and bring in the Tartar of Amin el Dawlé. The servant went out, and immediately, by accident, found out the above-mentioned messenger of Amin el Dawlé, that Wali had despatched from Abaa, and who had just arrived. The servant brought him to his master, who was exceedingly surprised to find the couplet corresponding with the fact, that is, that the couplet meant a messenger from some person; while, in fact, a messenger was on the way from a person that they very much wanted to hear from. The letters of Amin el

\* The celebrated Persian lyric poet.



Dawlé were immediately opened, from which they learned that Ferooz Meerza\* and Manoochir Khan, with 12,000 cavalry and eighteen pieces of cannon, had left Teheran against Fars. Their advanced guard, consisting of five regiments of artillery commanded by Mr. Lynch, five regiments of infantry, and 2000 cavalry, had already arrived at Kord. He advised them, therefore, to do their utmost to come as soon as possible to Isfahân, telling them that they would be joined by many troops. Prince Shojâh el Sultané ordered us to get ready, and immediately we started. On that day we came to Abada. It has been already mentioned that Hider Koolee Meerza, of Gelbaïcan, came to Isfahân, and took refuge in the house of Mulla Haji Mohammed Baker. This Meerza having now heard of Mohammed Shah's expedition, his suspicions and fears were raised, and he left Isfahân for Fars. He met us at Abada, and informed Shojâh el Sultané of all the news, and remained with us three days. On the second day Solimân Meerza was directed, with 200 cavalry, to

\* Mohammed Shah's brother.

proceed as a pioneer guard, that he might be able to inform us daily of every thing he might hear.

After spending three days at Abada, Shojâh el Sultané departed with the army, and we came to Ized Khast, where he was informed by an express messenger from Amin el Dawlé, as follows :—" Mr. Lynch with his army is arrived near Soodee Abad of Isfahân, and it appears that for some reasons he is not coming to Isfahân, but is going at once to march to meet Shojâh el Sultané. Ferooz Meerza also, with Manoochir Khan and their army, have arrived at Moorch Kord. Seif el Dawlé, the governor of Isfahân, could not but obey orders, and is gone with his artillery, accompanied by his minister Allakbar Khan, against Shojâh el Sultané. They have taken the road of Sharhootel. It is not therefore your interest to meet them in battle, because, first of all, their artillery is inferior to yours, and if they should be defeated, they have at hand such places as Koomshi and Isfahân, and Firooz Meerza is in most complete preparation at Isfahân, where he is able to stand a year. But as Shojâh el Sultané, not having any provisions, could

not stand two days, in case that he should be defeated he would have to retreat to Shiraz. From all these considerations, he said that it is not at all advisable to meet them ; that he had better then take the road of Sanjar, and endeavour to find his way to Isfahân ; and that immediately on his arrival there, if Firooz Meerza should have even 100,000 men, he would be turned out by the people, and together with Mr. Lynch would be embroiled in difficulty."

Prince Shojâh el Sultané was satisfied with Amin el Dawlé's advice, and his principal officers agreed to his proposal. We left, therefore, Ized Khast, and came to Daman Abad. Here Mohammed Baker Khan Backtiari, with 200 men, came and joined our camp ; he received great attentions from Shojâh el Sultané. I was ordered with Mohammed Baker Khan and Shackralla Khan, with 300 horsemen, to go near Koomshi, and learn what was going on there, and watch the operations of Mr. Lynch. Solimân Meerza was also ordered, with 200 horsemen, to proceed on a look-out in another direction. He went to Koomshi ; the inhabitants of that place offered him subjection, and were ready

to offer their services in providing provisions. Mr. Lynch did not come there, because the son of Amin el Dawlé was at that time governor. Yet he was not far off. In a very favourable situation there, he (Mr. Lynch) constructed his batteries and fortified his camp. When Solimân Meerza was informed of what Mr. Lynch was doing, he remained at Kadam Kalâh. On learning this fact, I went on till I was only two parasangs from Koomshi. When Solimân Meerza heard of my arrival, he came and joined me. We went on thence together so near, that we came in sight of their well-disposed camp. Their camp was in the exact direction of the route that we ought to take. Here they had so well fortified with their batteries and cannon, in such a manner that rendered it almost impossible for us to pass. When they saw us they sent out of their camp about 300 horsemen to meet us. When we came near each other, a battle was fought. We drove them back to their camp, and continued firing till it became night. I therefore lost no time in despatching a letter to Shojâh el Sultané at the camp, and informed him of what had taken place, and of their strong camp and preparation, &c. I proposed

to him that if it were agreeable to his wishes to let me remain there, that I might occupy the enemy, in which case he (Shojâh el Sultané) might find some other road for Isfahân. Moreover, it was not at all advisable for Shojâh el Sultané to meet the enemy; however, every thing was left to his orders. When my letter reached him, Baker Khan Asfer-jilâni, with some troops and provisions, had come and joined him, from whom he asked whether there was any other road to Isfahân. He answered, that on account of the snow this year, all the roads were blocked up, except that of Kassei Khan. Shojâh el Sultané asked other people about him, all of whom gave him the same reply. He therefore determined to take that road. On that very night three cannoneers came from Mohammed Shah's camp to Shojâh's camp. They were brought by the guards before Shojâh el Sultané. He asked them why they had come. They replied, "All the troops of Mohammed Shah are inclined to favour you, and whenever you shall come direct to the camp, they will not rise in arms against you, but on the contrary they will join you. We have been sent by the artillery officers to your Royal High-

ness to assure you of their sentiments." Shojâh el Sultané was very much pleased with their news, he gave them in charge to Abas Khan, the principal officer of his artillery. But it was found out (as it will be mentioned hereafter) that they were sent as spies by him to our cannoneers who were natives of Azerbaijan, and were friends of Mr. Lynch. They therefore were whispering in the ears of our cannoneers, urging them by promises of kindness, that when the two armies met, they should take the party to which they themselves belonged.

Wednesday the 24th, Prince Shojâh el Sultané left Abada for Kasser chain, I having that night the guarding of the camp. The following night I constructed some batteries near their camp. On the following morning, a few soldiers came out of their camp, whom I drove back. Now when I heard of Prince Shojâh's coming, I left the guard to the care of Solimân Meerza, and went to meet the Prince. I told him that it was not at all necessary for him to come this way. The Prince replied, "that the snow rendered all the other roads impassable, and that the only road remain-

ing before us was this one; we had better then stay where we are till night, and when it becomes dark we will start in hope of getting to Isfahân by to-morrow at noon." To this end the Prince said to me, "Take 500 horsemen and approach their camp, in order that you may be able to protect our retreat." I accordingly passed over towards them, and during the whole day I had skirmishes with them, accomplishing as much as was in my power. At night they went to their camp, for indeed 200 of their men could not stand against fifty of ours. We also returned to our camp, and in the evening Prince Shojâh ordered all the old and white beards (officers) to come to his presence. He consulted them on what was to be done. It was agreed that at four hours after sunset the camp should move. Mohammed Backer Khan Backtiari, and Aga Baker Khan Asferjilâni, were appointed as guards, to take the road of Sinjanate. Some guards were also appointed for each party of cavalry and artillery. I with Shackralla Khan was ordered to go near the camp of the opposite party, and to take with me 500 good horsemen, in order to be between



them and our army, leaving ours an uninterrupted passage, by engaging with them, if they should come out against us. If they should not attack us, I was to follow on to join our camp. I accordingly, on the next day, took the 500 horsemen and proceeded near to the other camp ; but as I had not had any sleep for several nights and days, and was excessively fatigued, I alighted, and laid myself on the ground in the plain, and appointed some men to be on the watch. Lo ! a cloud presented itself in heaven, and a cold wind arose, and snow began to fall. The snow fell so much that it was more than two feet deep, from which our camp suffered mortally. Our people were scattered throughout the plain, and had no fire. They cried so much in their sufferings, that their voice reached the heavens. This dark night was most fearful ; the snow continued falling all the night, which rendered our camp useless, and deprived our men of their strength. We sent some men near the opposite camp, to see what was going on, who returned and informed us, that the noise of our camp was heard there, and that no snow had fallen among them. Thus it pleased God, that



they should be protected, and that our men, by snow and cold, should be lost.

I went and informed Prince Shojâh el Sultané, of the account that our spies brought from the opposite party. At last Prince Shojâh el Sultané asked the principal officers what was to be done. They said, "that it was impossible for us to move at night, we had better remain where we were till the next morning, when we could dispose of our troops and go in better order. If they come out to meet us, we will fight and force our way." The snow still continued falling, and our people were in extreme suffering. I was again ordered to command the camp watch, but that night the opposite camp sent out some of their troops, and were preparing themselves to meet us.

On the following morning, Thursday, the 25th of Shawal, one hour after sunrise, we encouraged our half dead men to march. We moved, placing our artillery before, and the troops behind. My brother Wali was ordered to be with the artillery, and I was appointed to the command of the troops. Prince Shojâh el Sultané himself, at one time would visit the artillery, and at another

would visit the foot soldiers. Such were the arrangements of the march. Our men were very heavily laden, because they had to carry with them a quantity of provisions, on account of the scarcity in the country, besides carrying their capotes on account of the cold. As to the other camp, they knew all that was going on among us. So they only placed two cannons and four hundred men with their provisions in the camp, and came out to meet us with all the rest of their artillery and troops, and stood at the very defile of the mountains, where we had to pass: as we came in sight they advanced. When Prince Shojâh el Sultané saw them, he ordered the troops to halt, and here the battle took place. Here the first thing which occurred was, our treacherous cannoneers pointed their cannons so as to render the discharge without effect, except that when I was in front with the cavalry, the balls of their cannons fell near me, and by them many of our cavalry lost their lives, and we were obliged to retreat. In addition to this, three of our cannoneers took the horses of the cannons and ran away to the other party, and fulfilled their treacherous promises. Prince Sho-

jâh el Sultané himself took their place, and stood behind the cannon. Behold, a ball comes straight into the mouth of our largest gun. At last we were obliged to retreat, and they obtained possession of our ammunition and cannons. They followed us with discharges of their cannons, by which they scattered our troops, so that scarcely two men of ours were together, and afterwards they sent 400 cavalry after us. Then when I saw what they were doing, and what was the state of our forces, I felt that to flee before their cavalry would be a most shameful act, and that we must meet them, for death is more desirable than a life of shame. I, with Shackralla Khan Noori, and with my own servants, and some thirty or forty of our dispersed men who came to us, faced them, and a battle took place; we defeated them, and killed about forty of them. Five or six also of our men were slain, but while we were engaged in battle, their artillery arrived so near that their balls reached us and scattered us again. On that day I had a very narrow escape, and was very near falling into their hands. They followed us almost four hours' distance till we arrived at

the mountains which were covered with snow, which we climbed up. They in the mean time were busy in seizing spoil and plundering all our men who had been left behind, and had fallen into their hands. On account of their artillery being behind their cavalry, scarcely any thing was left to us. Our goods and nearly all our loaded animals fell into their hands and became their spoil.

When we had entered the mountains, I asked Prince Shojâh, "What is now to be done?" After we had consulted with each other and with our principal men, it was agreed to endeavour to remain in some region about Fars, near the Backtiari, and if the snow should melt, and give us a road, we would go to Isfahân, if not we must endeavour to find out the road to Fars. We kept on therefore till we came to a village called Togoor, the inhabitants of which came out to meet us; but when they heard of our defeat, they returned into their home in the castle. Still we wanted to get a little rest here. But immediately the enemy's party overtook us, and our men had scarcely time to mount their horses; leaving every thing on the ground. We advanced straight up the moun-

tains; but we had nobody with us who knew the roads up the mountain. We knew not where we were going, except my brother Wali, who some time ago had passed this mountain on his way to Isfahân. He had passed it in the summer season; but did not know it at this time, because it was almost all covered with snow, and no road of any kind could be found out. However, he advanced, and we all followed after him till it became dark; our people lost each other, and whatever we had with us, we were obliged to abandon; near 10,000 tomâns' worth of things was lost that night, and our men were crying to heaven. The snow still was falling and it was extremely cold, and we had no place whither we could go, and we had nothing of any kind to eat. Our horses were exhausted, and our people suffered even to death, so that we were obliged to encamp down upon the snow, and thus spend the night. The snow was so deep that not even a thistle was to be found to make fire. We had in our camp four brothers of the Cajar tribe, one of whom had been killed in battle, another taken prisoner, two now remained with us on this horrible night; feeling the cold so much,

they burnt all their things to make a fire. At last one of the brothers took his gun into his hand with the intention of removing the stock to burn, and while doing so the gun was discharged, and the ball entered his brother and killed him. Through these various causes, having lost his three brothers, he lost his mind and became raving mad. The night was exceedingly severe to every one of us.

On the following morning, early, Friday the 25th, finding ourselves in the snow and nobody to be seen, as the road that my brother Wali had passed at this time was covered with snow, Prince Shojâh el Sultané promised a large reward to any man that would find out a road by which we might pass the mountain. An old man of the Backtiari's tribe presented himself, and said that he knew a road. Prince Shojâh el Sultané, in great joy, promised the old man a large sum. The old man mounted his horse, and went on in advance as guide, and we followed him.

Upon this, Mr. Lynch, after we had been defeated and fled, came to Koomshi while his people were busy in spoiling, and was desirous to send after us

the artillery. The natives of Koomshi told him, "that he need not trouble himself about that, for the direction that the others had taken was of such nature, that if they were 100,000 they would not be able to find out a road; as the mountains were covered with snow, that they would suffer very much, and at last they would be obliged to return; therefore you had better take possession of the road by which they will have to return. The road is between two mountains, and you may point your cannons in a manner of which you are the best judge, and make prisoners of them all." Upon this proposal Mr. Lynch was pleased with the inhabitants of Koomshi, and separated his cannons, sending one part commanded by Mr. Shir, to the very narrow road that had been pointed out to him, and the other remaining with him waiting for our return. As to ourselves, we still followed the old Backtiari our guide, in the snow, about three hours' walk, till we came in sight of a very high mountain: here our guide told us, that we must go up to the top of that mountain. We then looked out for a road, but none was to be seen; but, impelled by fear, we endeavoured to find



out our way. At one time thrown from our horses, at another time walking, till, after very great pain and fatigue, in four hours we arrived at its top, which was all covered with snow; nothing to be seen in any direction but snow. Again we asked our guide, "Where is the road?" he said, "We must walk over the snow." Wishing to try it, I pushed on, but my horse sunk up to his ears in the snow; none of our horses nere could be of any use, for the snow was so deep that it covered all the trees. I could not at last help swearing at the stupid old guide, "May God curse your father!" He replied, that four months since he had passed that road, and that he did not suppose that the road would be lost in the snow. Being now on the top of this mountain, and in this miserable state, I asked Prince Shojâh el Sultané, "What is to be done?" He said, "We must submit to the will of God, and surrender ourselves to his commands." At last we were obliged to descend with great difficulty, and came to the place where we were the night before. Prince Shojâh el Sultané called Mohammed Baker Khan, and requested him to find out some road; he said, "There



is no other road except that of Kasser chain, where the battle was fought. If you dare, (said Mohammed Baker Khan,) let us go back, and find out our road to Fars." We did not know what Mr. Lynch was doing, and at last we returned down the mountain, where we discovered a large party of the enemy. He however still marched on, and Wali with fifty horsemen was directed to go in front as a guard. Khan Baba Khan, with ten horsemen, was directed to go still farther and find out whether there was any obstacle in our way. As we were marching on, he made a signal for us to retreat, and soon came and informed us of what Mr. Lynch had prepared against us. On receiving this news, I knew not what was to be done. I then asked our guide whether there was no other road besides that which Mr. Lynch had stopped up. He replied, that he did know another road which would lead to Sferogian, but that it was full of snow. I told him, "Let us perish in the snow rather than to deliver ourselves up." Therefore we went on till we arrived at a place so high that scarcely a bird could pass it, yet our state urged us on and we surrendered ourselves to God.

In some places our horses sunk to their breasts in the snow, and in some places we were thrown down. One of our men with his horse fell in the snow; through God's mercy, we extricated him. We proceeded on all this day long with myriads of difficulties till we passed through. Here I gave some presents to our guides and labourers.

After indescribable sufferings and innumerable difficulties, and great loss both of men and property, we arrived at Sferogian, five hours after sunset. Being a stranger, and not knowing any place to go to, and at the same time nearly dying of hunger, fatigue, and want of sleep, when I was thinking where I could go to rest a little, I found my horse's bridle seized by some one's hand. Conceiving him to be an enemy, I presented the gun to his breast, commanding him to declare himself who he was. The man said, "If you now do not know me, I know you; I come now to offer my services; as long as I live, I can never forget your kindness." I told the man that I would not go to his house till I knew who he was, and his situation. The man said, "I am

such an one, a merchant. I once took a journey to Fars, on some commercial business, when I was plundered by Wali Khan's tribe, who robbed me of 500 tomâns. I went then to Kazroon, where I found your brother Taymoor Meerza, who had just returned from hunting, whom I informed of my loss, which having learned, he appeared very sorry for me. At the moment he ordered some horsemen immediately to ride, with strict orders that they should bring to him the robbers that had plundered me. They accordingly started, and the next day came back, and brought some prisoners, some robbers; but unfortunately, they were not those who robbed me. However, he put them in prison, and ordered 500 tomâns, just the amount of my loss, to be given to me from his own pocket, saying that he made it his business to find out the thieves. I actually received the money, and having to come to Shiraz, that Prince gave me a letter to you, which I delivered to you." Having given me this account, I was satisfied with his explanation, and knowing the man, I stopped at his house. Here some barley was given to our horses, and fire was immediately made in the house. Having

had no sleep for so many days, I slept here, and when I arose found something to eat. But Prince Shojâh el Sultané would not stop here ; he wished to get on to Ized Khast, so he started with Solimân Meerza and Hider Koolee Meerza, and the next day at morning they arrived at Ized Khast.

I spent this day at the house of the above-mentioned friend, and while I was at dinner my brother Wali came, and dismounted and took something to eat. Afterwards Shackralla Khan reached us, from whom I learnt that about twenty mules loaded with our things had fallen that day into the hands of the other party, among which were 2000 tomâns belonging to Wali. In short, we left this place with caution and examination of our road. On our way one of our men, a Turkeman Tackoo, a servant of Shojâh el Sultané, lost his life.

We arrived at Ized Khast very weak and miserable ; here we obtained some provisions. We left this place on the 28th and came to Sefad. Here the inhabitants entered their castle, and let down whatever they had, in baskets, by ropes, that

we might buy. On Monday morning the 29th, we left this place and came to Somae; the inhabitants of this village also followed the example of the preceding one. Tuesday, the 1st of Zel el Kâhdi, we left this place and came to the caravansary of Cid; snow still falling, by which our sufferings were continued. On Thursday we came to the caravansary of Kirkan. Friday we came to Em el Nabi. Saturday we came to Karmin. Sunday we came to Kanoura. Monday, the 7th of the month, we came to Zirkân. On Tuesday we left it, while it rained all the day till we came near Shiraz. There his Holiness Firmân Firmân sent a party of the royal family to meet us with some provisions.

On this miserable state of defeat Prince Shojâh el Sultané and Hider Koolee Meerza went to Firmân Firmân. Here his Holiness encouraged them, promising them a new expedition. However, after the defeated army came back to Shiraz in that state, Firmân Firmân called a council of the ministers and officers, putting to them this question, "After this defeat and disgrace which has fallen us, what is to be done?" The members

of the council had been expecting this defeat, and especially Meerza Ali Akbar, and Meerza Mohammed Ali, the minister of Firmân Firmân, in whom his Holiness had all confidence. This minister secretly acted a contrary part, and was in favour of Mohammed Shah, and he had secret communication with Teheran. His Holiness Firmân Firmân called me to his presence privately, and desired me to give him my opinion on the subject; and what was to be done. I told him that after this defeat, it was most necessary to act in such a manner as not to gain a bad name. I advised him to collect our men, and well dispose of all the affairs of the province, in fact, to be making preparations for the future. He was pleased with my opinions, but he wished still to take the opinion of his council. He desired them to meet and to form an opinion. They were all in secret correspondence with the opposite party, and all was done through the influence of Meerza Mohammed Ali, the prime minister. The said rascal, the prime Minister, proposed this; that an ambassador should be sent to Teheran with letters to Mohammed Shah for peace, and

that if Mohammed Shah should accept our terms of peace, well and good; if not, we, in the mean time, will have our own troops, and see what is to be done. "You therefore" (said the minister to Firmân Firmân) "ought not to move a step out of Shiraz until we receive answers from Teheran." This advice he gave publicly, and privately he sent to Firooz Meerza, Mohammed Shah's brother, and informed him of it. Several days were spent in Shiraz in consulting only, and the time unfortunately was passing away unemployed. After Mr. Lynch had obtained that victory, he thought proper to stop at Koomshi, and it now being winter, did not consider it proper to come to Fars; but he lost no time in informing the Government of what had been done, and asked for fresh orders. Manoochir Khan at Isfahân hearing what had taken place, lost no time in taking his 12,000 to go to Firooz Meerza, and thus all these joined Mr. Lynch at Koomshi, and at this time they received secret letters from Shiraz (from the prime minister of Firmân Firmân) urging them to come at once to Shiraz, while Firmân Firmân was there. This being the



case, Manoochir Khan with the whole camp left Koomshi for Shiraz, and, fearing that Firmân Firmân might leave Shiraz, and that if he did so, he would have a great influence, and cause disturbances in the empire, in order to keep him at Shiraz, he immediately despatched to him an express envoy, called Rostow Khan, with letters, the substance of which was as follows: After the usual respects, compliments, &c. “Your Holiness knows perfectly well, that I am a slave of your Majestic Family; I was brought up under the favour of that Illustrious House, and of course I can think of nothing but what is agreeable to you, &c. I have the honour, my Lord Prince, to inform you, that I am fully authorised by Mohammed Shah, to arrange every thing with you amicably, and I can never have the idea of going to war, neither is Mohammed Shah at all desirous of seeing civil war. Therefore I have to assure you, &c. that when I shall have the honour to wait upon your Holiness, I will arrange every thing according to the wishes of your Royal Highness.”

When Rostow Khan arrived with these des-



patches at Shiraz, which was on Wednesday 11th, his Holiness Firmân Firmân being very thoughtful in regard to the present state of affairs, had taken a ride and was gone to the gardens outside of the city. When Rostow Khan arrived, some people of Shiraz, who professed to be on the part of government, having heard of this officer's arrival, together with Meerza Mohammed Vizir, brought Rostow Khan to me, and I conducted him to the presence and service of his Royal Highness Shojâh el Sultané, who addressed him in his usual strong peremptory style. In the mean time his Royal Holiness Firmân Firmân honoured the place and read the proposals of Manoochir Khan. Now as it was the design and wish of the trustees of government, to induce Firmân Firmân to remain at Shiraz, they found this an excellent opportunity to redouble their persuasions, to make him and Shojâh el Sultané stay; so they began to show and explain the beneficial import of Manoochir Khan's letters, &c. However, the arrival of Rostow Khan, and the news of Manoochir Khan coming to Shiraz, with the army of Irâk and Azerbaijan, caused a great tumult among the

people at Shiraz, and every one was anxious about his wealth and family; and now the traitors to government began to think of effecting their views, while the public knew nothing of what was going to take place.

The Holy Prince Firmân Firmân ordered some of the trustees of Government, and some distinguished persons of the city, to come into his presence, and asked their advice. Yalkhani, whose treachery was discovered, sent an apology for not being able to come, pleading that he was ill. At last they all gave their opinion that his Holiness would do better to remain, until some news should come from Hassan Khan Katcher Ishek Agassi, who was sent on an embassy to Firooz Meerza and Manoochir Khan, as he might possibly succeed in obtaining his request with the annexed conditions. In the mean time I could not help thinking, from what I heard them say secretly, that their object was to lead Firmân Firmân into trouble. I knew, moreover, that his Holiness Firmân Firmân could not see through their duplicity and unfaithfulness, and that by their deceitful persuasions they would betray Firmân Firmân into the hands of the

enemy. While all this was going on, and as I was pondering upon the issue, I heard a great noise in the night, and upon going out to see whence it proceeded, found that the people of the town in crowds were transporting their goods by mules and porters. When I saw this, I nearly lost my senses; I took up a few persons who caused the noise, and punished them. I then spoke to the people in a kind tone, and gave them a thousand hopes and promises. In the mean time I ordered a light to be put at the door of the garden, and placed some guards there. I had also thrown some purses full of money, and with the greatest difficulty freed myself from the people. I then seized Rostow Khan by the beard, gave him a good beating on the head, and declared to the public, that we would meet Manoochir Khan in the field. This was, in fact, quite an insurrection. His Holiness in the mean time left the council, and the Meerza and Vizir went to the house of Yalkhani. His Holiness then ordered into his presence some of the generals of the guards, with other old trusty servants, and all the royal Princes. The firmans of Mohammed Shah, with the letters

of Manoochir Khan, were read to them, and it was made evident, that the next day both his Holiness\* and Shojâh el Sultané, and all the royal Princes, would be seized with all their wealth and property, and would be put under arrest, until the arrival of Manoochir Khan, to whom they were to be betrayed. The old servants and officers, who owed both their flesh and skin, themselves and families, to the bounty and favour of the salt of this Government, and for whose welfare his Holiness had endured so much, now forgot all the past favours of fifty years, and determined to revolt. They had collected about 12,000 men, seized the towers and forts, and were ready the following morning to carry on their revolution, &c.

At this crisis his Holiness Firmân Firmân called me into his presence, and asked me what was to be done. I replied, “During the last few days I have proposed many things to your Holiness, but you would listen to unfaithful and treacherous people, and have betrayed yourself into their deceived salt. You have done this so long, that

\* Alluding to Firmân Firmân.

the affairs have fallen into such a state, that I believe if we remain here until to-morrow, by sunrise every one of us will fall into the hands of a thousand men. Now I judge that the best for you to do is this. The royal Princes and the faithful servants in whom I have confidence, will amount in all to about a hundred horsemen; let us assemble these, and I have in my stable twenty strong mules, which may be loaded to-night, with what there is of jewels and cash, of light weight and great value, and let us start at once with your wealth to some part whence we may obtain troops, and try if we can destroy the interest of the enemy, and obtain our rights; or otherwise, let us depart for the Holy Land, and thence we may go where we like."

His Holiness approved of my proposal, and said, "I will do so." He afterwards consulted Prince Shojâh el Sultané on the subject, and as the thing was determined of God, Shojâh el Sultané replied, "God forbid that you should form such a plan. What an eternal shame it would be, and what an ignominious name it would give you, to lose the government and kingdom! I am quite confident that

Manoochir Khan will do every thing according to your pleasure." Then his Holiness called me, and said, " Prince Shojâh el Sultané does not approve of our departure, what shall be done ? "

Seeing that our seizure appeared to be decreed by Providence, I contemplated all that night the sufferings and distress to which we might be reduced, and was exceedingly perplexed. Hearing now what his Holiness said, I tore my collar, and replied, " Prince Shojâh el Sultané does not know what he is about, and he will be the cause of the loss of our blood." At last his Holiness, seeing my earnestness, and hearing my solicitations, was quite puzzled, and did not know what to do. He consulted Aga Baba Khan lala Bashi, and Meerza Hassan Khan, and some others of the faithful servants, but they also did not know what plans to form, or what to do ; for every one of them had during his life obtained a fortune, and all perceived that now the labours of their lives were going to be lost in one great misfortune. At length they said, " We also suggest that it would be advisable for you to leave, but we are not ready this evening ; if you will put off your departure, and deter-

mine to start to-morrow, then we shall be able to serve you." Their object was for the four pence that they have.

When I saw that my advice did not take any effect, I went to Shakralla Khan Noori, who felt anxious for his Holiness, and went again with him, and took hold of Firmân Firmân's dress, and solicited him with every possible persuasion to leave. In the mean time Prince Shojâh el Sultané came in, and gave me a blow on the head with the butt-end of his pistol, saying, "Why are you doing all this? what is the use of your advising our departure? you must not mention this any more." On seeing Prince Shojâh's vexation, I said, "I have only given my opinion, and you will see by to-morrow what will befall you, when you will be unable to procure any remedy. However, as you are determined to destroy yourselves, I am not dearer nor better than you, and will stand at your service until you see the accomplishment of what I have stated."

As it was now growing late, I went home to see what was to be arranged for the next day. This night the royal princes, Taymoor and Wali, were,



by the orders of his Holiness Firmân Firmân, on watch with the troops, and persuading them with thousands of promises to remain; but on account of the many messages which the troops had received from other quarters, they all left and joined the enemy. This night there was dreadful lamentation among our families. Indeed, it could not be expected otherwise from people who had spent all their lives in the height of pleasure, extreme comfort, and honour, to see themselves now being reduced to such perplexity and distress. The ladies and the families were all crying and weeping, and in truth the solid rock and hard stone would not withhold joining the weakened spirits in their lamentation. What must have been the state of our sorrows! the fatigues of war, the weariness of journeying, the continual reverses that we daily experienced, while every hour the necessity of abandoning our estates, our homes, and families, was represented to us. In fact, our souls were nearly leaving us. We besought God every moment to take our souls, and death would have been to us a cup of pleasure, when we saw that our families and friends were falling into the



hands of others. How can I write this dreadful change! no one can describe it but those who witnessed it. However, towards morning I went into my private apartments with Taymoor Meerza, and disturbed what I found amongst our harem, and sent each to the house of one of the Mullas of the city for protection.

This morning, Thursday 12th, Taymoor Meerza and I armed ourselves, and kept with us a small supply of ammunition, in order to defend ourselves in time of necessity. I desired my man, Abu el Hassan Bey, to hold the mules in readiness till further orders. I then went into the presence of his Holiness, Firmân Firmân, who had not slept the whole of the night, and he had ordered Nawâb Hajiéh (his principal lady) to have some jewels ready. When I and Taymoor Meerza came into his presence, he asked us what we were doing. I said, "All our pleading with your Holiness has been useless, and this day will not pass without some dangerous accidents." He answered, "You are infants, and were never tried." While we were conversing with his royal Holiness, a eunuch of the palace came into the room and said to

Firmân Firmân, "I have just learned from Golâm Burdân of Yalkhani, that last night some people, by Yalkhani's advice, determined to seize you to-day, and to betray you into the hands of Manoochir Khan. As your benefits are bound on my neck,\* I came to inform you of the circumstance. While I passed along the streets, I saw a great number of men going to seize the towers and gates; so that, if you remain here one minute longer, you will all be taken up. I have now declared to you what the right of your salt on my conscience obliges me to do."† When I heard this account, I told his Holiness that his longer stay could not but ruin us. I therefore now pressed him to leave. I sent in the mean time, and informed Shakralla Meerza and Akber Meerza of what was going on, and both of them were ready for starting. I sent also to Wali and told him, that if he had water in his hand to drink he was not to do so, but come here at once, in order that we might all accompany his Holiness. In the mean time I met Shojâh el Sultané, and

\* A Persian idiom, expressing faithfulness.

† A Persian style of expressing religious feelings.

I said to him, "You now see the value of my counsel." He became exceedingly alarmed, and went himself to ascertain the news.

I afterwards returned to his Holiness, to see what he would order. He said, "Go to the Isfahân gate, and defend it, lest the enemy should take possession of it, and in a few minutes I will come." I left his Holiness dressing, and as I went out found Hâdi Khan, the son of Wali Khan, who had come a few days before with thirty horsemen to offer his service to his Holiness Firmân Firmân. He had been kindly received by his Holiness, and was directed to stand as watch of the palace. I then saw my brother, Askandar Meerza, a youth of twelve years of age, and I told him that his Holiness had ordered that he should go with Hâdi Khan and the thirty horsemen to defend the gate of Isfahân with their balls, till I should come. They obeyed the orders, and proceeded to the gate. At this moment I met Meerza Meehdi Khan running with great alarm. "Meerza Khan," said I, "what are you about?" He replied, "I am coming to inform his Holiness of something very important." "For God's sake tell

me," said I. "The opposite party have determined to seize upon you all, and to betray you into the hands of Mohammed Shah. Now, if you do not escape immediately, your blood will be on your neck." What dreadful news! I begged him to hasten and inform Firmân Firmân of it, and sent Taymoor Meerza to his Holiness to say to him, "O careless man, what are you waiting for? put your foot in the stirrup, and do not delay any longer." His Holiness, however, would still remain, and sent Hâhib Alla Khan to Yalkhani, requesting him to come into his presence, and peace be to him, for that he needed not be afraid. When Taymoor Meerza inquired of his Holiness what he was waiting for, he said, "I am waiting for Shojâh el Sultané; go you to the gate, and remain there till I and Shojâh el Sultané come to you." Taymoor Meerza came to me, and reported his Holiness's orders, and I went with him to the gate, where Askandar Meerza had gone. Here I found Ali Acbar Meerza, Abas Khan Arab, and Ahmed Khan, with 1000 armed men, in possession of the tower and the gate. Others had already fired at Askandar Meerza, who was on foot. I then

gave him a horse to ride, and desired my brothers Wali, Taymoor, Shah Rookh, and Acbar Meerza to follow me, and I determined to fight till we should force our way. The brothers said, "Where are you going?" I answered, "Only follow me, and if at last we shall fall into their hands, verily to God we belong, and verily to him we must return; to die honourably is the highest glory."

---

The translator of these pages exceedingly regrets that the latter part of the history, consisting of about twenty pages, was taken from him by the Bedouins, when he was robbed on his journey over the desert from Bagdad to Syria. He considers himself very fortunate that the Bedouins only took these few sheets from the book for curiosity; for when they examined his saddle-bags on the camel, and found that it contained books and letters, and other papers, they asked him why he was so great a fool as to carry along with him such a load of

useless papers and books, which could neither be eaten nor drunk. On telling them that they were quite right, that the papers were unfit for eating, and that they had better leave them, because some of them were the holy Korân; they said that they had a Mulla in their tribe who had been long seeking for a copy. So they took the last sheet of the history in mistake for the Korân. Although the translator felt exceedingly sorry for their having taken this part, yet he thought it best to say nothing further on the subject, lest they should think that what they had taken was not the whole book. He therefore takes the liberty to insert a short sketch of what he recollects of the latter part of the history :—

Through Shojâh el Sultané's persuasion and hope, Firmân Firmân did not leave the city, and Manoochir Khan and Firooz Meerza came and took them both. The eyes of Shojâh el Sultané were put out, and he was sent to the prison of Ardabil; and Firmân Firmân was carried to Teheran, where he died. As to Reeza Koolee Meerza, Najaf Koolee Meerza, (or Wali,) Taymoor Meerza, Askandar Meerza, Acbar Meerza,

and Shah Rookh Meerza, with Nawâb Hajiéh, the princess of Firmân Firmân, and mother to the author; they all, by the prudent management of the author, escaped the most imminent dangers. They passed through the greatest difficulties, and endured fatigues and sufferings beyond description. They travelled nearly a whole month over high mountains and roads scarcely passable, and were many days without food. They had, it is true, the most celebrated horses, which they had kept for such purposes. They were continually pursued by the troops of Mohammed Shah in every direction, and orders were issued to every part to apprehend them. At length they were fortunate enough to reach the Arabian coast in safety, and proceeded to Bagdad. I believe that they received some letters from their father, who was at Teheran, desiring them not to go to war, which might end in his destruction, but rather to make their way to his Britannic Majesty's court, and to solicit his friendly mediation with Mohammed Shah for his deliverance. In consequence of this, the eldest prince, with his intelligent brothers, Najaf Koolee

Meerza, and Taymoor Meerza, proceeded on their journey, and came to Damascus, where the translator had the honour of forming their acquaintance, and from whence he accompanied them in their journey.



# JOURNAL.



# JOURNAL.

---

MOST truly the court and home of gaiety are in the protected city of Damasc Shâm.\* And as red wine in a golden cup, so is English cheerfulness and their beautiful faces like the rising full moon.†

The province of Shain Syria is part of Asia. It is bounded on the east by Tadmor,‡ westward

\* Damascus of Syria.

† As this phrase will be used often in the narrative, the translator begs to assure his readers that this is the highest mode and the strongest style of expressing beauty of faces, &c. The Prince is supposed to allude to the delightful society of J. W. Farren, Esq. then H. M.'s consul-general at Damascus.

‡ Palmyra: here it will be interesting to remark, that this ancient place has retained its original name since the time of Solomon, according to the Holy Writ. It is also of equal or greater interest that the natives of Syria, even those who inhabit Tadmor, know nothing of the name Palmyra, while Tadmor, of much earlier period, is known to all. If the translator were to add such notes on practical information, in proof of the Scripture, it would require a work by itself.

by the West Sea,\* on the north by Antioch, and on the south by the river Jordan. The name Syria is derived from the word Syriani, because the ancient inhabitants of this kingdom were Syrians. Among its ancient cities are to be reckoned those of Sour and Sidon: the history of these two cities is written in the Holy Law (the Old Testament,) where we have a detailed account of their magnificence, wealth, and immense population, but now very little remains of these interesting and once splendid places. Each of these is four days distant from Damascus. Alexander of the two Hornes† according to the histories of the ancients, nearly destroyed these cities; and the small portions of them which were spared by Alexander, subsequently experienced the same fate from the hands of the Roman Emperors. Now they are but miserable sea-ports on the West Sea, and the only present trade of them is tobacco and fire-wood, from which the inhabitants derive their support. Another part of Syria is Palestine, which is a Holy

\* Our readers will recollect that the Prince, with other orientals, calls the Mediterranean by this name, "West Sea."

† The oriental name for Alexander the Great.

Land, and in this district is the Holy House.\* The most noted cities in Syria are as follows: Beyroot, Tripoli or Tarabulos, Acre, Hôms, Hamâ, Aleppo or Haleb; Antioch, and Nabolo, Jerusalem, Jappar, Latakia, or Leodicea; the present capital of Syria is Damascus. The revenue of Syria to Mohammed Ali Pacha is 100,000 purses, each purse being equal to ten tomâns of Persia.† Damascus, according to the revelation of the heavenly books, is the most ancient city in the world, of which there can be no doubt, since it existed before the time of the Worshipful Abraham, the Friend of God; (upon our Prophet and upon him the best of peace!)‡ in proof of which we may mention, that the treasurer of the Prophet Abraham was a Damascene, and from the most ancient times, it was a residence of many great Prophets, (peace be

\* The Holy House refers to the Harem Sherif, or place of the Temple of Solomon, and not to the Church of the holy Sepulchre, for the Mohammedans acknowledge neither the church, nor the crucifixion of Christ.

† That is, the whole revenue amounts to 500,000 pounds sterling, allowing five pounds to a purse.

‡ In the Arabic, as well as in Persian and all Mohammedan writings, it is considered a disrespect to any Prophet, in mentioning his name to omit his peace or prayers.

upon them!) and continued to be so till the time of the descendants of the Ommiades. Its air is healthy, and very much like that of Shiraz. Vineyards, and all kinds of fruits, and different kinds of trees, are found here in abundance. For three hours' distance in every direction from it, are gardens of perpetual green. To every house also there belongs a garden. It is like a paradise, full of fine buildings and fountains of waters. The largest river of Damascus is the Baradah, which runs through the town in the direction of north-west: it is much higher than the city, so much that the water comes to every house and runs into the different parts of the houses. Hence the houses are very clean; not a spot of dust is to be seen in them. In these habitations are places where water runs for drinking, and other places for domestic uses. Its water, although plentiful, yet gives a strong appetite for eating. The people here are very handsome, they speak Arabic and Turkish with eloquence. It is the custom in this country to erect lofty buildings, surrounded by gardens, which resemble those of heaven. Their streets are paved with stones, so fine that there is

no dirt to be found in them. The water in the different bazaars runs in all directions, and rivers of the city run under the streets and the houses, so that it is all built over water. There are some very magnificent edifices, one of which is the large and ancient mosque where John the son of Zacharias was buried (peace be upon him). This mosque is very ancient, and of exceeding strong construction. It was originally an idol temple, afterwards a Christian church, but from the time of the Caliphate of the Ommiades it became a mosque and a place for prayers to the Mussulmans, and they gave it their name. There are also, in this city, many other mosques, bazaars, and khans. But Khan Asaad Pasha is one of the finest edifices in the world; the walls of this khan are all of large stones of different colours, as if in imitation of painting. The baths here are magnificent and delightful; they have abundance of water, which comes from lofty jets, and their different apartments are paved with marble of various colours. There are no baths like these in all the world, but the attendants, (shampooers,) are disgusting men, so that the beauty of the baths does not compensate the horrible faces

of the shampooers. The best fruits of Damascus are grapes, pomegranates, apples, peaches, pears, water-melons, and musk-melons: lemons also are plentiful and very good. They preserve many fruits with sugar, which are very fine. Also the vegetables of every kind are excellent. Grain is plentiful; people do not eat wheaten bread alone, but mix it with Indian corn, that it may look fine and clean, yet it has none of the taste of bread. Flowers of all kinds, and all seasons, that grow in other countries, grow here also; and in addition there are some curious flowers planted by the Consul, which were brought from Europe and the New World. In gazing at the view of Damascus, from a high place, it appears longer than it is wide; to the north of it there is a high mountain called Kaïssoon, where there are buried the people of Cahhaf.\* When any one faces the Gidi, or the north star, the Kibla or south will be behind him.

The animals and birds here are almost the same as in other parts, the bullocks however are unusually large and strong; indeed, they are as large as a

\* The seven sleepers, about whom the Mussulmans have many fables.



horse. The camels also are very large, bigger than the ordinary camels, and can carry each the weight of two hundred mauns of Tabriz.\* The olive trees in the neighbourhood yield plentifully, and from them they make much oil; the people use it instead of butter, so they have no want of butter from cows and sheep. The population of this city is about 120,000 males and females, out of which there are 8000 Christians, and 6000 Jews, and the rest Mussulmans; besides there are many strangers. The civil Government of Damascus, after it was taken by Mohammed Ali, Pasha of Egypt, was organized in the following manner. In every city of Syria, there is a governor, and a judge appointed by him, but all of them under the Pasha of Damascus, who is Governor-general of Syria in all political matters; but Mohammed Ali Pasha has ordered that a Divan or council should be formed, embracing twenty-four of the most intelligent Mussulmans, Christians, and Jews. These twenty-four individuals are named from the nobility, merchants, religious teachers, and farmers, that they may be competent to examine and decide the

\* About eight hundred English pounds.

affairs of the people. They meet every day in the week, Fridays and Sundays excepted. This is called the principal Divan, for there is a second one, called the Divan of trade, which has nothing to do with the former. This second Divan is a body composed of twenty merchants, who are authorized to decide and conclude every commercial dispute. This form of tribunal is in accordance with the mercantile customs of France, for it was taken from that country. In the above-mentioned manner all the places under the Pasha of Egypt are governed, to whose control these Divans are entirely subject. The revenue to the Pasha of this Pashalick, is 30,000 purses, each purse making ten Persian tomâns. The Pasha has newly constructed several barracks for his troops here. This is sufficient to serve for a description of Damascus.

At length, to-day, Wednesday the fourth of Safer 1252, or the 25th of March 1836, we left Damascus on our way to Europe, trusting entirely to God, who knows every thing as to our intentions and wishes. Farren Sâheb,\* our good friend,

\* *Sâheb* corresponds with the English terms Esquire, Mr. or Friend. It is originally derived from an Arabic Verb (*sâhâb*) signifying to associate, to be on terms of friendship.

accompanied us out of town to bid us farewell, and when we arrived to the top of the hill over the city, as God is great, how like Shiraz it looked ! and it made us think of our home and relations : here we bade Farren Sâheb farewell, and left each other. Now mountains were presented to our eyes, through which the rivers run to Damascus ; in every second we observed beautiful gardens receiving water, “water ! like the rose water that runs down the cheeks of virgins.” The air was very delightful, we travelled five parasangs, till, three hours after sunset, we arrived at a village called Dimas ; and as our journey to-day had been in very cold weather, we arrived tired, and went directly to sleep.

The next day early we mounted, and went from this place, and our interpreter, Khoojah\* Assaad, informed us, that we must travel to-day fifteen parasangs, and that if we went a less distance the English steam-vessel, which comes once a month with the post to Beyroot, would be gone, and we should not be in time. In the morning it was raining a little, and was very cold, so much so, that one

\* *Khoojah* is synonymous with *Sâheb*.

could hardly breathe. A caravan of mules started with us from this place, and we travelled with our baggage. The cold, every hour we went on, became more severe, and at last the rain changed to snow, so that it came into the eyes of ourselves and the horses. I, Wali, and Taymoor Meerza, were riding, having the loaded mules before us. But it was all in vain, for at last we lost the track, and kept descending till we arrived at the foot of the mountain. The weather calmed a little, and we rested ourselves. Here we met nearly 500 persons, who were of the caravan which had started from the village. Soon after their departure, the snow began to fall rapidly, which obliged them to retreat like a defeated army, that runs away from the face of the enemy. We asked some of them where was the road; to which, and to other questions, they could give us no answer, on account of the snow, but went back to the village. We were driven from our baggage; Khoojah Assaad remained with it a short time, but soon afterwards he joined us. We asked him what was now to be done? He replied thus, "If you think simply of taking care of yourselves, let

us go back to the village, as the people of the caravan have done ; but if you are desirous to get to England, and if you wish to be in time for the steam-vessel, then it will be necessary to pay no regard to your health, but to travel in the snow and rain." Then I said to myself, if the fire-ship\* should have gone before we had arrived, then all our fatigue will have been in vain. So we trusted to God the Almighty, and putting our cloaks over our heads, we went on in the hurricane of snow and rain. During all the time of our journeying, the snow was perpetually falling, so as almost to make the tongue of every man stiff. Some travellers of that caravan, which went back to the village, having seen us determined to go on, followed us. After travelling some distance, God calmed the storm a little, and the snow in a short time ceased. We thanked God the Lord, and continued travelling till we came between two mountains, through which the water was running, and the flowers were sending forth a delightful

\* There is, of course, no name for steamers in oriental languages. The prince, as well as other oriental writers, sometimes calls it steam-vessel, but more commonly name it fire-ship, or ship of fire.

odour. After travelling three parasangs, we came to a strait, from whence we saw some very high mountains, and in front of these mountains a large plain full of water, as if a lake, and some buildings. We inquired from Khoojah Assaad about these mountains covered with snow, and what were those buildings, and who built them? and which was our road? He replied, that the high mountains which we saw were Lebanon, which God the most high, the most glorious, has mentioned in the Bible, and that the roads in winter on these mountains will be so covered with snow, as to render them impassable; but in summer they are delightful, and on them grow most beautiful plants, which spread their rich odour all around. The water is plentiful, and very pure, and the valleys are fertile, and covered with trees wonderful to the eye to behold, and the water during winter runs from the mountain into the plain, which gives it the appearance of a lake. Those large ruins that are seen from a distance are the remains of the city of Bâlbac, where Moses, the son of Amrân, (peace be upon him!) fought with the infidels, when the infidels were

beaten. During the time of the idolaters, they made there an idol, one thousand feet long, and four hundred wide. It was most wonderful, and was worshipped by many ; but when came the time of the fulfilment of the prophets,\* (on whom be the best peace,) this city was destroyed. The ruins, however, of the place, and of the idol, are still existing, and exhibit a most wonderful appearance ; and many travellers come from distant parts to visit these fragments of antiquity.

Our road was through the plain, which is called the Bakaâ, and after crossing it, we had to ascend those high mountains which were covered with snow, and in the road along which we had to go, there was nothing but water, mud, and snow. Notwithstanding much thinking, I could not make out how it was possible to pass through all these difficulties ; however, we braced ourselves to the task, and travelled an hour till we reached the mud, which was like glue, and where our horses sank up to their breasts. Amid thousands of difficulties, we travelled a parasang in this plain till

\* Mohammed, according to Mussulmanism.



we came to a place which was full of water, like a lake. Here there had arrived before us four Damascenes, who had to cross this water. One of them tried to do so, and drove his horse into it, but he had not proceeded far when he fell, and the animal was carried down the water, but the rider being fortunately able to swim succeeded with great difficulty in reaching the other side. The second horseman did the same, and he with his horse succeeded likewise by swimming. The third horseman did the same, his horse fell in the water, but he himself reached the land in safety. The fourth horseman would not do as his companions did, so he stood by the water till we arrived, during all of which time the rain was falling in torrents. Other people and muleteers who had followed us, also begun to make their appearance, and all of us were in great perplexity as to what should be done, some wishing to go forward, and others equally anxious to return. I told them that if they would listen to my directions, please God, I would get them across the lake in safety. They then trusted to me, and I asked all those who had strong horses to follow me. I first drove my



horse into the water, and they immediately followed my example; the waters however soon came to the bosom of the riders, but thanks be to God, the most high, after a thousand difficulties we came out in safety. A great part of our goods was lost, having been borne down by the water. From the quantity of rain and snow which still continued, and from crossing the lake, we were all of us, of course, thoroughly soaked with water, so that the people could not bear the weight of their clothes. Many of the people and muleteers suffered a good deal from the cold north wind, so that they lost their strength, and could do nothing towards taking care of their loads; so for fear of their lives, they left their loads, and went on walking till they should arrive at some habitation. As to ourselves, we scarcely knew what to do; for we found the rain still falling, and the wind blowing strong and extremely cold, so that, if we were to stop, we might perish. In the mean time the little baggage which remained to us, and was behind with the servants, would all be lost in the water in this foreign land. For the sake of the baggage, I determined to wait here till they

should arrive. In the mean time I found Khoojah Assaad was in danger of dying, for all his clothes, and every thing on him, even to his turban, were drenched with water, and, from the violence of the wind and rain, he fell on his horse almost perishing. Then I told him, "Your state is dangerous, you had better endeavour to find your way to some place to save your life, and we shall remain here for the baggage." Khoojah Assaad therefore left, endeavouring to get to some place through the mud and water. We then laid ourselves down on the ground in the mud in great distress. We could think of nothing else but to preserve our lives. We collected some sticks and reeds, and stuck our guns in the ground, and tying our cloaks together, put them on the guns, in order to form a place somewhat protected from the rain, and to be able to make a fire. With thousands of difficulties, by means of matches and spirits of wine, we lighted a fire. At one time Wali and Taymoor Meerza went to warm themselves, and at another time I went and warmed myself; this gave us a little rest. Some people of the caravan here were nearly dying, and could

not move. After we made the fire, they came and rested a little, and threw their clothes over the fire to dry; some of them were so benumbed with cold, that they put their hands in the fire, till they became like broiled meat. In this manner we remained three hours, waiting the arrival of our baggage; although the distance was not above a mile, yet it was that time in coming. Upon its arrival I did not see how to get it across, as the animals were broken down, and were not able to carry their loads. Our servants also were like dead persons; at last I went to the other side of the water, and had the baggage opened, which was almost spoiled by the rain; however, I divided it into bundles, and, with the Janissary who accompanied our baggage, took them one after another, till we had carried them all over. We could no longer wait here, as it was near sunset I left the Janissary with the servants and baggage to follow, and with Wali and Taymoor Meerza went on. Now the mud was worse than ever, and scarcely any place was to be seen which was not covered with water. My horse here slipped into

a ditch, which was full of mud; I dismounted, and with a thousand difficulties we got him out. We went on slowly, for the horses could not do much, on account of the mud; we suffered from hunger, and still more did we suffer when the sun was set, and the cold increased. It became dark, and we unprovided with any thing to eat, and our horses falling continually; nevertheless we continued on, till two hours after sunset, when we arrived at a miserable ruined village, called Al Merdge. Here we found Khoojah Assaad, who had gone before us, in a miserable dirty house, together with the cows and other animals under one roof, and he was lying down in this miserable place. I asked him what sort of place is this? how can you, in this state, and with these clothes, remain here? He replied, "This ruined house is the best in the village, but there is a caravansary half an hour distant from this village." From all which I had seen in this dirty, filthy, ruined place, I felt that it was not possible to remain in it. Therefore we left him, and went to the caravansary; all our road was in the marsh, and by three hours

after sunset, we arrived at the caravansary of Al Merdge. Praise be to God!\* what a caravansary! Compared with it, Infernos is a paradise, and the hovel where Khoojah Assaad had taken up his abode was as the garden of Eden. This khan, or caravansary, is built of mud, and every room in it filthy and dirty, since their roofs are made with reeds, through which the rain and snow fall in on the poor travellers. The khan, even with all its miserable accommodations, was quite full of travellers and animals; every place in it was occupied. We were placed in a most destitute condition, for we asked the master of the khan whether he had anything to give us to eat, and he said he had nothing, and we had to converse with dirty Arabs, who neither spoke our language, nor we theirs. At last we were obliged to take up our quarters in the stable of the said khan, and we made a fire, which was our only luxury. Five hours after sunset, our poor muleteers and servants with the baggage arrived; but they came nearly dead. The baggage was all covered with mud, and our shawls, and other such

\* A Persian phrase of exclamation.

articles, were seriously damaged. Two of our loads were left behind with the mules, as the servants had no strength to load them after they fell, and two muleteers died in the course of this day. Our servants now might have said, that they would rather have been dust.\* We had some provisions, which we had brought out from Damascus, and which was all mixed with mud and very dirty; however, now feeling so hungry, we took it out, and ate it, and we felt as if we had a delicious dinner, and thanks be to God a thousand times for it.

On Friday the 6th, very early, Khoojah Assaad came to us saying, that he had in his charge some despatches for the steam-vessel, and that, at all events, he must start immediately, that he might arrive at Beyroot in time, and that we might follow whatever course should be most agreeable to ourselves. Beyroot was fifteen hours distant from this place, and our muleteers and mules, from their sufferings in the past day, were nearly on the point of death, but as I felt that all our journey depended on being in time for the steam-vessel,

\* A Persian mode of expressing destitution.

and our stay here in this miserable place was nothing but punishment, I therefore, with a thousand promises, made our muleteers commence; Wali and Taymoor Meerza assisted them in loading the mules. Our interpreter, however, left two hours before us, as it took us two hours to have our mules loaded. Two hours after sunrise we started from this khan, but as soon as we got out of it, a more muddy and worse road presented itself, much worse than that on which we travelled the day before; it was so bad and so fatiguing as to make us forget the troubles of the preceding day. But as the mountain was not far from us, and our muleteers had rested a little the night before, we made all possible exertion, till we got to the entrance of Mount Lebanon, which took us two hours.

There is a village called Macsseh, situated just in the opening of the mountain, surrounded with beautiful streams. Soon we commenced ascending the mountain, had a very fine view of the plains of Bekaâ and Baâlbek, which seemed as if they had flowing through them five thousand streams and large rivers. Having arrived at the village Macs-



seh, we saw a caravan coming from a distance; when we came up with the caravan, we beheld a female, mounted on a mule, in the front of the caravan, having eyes like the eyes of a houri. What wilt thou say of her face, but that it was as the brilliancy of the sun, or as the full moon in darkness, or as the water of life? Her hair was very long and black; in fact, from seeing this moon, which has no equal, we forgot all the fatigues of the journey; but what excited in us great surprise, we saw, at her side, a villanous-looking man, mounted on a mule, who, on inquiry, we found to be the husband of the beauty of Joseph,\* but for the sake of having a little more time for gazing upon her beautiful face, we remained a little time with the caravan, keeping conversation with the husband, and we asked him about the state of the road. He answered, that it was impossible for us to cross the mountains, as they were all covered with snow, and that it was seven days since they left Beyroot, and had been all that time prevented by the snow, which did

\* Joseph, the son of Israel, is considered by the Orientals to be the most handsome man which has ever been.



not allow them to gain more than one or two hours' distance in a day's travelling, and that, at the same time, all the people of the caravan were endeavouring to break a road in the snow, to allow them to pass, but since that, fresh snow had fallen, and shut up the road entirely, and that two men, belonging to their party, had perished. When we heard this story, we really did not know what to do, but we trusted in God, and left the snow of heaven, (the fair lady,) and made our horses push on into the snow of the mountain. Here they sunk up to their breasts, and when we had ascended further, a fresh storm came on, so that the mountains had the appearance of a sea of snow, and no one could take a breath. Going on still further up the mountain, all its trees were dressed with snow, and our horses sunk to their haunches, so that we were obliged to dismount, trusting to God for salvation from this perishing condition. As to the baggage mules, all of them fell down with their loads; when we saw that, then I, Wali and Taymoor Meerza, began to lift the baggage ourselves on the mules; Taymoor Meerza, on my asking him, lifted the heavy load.

When our muleteers and the servants saw what we were doing, they also set to with zeal, and assisted us in the work.

With much suffering, they proceeded on, up the mountains, till scarcely any life remained in them. All of us, indeed, were as if in a state of death. As we went up, the snow continued without any abatement, and the horses sunk to their ears. The mules also fell again, and with a thousand of bitter struggles, we placed their loads upon them once more; they made another effort to proceed, but without success, for the animals fell one upon the other, and the servants and muleteers said that they had no power to move. In short, all of us sat down, and were feeling, that even if we were one thousand in number, no one could escape, and we were fully persuaded that all of us must perish that night in the snow. While we were in this state, a horseman appeared from a distance, and when we saw him, we entertained some little hopes of relief. As soon as he arrived, he said, "I am the chief of that part of this mountain, and my village is near, called Hamânâ. Khoojah Assaad having passed, a few hours ago, through

my village, and being a friend of ours, told us that the Persian princes were coming this way, and asked us to go up the mountains to meet them, and offer them our assistance in carrying their baggage, it being impossible for them to get it along." He told us, also, that if they had not made haste in coming up, all of us would have perished in the snow.

"As soon as we received this intelligence from Khoojah Assaad," said the chief, "we immediately asked some of our relations and natives of Mount Lebanon to come up to meet you, and open a road for you, and conduct you all safe to my house." While he was giving this account, fifty strong fine-looking men arrived; we adored God the most merciful, and thanked him for his mercy. As soon as they came, they opened a road, loaded the mules, and went on. The sheikh, (the chief) who is named Mokadem Hamânâ, offered us every assistance. After going two parasangs, the snow became less, and here we saw the west sea (which is called also the Mediterranean). The air here was delightful; every now and then we came to fountains of water; all the beautiful green herbs

of the spring were growing here, the smell of which was nourishment to the soul ; in truth, they are as heavenly mountains, as if the breath of Jesus had moved on them in the freshness of spring. They are all covered with trees, most of them pines and mulberries, since the people of this mountain work a great deal in making silk. We arrived at the village Hamânâ, where we saw daughters with faces like the full moon, and young men like the beauty of Joseph ; all of them brilliant, as if they had lived constantly under canopies. I asked the old chief, who were these of the beautiful eyes, and why they had come, and what they desired. He replied, " they have come here to offer their services," and we thanked them. The old sheikh pressed us much to spend the night in his house, but as our object was to arrive at Beyroot as soon as possible, we could not accept his invitation, but having rested a little at his house, immediately started.

After proceeding on a little, we saw a mountain waterfall, the sound of which might be heard ten hours' distant, and there may be ten thousand fountains running down the mountain. Alto-

gether it is a beautiful mountain, especially as every where were to be seen villages and fine buildings.\* We travelled till four hours after dark, when we arrived at a caravansary, where we were obliged to stop, having travelled to-day full twelve parasangs. On Saturday the 7th, we left the caravansary, and after descending still more from the mountains, we came upon the plain of Beyroot.

As we have now passed over Lebanon, we will give some account of it.

---

*Account of Lebanon.*

LEBANON is one of the most celebrated mountains in the world, of which God most high has spoken in the holy Bible. The water and fountains are plentiful and excellent, and the air very healthy. The inhabitants are well made and very strong; their language is Arabic, but they speak it so fast, that it cannot be understood. To the east of this mountain is the ancient and celebrated city of Antioch; and game is plentiful. The pre-

\* Convents and Emirs' residences.

sent governor of it is called Emir Bishir, a Christian, under the command of Mohammed Ali Pasha. The said emir is one of the pillars of the Pasha's government; he has three thousand horsemen as his body-guard, and a magnificent palace on the mountain, at a place called Betedin, with a splendid bath. The inhabitants of the mountain are Christians and Druses, a class of persons who believe in transmigration, and hold other remarkable religious opinions. The women here wear a horn made of silver, with which they dress their head.

When we came to the plain of Beyroot, the first thing that we saw was the prickly pear, or nopal, which is planted on all the walls of their gardens, and along the roads. The thorns of this pear are like daggers. In many places which we passed we were troubled by them, till we arrived at the house belonging to Khoojah Antoon Sussa, a friend of our friend Mr. Farren, for whose sake he offered us his house for our residence. The house, like many others, is in a garden outside of the city, and inside of the house there was a beautiful garden, abounding with flowers, with a fine view

of the town. Khoojah Assaad now came up from the town, and brought us some necessary refreshments. We inquired from him whether the steam-vessel had arrived? he said no; we were very glad of it, because it would afford us some time for rest. He informed us that the English consul wished to call upon us; we told him, well, come. The consul called immediately after, asked us of our health, and what were our wishes, and to what place we were intending to proceed. We told him, that on account of the friendship between the two empires, and for the sake of travelling, we were going to England. He was very friendly, and replied, that if he could be of any service to us he should be most happy. After some friendly conversation together, he returned home.

The next day, Sunday the 8th, about noon, we mounted to go to the baths within the city; we were dressed after the fashion of our country, which was a strange sight to the people. This day happened to be the great feast with the Mussulmen, as also the Sunday of the Christians. When we arrived at the square before the



gates of Beyroot, we found about 10,000 men and boys, and girls with faces like the moon, very finely dressed, and playing on swings and whirligigs, as the people do in Persia. As they turned in the swings, their faces shone like the sun, making every wise man lose his mind. As we were going, we could not help admiring these beauties; but every one old and young left the place where they were standing, and ran after us to see us, for they had never seen a Persian before, nor the Persian costume. They continued following us through the whole way, till we entered the bath. This bath is very fine and large, paved with marble stones.

After we had bathed ourselves, we came out to the ante-room, where Khoojah Assaad brought some refreshments for us; some sherbet, &c. Some of his friends and relations residing at Beyroot, came with him to pay their respects to us. When we were going out of the baths, we could not get away from the crowds of people who were gazing at us, till the janissaries made a passage by which we were enabled to go out. When we were on our way to the consul's, the people in crowds were



standing in every direction looking at us, so that we were scarcely able to pass; it seemed as if every person in the place had come out to gratify their curiosity. They followed us till we got to the consul's. On our arrival, the consul came out to meet us, and we sat in his drawing-room. Soon after we had sat down, Mrs. —— came into the room. Behold, an English moon appeared, like a blossoming rose. When I saw this beautiful lady entering the room, I rose up and seated her near me. On the one side, I exclaimed, "Defend me, and save me!" and on the other side was, "Welcome!" In the light of the beauty of this lady, I gave up my soul. From the sun of the beauty of youthfulness, I was enraptured; my heart, from the sweetness of her smiles, and the bloom of that moon, received strength. After an hour of admiration of beauty, and words of gentleness, in the Turkish language, which she speaks, some friends came in, and we bade them good-bye, and returned to our residence.

Monday, and Tuesday the 10th, we remained here waiting for the steam-vessel, our face turned towards the sea, looking for her. We saw a Na-

zarene\* boy in the garden, who came to us, and brought a lapwing in his hand as a present; he went out, and in a moment brought another; he went out again, while we looked from the window, and saw him go up a tree and catch with his hand another bird; we asked him how he caught these birds? he, in answer, went and brought to us a few little sticks covered with something like gum, which is a bird-lime. They place these sticks on the trees, and when a bird puts his feet on the lime, he will be caught. They make this lime here; we bought some of it, which we placed in our garden, and succeeded in catching many birds.

Wednesday the 11th, nothing occurred; but we had always our faces turned towards the sea, and a spy-glass in hand; for we had a great desire to get sight of the steamer, but it was not to be seen.

Saturday, and Sunday the 15th, nothing particular happened. Monday the 16th, we remained at home with downcast feelings. We went into the garden to walk about, amusing

\* This name is given to the Christians in the East.

ourselves with the different kinds of flowers in it. Our eyes fell upon something green and moveable lying on the ground. We came near it, and found a strange creature, the head of which, with its hands and feet, was like a locust; but its waist looked like that of an alligator. It had also a long tail. This animal moved in a peculiar manner, which surprised us. We noticed particularly while it changed colour from its former green to a dark, black as a piece of charcoal; afterwards it changed to yellow like saffron, then it became red like blood; in short, in about an hour it gave us a view of twelve colours. Some people of this place passed near us, and we asked them what animal it was? They gave us a wonderful account about it, and also said it is very sagacious in discovering the mice with its long tongue, which is about ten or twelve draas\* in length, snatches them and eats them, as it is very fond of mice; we found the account to be true.†

Tuesday, and Wednesday the 18th, about noon,

\* An oriental measure of length, nearly equal to twenty-six inches.

† Perhaps few of our readers but will apprehend that the Author is speaking with hyperbole of the cameleon.

being very tired, we wanted to visit some place, and were informed that there was a fine garden near to ours, belonging to a learned Englishman, from which the sea might be seen, and that it was a beautiful place, which we might visit, as the learned man would be happy to see us. Thinking that our visit might not be uninteresting, as the wise men are always possessed of useful information, we went there. As soon as he saw us, he came out to meet us, took us about his garden, where we were amused with the different kinds of flowers. Then he invited us to go into his house, and sit down a little while; we complied with his request, and went up to his house, which is situated in the garden, and commands a fine view of the sea, and is in most beautiful order. He was very friendly and attentive, bringing sherbet and coffee, which we drank. I asked him, "From what country he was?" he replied, "Our origin is from England, and our grandfathers were learned men, who left England to dwell in the new world, which they subdued and cultivated; I was born there, and now am come out to travel in Turkey and Syria, and have been here some time."

He speaks Arabic and Turkish, and had travelled in Russia, and Georgia, and Azerbaijan; he showed us some beautiful maps of four parts of the earth, and two splendid globes of earth and heaven, very finely made, with other instruments of philosophy. He believes, as the other philosophers of Europe do, that the earth is moveable and the sun is fixed, and that the earth is one of the planets which, with all the other planets, move round the sun. He brought some proofs for what he said; he does not acknowledge that the sea surrounds the earth, because men have started from the north pole, and going around the earth have come again to the north pole. After we heard his explanation he brought scales, which he said were for weighing the air; but we could scarcely believe it, for it appeared to us such an extraordinary thing. In proof of what he said, he held up the scales, which were balanced to a hair. Then he brought a bottle, and put it in the one side of the scale, and to the opposite side he put stones to balance it; then he took the bottle out, and with some instrument he drew the air out, and sealed its mouth and put it again in the scale, and the whole

of the difference was seen. Thus he did, so that all doubts were removed from our minds. Afterwards he brought a little chair, on which he placed a vessel of glass, the mouth of which he closed. He tied the glass to the chair with a cord, to the end of which he attached about forty pounds of iron, placed on the ground. Then, with the instruments which he had, he put one of them in the upper hole of the glass, he began to draw the air out of it; the iron was lifted from the ground to the glass. From this was proved the power of the air, because when the glass was filled again with air, the iron fell down. After this he brought a chain about four feet long, on which he put something, like a cylinder of glass with a chain hanging to it; this cylinder was connected with another glass vessel, which had in it also a chain. There were several other articles of glass all connected one with the other, and something which was separated from the cylinder. At last with a certain instrument he touched the cylinder. The result was like the thunder and lightning which successively we hear in heaven. After this he brought a little chair, and placed it near the large

chair, and ordered a person to stand upon it, and gave into his hand the heavy chain which was hung to the cylinder. As soon as he had done so there came fire out of the mouth, eyes, ears, and nose of the person standing on the chair. He asked us to stand, and said there was nothing to fear; however we would not, but the wise man gave the chain into the hand of one person, and another took his hand, and one took the hand of ourselves; suddenly he touched the cylinder, and our hands were twitched from each other with such a force that the pain was felt in the bones; yet it did us no harm, and the sensation lasted only for a moment. How wonderful it was that all of us felt it in the same moment, and with the same power; and if one hundred thousand persons were standing in this manner, all would feel it in the same instant. Indeed we saw wonderful things, and were exceedingly pleased with the sights we had seen. Then the wise man took us into the Arabic printing office, which was in the lower parts of his house; really, it was a beautiful establishment, arranged in excellent order, with clean young men belonging to it, each of them



engaged in his business, and in a moment many sheets were printed. After we made a full observation of the wise man's establishment, we bade him good-bye, and returned home.\*

Thursday, and Friday the 20th, on account of the steamer's delay, we were in a very disagreeable state, and desired to hire a sailing vessel, that we might go to England, but from fear of the sea, and the slowness of sailing vessels, we gave up this plan, and trusted all our affairs to God the most high, and remained where we were.

Saturday early, the 21st, after we had got up, and had offered up our prayers, behold, some persons of the town came up to us with tidings, for which they were rewarded, that the steamer had arrived in the night; and at the same time, Mr. Moore, the English consul, sent us also information that the steamer had come, and would not remain more than twelve hours in the harbour

. \* This was the most useful American mission here, and the gentleman was the Reverend Eli Smith, who has been a long time labouring with other gentlemen in the mission in Syria, which is most beneficial to this country, especially as the said Society, through Mr. Smith's labour, and that of other Missionaries, have established an Arabic press, which the country needed very much. The princes were very much pleased with the object.



of Beyroot, we therefore ordered our baggage to be got ready, and two hours before sunset we left the house of Mr. Antoon, and went to Mr. Moore's, which was near the harbour, where the captain of the steamer came and expressed his friendship to us; we paid him also the usual compliments. Afterwards we left Mr. Moore's to embark, and all our friends in Beyroot came down to the shore to bid us farewell. Half an hour before sun-set, we bade our friends good bye, and exchanged the repose of Mr. Antoon's house in Beyroot for that of the steamer *African*,\* on the west sea, whose waves in anger continually cry out against their riders.

Beyroot is one of the towns of Syria, and is the sea-port of Damascus. During the time of the Greek kings and the philosophers, it was the seat of wonderful sciences, and of a distinguished school; it was the court of knowledge. It is still also a large sea-port, and twenty-seven parasangs from Damascus, but the road from Damascus to it is mountainous and rocky, as has been

\* The name of the steamer.

already described. The city is bounded by the west sea in every direction except on the north, where is Mount Lebanon, which is only one hour distant from it. The mulberries are the principal trees, by which a great quantity of silk is raised and exported to other countries. There is also a place about half an hour distant, where are some fine pines, very high, such as we have not seen in any place; and since Abraham Pasha came to this country there have been planted about half a million of pines, for the purpose of making ships of their wood. There are many houses outside of the walls, in the gardens, all lofty, and built of stones, and having a fine view of the sea. The walls of the town are also built of stones. There are to be found all sects of every religion, and consuls from every kingdom. The air comes from Lebanon, which is warm in summer. The language which is spoken is Arabic. The population is 15,000. Beyroot is one of the extremes of Asia.

Asia designates one of the four quarters of the world. In size it is larger than Africa and Europe, but smaller than America. Its north and south, are the north and south poles; from the east to

its west, is from the sea of China to the strait of Shana Kalâh.\* Its length from the west of Anatolia to the cape of Soporah, which is the most distant part of Russia, is 7580 miles; its breadth from the cape of the frozen sea to the south of Mecca is 5250 miles. The islands of Asia in the great sea from Saporak to the coast of Arabia are innumerable. The rivers of Asia are extremely numerous; the largest are as follows:† Ab Misinti Linct, Kawina, How, Yellow River, Ganges, Indus, Euphrates, Tigris, Karan. The magnificent mountains of Asia, each of which is about 5000 miles in length, are as follows: Auralian, Altaleen, Hemmaleyeh, Kaf,‡ Tauris, Lebanon. The kingdoms of

\* Dardanelles, or strait of Hellespont.

† Our readers must recollect that Eastern geographers have names for many places different from those which are generally in use in Europe. For instance, Aklidos is their name for Spain, Diar-el-moosseriéh for Egypt, Room for Turkey, Irân for Persia, &c. This, however, is not the case with most of the places in Syria and other parts of the Holy Land, viz., Jerusalem, Bethlehem, Jordan, Damascus, Antioch, Nazareth, Joppa, Ascalon, Tadmor, &c.

‡ Kâf, a fabulous mountain, anciently imagined by the Asiatics to surround the world, and to bind the horizon on all sides. In their writings, therefore, to paint the rising of the sun, they say, “when the

Asia are; Tartary, China, Thibet, Burmah, Hind (India,) Room (Turkey,) Irân (Persia,) and Arabia. Many provinces and kingdoms in Asia are in the hands of Russia. There are all sects of every religion in the world in Asia, but the greater part of the population are idolaters. The whole number of inhabitants of this quarter of the earth is about four hundred and twenty millions. The first buildings in the world were in Asia, the great Prophets and Apostles were also from Asia, and their messages were delivered in Asia.\* Great kings of celebrated names have lived in Asia.

The name of the captain of the steamer was Goldsmith. The steam vessel is one of the extraordinary inventions of the world, which was created by the wise men of these times in the New World, and afterwards by the different nations of Europe. The form of this ship is like all

star of day appeared from the height of Kâf, the world was enlightened :'' whilst they express the whole extent of the Earth by, az Kâf ta Kâf, *i.e.*, from Kâf to Kâf. See Richardson's Dictionary, third edition. There is some similarity between the views of the Mussulmans and those of the Buddhists on this subject.

\* Yet, how deplorable is now the state of Asia.

other vessels, except that, in the middle of her, there is a furnace like a room, built of iron, three pikes wide, and the same in length and depth, and a pipe like a cannon, made of iron, very large, proceeds from the iron furnace to the front of the vessel. Upon the top of the room of iron, there is also a pipe of iron in the shape of a mast, to carry the smoke. That pipe which goes from the house of iron to the centre of the vessel is four feet in diameter, surrounded by the furnace. Also there is another large pipe goes up from that furnace to the two sides of the vessel, and two large wheels of a singular construction, made of wood and clamped with iron, are joined to them, on the sides of the vessel, and are moved by the steam. They are four feet under water, and four feet out of water. The wheel is so placed that as soon as they make fire in the house, they turn round, and of themselves they pump water into the iron house, inasmuch that the making of steam by boiling may not stop. These wheels bring water from the sea, as much water as goes off into the air in the steam. They burn mineral coals to boil the water in the iron house, which gives out

from the pipe a thick smoke. Then the large cylinder causes the wheels to turn with great force, and opens a canal in the sea, and makes the vessel fly. The noise of the motion may be heard more than two miles distant. From the iron house where the boiling water is placed, proceeds all this movement; under the cylinder to the right and left are two cauldrons, each one of which holds 8000 pounds of water. The two cauldrons are arranged like a still, so that all the steam which goes up is like mist, which make the water become sweet, fit to drink. There is a mouth to the cauldrons placed in such a manner that the sailors can obtain sweet water to drink. They use 10,000 pounds of coals a day. These coals are found in almost all parts of Europe. This vessel, the African, was fifteen years old, but steam navigation was invented in the year 1222 of the Hegira, but since then there has been a great deal of improvement in this art, and the vessels that are built now are much superior to the former ones. Steam vessels have also a mast which they may use for a sail. When the wind is favourable, they go twelve miles an hour, (whenever we say a mile we mean 5000

feet,) and even when the wind is contrary, they do not go less than three or four miles an hour. The steam vessel might be stopped in an instant, whenever the engineer wishes; this is done by taking off the cover of the iron house where the water boils. We being extremely desirous of seeing a steam vessel, the first thing we did on board was to visit the engines of this wonderful invention. A little after sunset, we saw the smoke going to heaven, and the vessel left the harbour, and our constitution was immediately deranged, and vomiting became our only occupation. Every one of us was thus affected in spite of ourselves, and were obliged to cast down in any place, knowing nothing of the world, or whether we were alive or dead; our servants fell one upon the other like dead persons. At night we knew not what would happen to us in the morning.

Sunday morning the 22nd, we opened our eyes a little, the noise of the wheels and the quickness of the vessel's motion threw us into great astonishment; at noon the English surgeon on board the ship gave us something as a medicine to drink, by means of which we became a little better, but soon



again we fell, and could not sit up, and thought that we should not live after it. About sunset, the captain came down to the cabin to see us, having in his hand the chart. After making some calculations, he showed us the place where the vessel was, which was the third part of the distance from Alexandria. They learn this by looking at the sun with a telescope. During this night also we were no better.

Monday the 23rd, the wind was so favourable, that it made the vessel go as swiftly as possible. At noon the captain looked at the sun, made his calculation, and informed us that only fifty miles remained before we should arrive at Alexandria, but that, as we should arrive one hour after sunset, and, on account of many rocks in the harbour of Alexandria, the darkness would not enable us to enter the harbour without a risk, he would be obliged to lie at anchor at another place near the coast of Egypt, so that in the morning we should enter the harbour of Alexandria, where he would stop twenty-four hours, and then depart for Malta, which is the first place at which we should arrive in the British dominions. We told him that the whole command was in his hand.



We went on all the day long till one hour before sunset, when we discovered the land of Egypt, and saw some of its buildings. An hour after sunset, we rode at anchor near the city, (Alexandria,) where we spent the night. Here we went on deck for a short time, where we amused ourselves a little, in seeing what the men were doing about the anchor, and what they were preparing and arranging in the engines. We had a little rest in the night. Thursday 24th, early in the morning, two guns were fired from our vessel, because if a pilot from Alexandria were not to come out to meet the vessel, it would be impossible for her to enter the harbour, as in case she should go in without a pilot, she would be dashed to pieces. For this reason every vessel that comes near the port fires a gun, that a pilot may come out to conduct her in safety. There are people appointed by the captain of the port expressly for this purpose, and they must be well acquainted with the business. In like manner the vessel which comes out of harbour must have a pilot to take her out. In short, after the guns were fired, a good pilot came on board, and conducted the vessel to an-

chorage, when there came to our sight more than 5000 vessels small and large, of which a great number were of three masts, men of war belonging to Mohammed Ali Pasha. Six of them were large ships of the line, of one hundred and eighty guns each. The rest of the vessels were of other nations. We observed on the shore crowds of people, and many soldiers at drill, and many windmills along the coast.

---

*Account of Alexandria.*

The city of Alexandria is situated on the coast of the West Sea, and its distance from Beyroot is 320 miles, which we accomplished in forty hours. Alexandria is a city of Egypt; it was built by Alexander of the Two Hornes, and in ancient times was one of the greatest cities of the world, and the largest in Egypt, which Egypt is a kingdom of Africa.

---

*Account of Africa.*

Africa is one of the four quarters of the world; it is smaller than America and Asia, but larger

than Europe. The Great Sea surrounds it, except a portion of it which is connected with Asia by the Isthmus of Suez. Buonaparte the Badishah,\* after having taken Egypt, intended to cut through that part of the Isthmus which is connected with Asia, in order that he might connect the West Sea with the Red Sea, so that vessels might enter from one sea to the other; and thus all Africa would have become like an island, separated from all the three parts of the world. Africa is bounded on the east by the Red Sea and the Indian Ocean, on the west by the Atlantic, northward by the West Sea, and southward by the Great Sea. It is 4320 miles long, and 4140 miles in breadth, so that it is nearly square. The inhabited parts of Africa are those which border on the seas, and the interior parts, which perhaps are inhabited, are unknown; and were never visited by any one till a short time since, when some of the learned and philosophers of England and France formed a company and

\* The Mussulman writers rarely give any greater name to the Monarchs of Europe than Keraal or Melek; that is, King, but the Prince calls them Emperors.

began to think of the interior, and desired to know the inhabited places, and if any, by what kind of men, and what sort of country they possessed. For this object some men who knew Arabic well, and the different dialects of the Bedouins, addressed themselves to this company, who gave them money; these persons sell their lives to the company, and go to search and seek out and discover the regions of Africa for the sake of obtaining necessary information for the company, in order that it may be printed and published to the world. Many of those men that attempted this enterprise have perished without gaining sufficient information. The most strange and wonderful things of Africa are near the Mountains of the Moon. In the greater parts of Africa there are hot and poisonous winds, and if a person is not accustomed to the climate he cannot live there. The wonderful and extraordinary animals and birds are numberless. The reason that the said regions are not known, is owing to the scarcity of water and habitations, and the people there are like wild beasts, so that no body can approach them. The language in

Africa is Arabic; most of the inhabitants have no religion, except a few that are Sonites;\* the rest either have no form of religion whatever, or worship the planets. The greatest and the most populous province of Africa is Egypt, which was once in older times the greatest kingdom in the world. The other kingdoms of Africa are as follows: Abyssinia, Sofad, Algiers, Morocco, Tunis, Calis, Guinea, Koobashi, Soukom, Baucks, Louga; these countries are known to the Franks, (Europeans,) and described in their maps. The largest river of Africa is the Nile; its source is from the Mountains of the Moon; the other rivers of Africa are the following: The Orange, Bauharook, Kookoo, Elamal, Noon. The islands of Africa in the Great Sea and in the Indian Sea thence to the north pole, from Socatra to Kazidel and Madeira, are numerous, and are in possession of different powers of Europe. Along the coast of Africa the kingdoms of Europe have possessions. The islands above mentioned have the following names: Tadarah, Shrouth, Kartoon, Tooral, Seneriff, Ban-

\* That is, of the sect of Mussulmans that the Turks follow.

dirah, Verd, Baleh, Toora, Ternandre, and the island of Zooma, which is situated under the equator. Here the night and day are equal, that is, each twelve hours, and the air is always like the spring. There are also many other islands below the equator. These are Lanjacow, Shabro, Asfoor, and the isles of Kamosrow, Zaquebar, Bimbas. In the south of Africa, there is a lake 450 miles long, and 82 miles wide, and the animals that are supposed to produce musk are plentiful about this lake.

---

*Account of Egypt.*

We will now proceed to describe Egypt, which was once called the mother of the countries. The ancient Masser, (or Cairo,) in the course of time was destroyed; the new Cairo was built in the 40th year of Hegira, it is seven miles long, and situated one mile distant from the Nile; a canal, however, cut from it, comes up to the city. The Nile conveys all its water into the Mediterranean sea. The streets of this city are narrow, but the

houses are lofty, and are regularly built. The air in this place is very hot. During all the four seasons of the year, no rain falls in all this country, and if by chance at any time there should fall a little, it often causes great damage.

One of the large buildings of this place is the mosque of Azhar, in which there is a college for Arabic and different branches of learning. There is also in this city a magnificent castle, surrounded by high walls, one mile in circumference; within this castle there is a well, which was built by Joseph the righteous,\* (peace be upon him!) which is 540 feet deep, all cut out of solid rock; down which are steps cut out of the same rock, so that a man may descend to the bottom very easily. Among the most wonderful buildings in the world are the pyramids of Cairo, which were built by the Pharaohs, as sepulchres for the ancient kings of Egypt, on account of their foolish belief that their souls would return to their bodies. Under this idea they made these buildings; they are of marble, and so ornamented with figures cut in it, as to cause the mind to be lost in wonder in

\* Joseph, son of Jacob.

looking at them. All the bodies of the kings are buried there. Beside these edifices, there are many others, of which, to describe every one, would require a large volume, therefore this short notice must suffice. There are persons of all sects and nations in this city, the whole population of which is 300,000. Mohammed Ali Pasha and his son Ibrahim Pasha have constructed some fine palaces in it. The best and most splendid city of Egypt is Alexandria, which was built by Alexander of the Two Horns, 250 years before the birth of the Lord Christ, (may peace be upon him!) During the reign of Alexander, it was the best spot in the world. After Alexander, during the reign of the Ptolemies Kings, (who were also of the Greek philosophers,) there was built in the harbour of Alexandria a very long minaret, which was erected for the sake of rescuing vessels from the risk of the rocks; on the top of the minaret a light being formerly placed at night, as a guide to the vessels. During the time of the philosophers, Alexandria was renowned for the sciences of astronomy, and geometry, and dynamics, and the learned there were the most celebrated men of



their time. Formerly the Franks and the inhabitants of Europe were not acquainted with the present navigation round Africa to India, and the other kingdoms of Asia; all their trade and commerce with the countries of Asia being carried on through Alexandria; for this reason, this city became extremely large and populous.

The dynasty of the Ptolemies (the philosophers) were extremely fond of books on the sciences and history; and of them more especially Philadelphus, who had a strong desire to collect books on history and on extraordinary sciences. He spent in his time a treasure of money to make a most splendid library, which he enriched with books without number. One fourth part of the books of the world were contained in this library. After the second Khalif\* had taken possession of Egypt and Alexandria, he ordered that all these books should be burnt, and thus the famous library was destroyed. There was in former times a canal from the Nile to Alexandria, but the changes produced by ages have stopped it up, and the people

\* Omar was the person.

have, for a long time, lost the satisfaction of drinking the delightful water of that river. Now Mohammed Ali Pasha has, however, brought it again into the harbour, and boats can now come from Cairo to Alexandria in twelve hours. The present population is 45,000. There are consuls from all the kings of Europe and from America. The palace of Mohammed Ali is situated on the seashore, in which he generally resides, but sometimes he stays at Cairo. There are to be found at Alexandria various kinds of fruits, both fresh and preserved, and every other variety of food. After our vessel cast anchor in this harbour we went on deck to look at the city, and the ships around us. We observed many boats going and coming; these, containing some of the inhabitants, came near our vessel, who brought for sale clothes and other articles, and the men on board bought and sold what they wanted.

A boat also came from shore, and brought to our vessel two turtles, large as bullocks, so heavy that the boat nearly sunk. These two turtles were sent by some person in Alexandria as a present to a great man in Malta. We were exceedingly sur-

prised at such a present, until we ascertained that in London and in all the countries of Europe, they eat the flesh of this animal for soup, &c. and that it is preferred to that of mutton, and that only the rich and great men eat it, for the poor cannot afford to buy it. In London, a turtle may be worth 200 tomâns. Here also a fish that had wings jumped into our vessel; we looked at it, and found its two wings beautifully variegated in colours, as if they were painted by an able artist; the mind could never be satisfied with gazing at it. On the day we arrived, we saw many people of different religions and appearances. A respectable man from Alexandria in a boat that came near our vessel, asked us whether we were going to Franckestan or Europe; we answered him in the affirmative: then he said, "I have some very desirable articles, that would make fine presents for Europe, if you will give me a good price, I will sell them to you, and they would be of great value to you." For the sake of looking at his stock, we asked him to come on board. When he came near us, he unfolded to our eyes from a case which he opened, a dead body, from head to foot, arranged in a certain

singular manner with the skin over the bones, and the hair still remained on the head, even the eye was in its place. We were surprised at this sight, and asked him what it was, and what kind of a trade he carried on? He said that it had been his only trade for the last thirty years to sell dead bodies; and that 3000 years before this, in the mountains of Egypt, there was a sect of the Greeks, whose belief was, that after their death, their souls would return to their bodies, and would come and live again in this world; for that reason they built tombs in the rocks of the mountains, where they ordered their bodies to be buried in sarcophagi, which have remained till this time, and their bones have not separated, and that sometimes there are found with the bodies ornaments of gold. These bodies are carried to Europe, for purposes of natural science. After having said all this, and finding that we were not desirous to buy his merchandize, and that we were not his men, he went to seek after other purchasers.

Wednesday morning the 25th, the vessel having lighted her fire, and a pilot coming on board to take her out of harbour, the anchor was weighed and she

made her way towards Malta. After we were out of harbour, the pilot returned in his boat to the coast, and we kept on to the sea. The wind little by little became contrary, the waves beat incessantly upon the front of the vessel, and our ship (the African) was crossing mountain after mountain as if we were in a storm, so that we were overcome, and we fell down as if senseless. For myself, in addition to my feebleness from past sufferings, I was every moment vomiting, and had not a second's rest. I was worse off than my brothers. Every instant the storm grew stronger; till it came to such a pitch,\* that all of us resigned up our souls and pronounced the two Confessions, expecting to be drowned in the water, judging that we were now come to the end of our lives. The paddles made a dreadful noise, and the waves threw their water into the ship, and the sailors were busy in pumping the water out. This continued till sun-

\* The Prince not being accustomed to the sea (as he told me that this was his first passage in a ship) any wind he called storm or hurricane, as I was asked by him nearly fifty times a day, about the wind; notwithstanding I was not a much better sailor than themselves: they suffered much.

set, after which the wind became gradually less and less stormy, till the night was past.

Thursday the 26th, by daybreak, the wind set in against us, and the waves of the obstinate sea rose one after another incessantly, and by and by we again fell down, suffering, awaiting every minute a new death, and to perish in a manner little expected by us. On every occasion the captain attended to us and offered us his services. In fact to-day we were worse off than ever. About sunset the wind became a little calmer.

Friday the 27th, again the winds were contrary, and stronger than ever, and became a real hurricane; the ship made no progress; we had no rest; for the last few days and nights we had not eaten one mouthful of food, except the arrow-root which the attendants used to put into our mouths with spoons. In the evening about sunset, some men belonging to the ship came into the cabin where we were, and shut the windows of the cabin which had let out the bad air; they nailed them up closely. We, seeing what was doing, gave up all thoughts of life, and asked what new tokens of danger had appeared, that made it necessary to

take such precautions. The reply was, "We have signs in the vessel which give us to understand that there will be a gale in twelve hours' time, and in order to prevent the noise of it coming to your ears, and the water from coming into your cabin, we have stopped the windows; you may now expect the hurricane, and now pray to God for deliverance from this misfortune," (Subhân Allah!) what a news! On hearing of it, our hearts trembled, and we were terrified beyond description. From the little which had already passed, which the captain and the men on board thought nothing, of how much greater importance does this news appear, when we see the captain himself alarmed! After being told of the approaching storm, it may be conceived what was our state; we gave up our souls, and began to beseech God for forgiveness, expecting every second the hurricane. The thing which gives the sign of the change of weather and the hurricane, was a rod of glass bored and fixed into a piece of wood. Within the glass there is a portion of mercury in a given quantity, and there are lines made which as the mercury rises or falls indicate the state of the weather; in short, our



lives appeared to be in that glass. The wind became stronger, and the vessel began to contend with the waves. The captain went on deck, and the seamen were about the ship, fastening the ropes strongly, and securing the port-holes of the ship. The wind continued increasing, and all the waves of the West Sea rose up in mountains with never-ceasing noise till they mounted up to Mesheteri.\* We were so miserable that we lost every hope. Sometimes we saw the vessel lifted up to the seventh heaven, and sometimes sunk into the seventh earth, or to the shoulders of the bullock of the earth;† sometimes our feet were above, and our head down. Every moment we expected ourselves offered as a sacrifice to those that dwell in

\* Jupiter.

† As to the seven heavens and seventh earth, this of course is believed by the Mohammedans as a matter of faith and religion, as it is mentioned in many chapters of the Korân. This world is one of the seven. The other six are inhabited by other beings, where Mohammed also is acknowledged as "the first of Prophets, and the fulfilment of Apostles." It is further believed by many Mohammedans that the world is supported on one of the horns of a bullock, and when he is tired of carrying it on one horn, he shifts it to the other, by which the earthquakes are occasioned. Such is the lamentable state of ignorance that exists in the East.



the sea. Our bones from being tossed about were nearly broken. The flood and the waves carried the vessel so high that one might say, that the Creator of the world was sending a plague from on high to the dwellers upon the earth, and that the heavens had descended, and again, "The night is dark, the waves are fearful, the sea's bosom yawns open, and how shall those who are living on shore know our state!" The cabin of Taymoor Meerza was near the windows, and when the storm occurred, the water of the hurricane forced open the window, so that the water flowed into his bed. The captain and the men came down, and closed the windows, and removed the water. On seeing this, our hearts left our souls, and we waited for fate. Notwithstanding that a great storm was raging, all the men on board were silent, as if they were all dead, at the same time they were all attending to their duties, going up the masts; and the captain did all that was necessary at the time, calling the men to do their work, and doing every thing to the best of his ability. In this time of danger they gave the orders with the whistle, which explained every

thing that was to be done; in fact, the most wonderful thing we saw was, that simply by means of this signal, they attended their work and in perfect silence. The hurricane still increased, and every second the waves rose, and the vessel was entirely occupied in meeting the succession of waves. In the morning it came to our minds that we had in our possession some of the holy dust\* of the tomb of the Lord of the Martyrs. I called four men of the ship to carry me on deck, that I might do something to stop the hurricane. After I had been brought on deck, and saw with my eyes the deluging waves, (God protect me! such waves!) higher than the mast, appearing as if they would fall into the ship, and that the vessel would be overturned. The men were pumping the water; this was such a resurrection (predicament), that the least part of it could not be written. I shut my eyes and threw a little of the holy dust into the sea, which in a moment became much calmer, the hurricane not being half so strong. Thank God, the blessing of the Lord of the Martyrs caused all

\* See our note on the late Shah's tomb, where an explanation of this holy dust, &c. is given.

the change. Saturday the 27th, this afternoon the waves subsided, but the wind still remained contrary, and we were not yet assured of life.

Sunday the 28th, the wind again grew stronger, and the waves began to rise, so that we began again to suffer from the hurricane; with every breath we besought the Most Merciful for deliverance; when suddenly we felt ourselves in quietness, the vessel became steady, and we rejoiced; the wind had become favourable, and this tended to stay the motion of the ship, and to cause steadiness and rest. In a moment we noticed that our vessel did not move at all. We asked what was the reason; they said, the coals of the ship were finished. This bad news added a thousand-fold to the distress on account of the hurricane. In a perfect fright we sent after the captain, inquiring, "Tell us, we entreat, how, indeed, are the coals out? what is the truth? what is the matter?" He (the captain) said, "Yes, the coals that we took from Alexandria ought to have lasted ten days, whereas the distance from that place is not more than seven days; but as the coals were not of a good quality, and all the time

we have had contrary wind, the coals are all burnt out, and the vessel stands motionless." Then I asked him how far we were from the desired island, Malta? He said, "From Alexandria to Malta is 820 miles, we have come 600; 220 remain." I said, "May dust be on your head! what remedy are you going to give?" He said, "There is no remedy, unless the wind should become favourable, and then we shall go, partly by the wind, and partly by burning the wooden articles on board. We have a small stock of coals, which we shall use when we arrive near the shore, by means of which we shall enter the harbour." I asked him what quantity of wood there was? He said, "For ten miles burning;" then I inquired, "If the wind should be favourable, how many miles will this steamer go an hour? He replied, "As the steam-vessels have only a small mast and sails, she will go three or four miles a-day." "What do you say?" said I, "may your house be down! by your account it will take us more than four months to get to Malta." He said, "This is the first time that such a thing has happened to me, and it is forty years since the steam

navigation was invented, and such a thing never happened to any captain, and, unless we trust to the Almighty, this calamity has no remedy." All those on board began to talk together on this matter, and, in great distress, trusted to the care of the Most High. The captain made a calculation of the provisions on board; there was found bread for twenty days, and fresh water for fifteen days. Then an arrangement was made that each person should have forty-five drachms of water, and seventy-five drachms of bread, and no more, till we should see how we got on. We asked the captain whether it was not probable that some vessel would pass by us. He said, "It is not likely, because all the merchantmen in this sea go near the coast, in order to be near habitations; that, in case they should be short of provisions, they may touch at some place and take in refreshments; the course out from shore, in the West Sea, is only taken by steam-vessels, because they are sure of arriving in time to the place they desire." This account gave us additional thoughts of danger. We asked for the map of the world, from which we could learn where we were: it was 220 miles

to Malta, and 200 miles to Smyrna, a city of the Ottoman empire, and also 200 miles to Zante, an isle of Greeks; and besides these, there was no other coast or shore any where near the place we were. In short, we did not know what would be the end.

Our vessel of fire, the tartar of the sea, became now like a weak donkey, and the men on board, who had eaten the bread and water\* of Europe, by which they had become strong, could do nothing in this extraordinary predicament. And, we, from anxiety to arrive on shore, and from being in company of persons who did not know our language, (so that, for instance, if we asked for a chair they brought us a spar, or for bread they brought us a pillow,) and from fear of storm, and from the noise of the waves, we had no rest for a minute. Our bones cried, alas! for this disease there is no remedy; our eyes gazed along the sea for a vessel to pass; and our thoughts had no rest, except in trusting in the mercy of Him who takes care of us. We were vomiting all the time.

\* Wine.

From the last day of Safer till Wednesday the 3rd of Moharem, in the beginning of the year 1252 Hegira, we were very weak. This being the month of Moharem, and forbidden by our Situaba to pass the threshold of the most illustrious of the sons of Adam\* particularly the Lord, the prince of the martyrs, and far from the holy places, afflicted with an evil which has no remedy, in the midst of a sea which appears without end, the state of my health bad, the sufferings of my brothers very great, and no hope of being saved, we became most miserable. In these circumstances, from the depth of my heart I supplicated for blessings, and obtained some rest. Soon after, we went to sleep; the conversation of some of the vessel's company came afterwards to my ears, and some went on deck with spy-glasses in their hands, looking to the different parts of the West Sea. We asked what was the news? they said, "Something black is to be seen from a distance; perhaps it is a gihaz."† I said, "If it should be a gihaz, would

\* The prince here means the twelve kaliphs of the Shiâ, especially the family of Ali; this time was a time of pilgrimage with this sect.

† A vessel, in the Persian language.



that she would sing the tune hijaz! \* Oh that she would come near us! Has she the fire-stones? If she has, has she enough for herself, and also to spare for us?" Having been troubled with these thoughts, I did not take any notice of their rumours, and went to sleep. But soon I observed that the conversation of the men was louder, and they were walking about the ship with their spy-glasses in their hands. At last I became eager, and said, "It may be a vessel, and God Almighty has sent her either for our deliverance, or to carry the tidings of our condition to some place near at hand." Now we had something to think upon; I therefore called two men belonging to the ship, who carried me on deck. Notwithstanding that one can see vessels ten miles distant in the sea, yet with all my gazing, I could not see any thing. I took the spy-glass in my hand, looked sharp, and saw something black, like a cap. The captain with the spy-glass went up the mast to see in what direction was the course of the vessel. With the few coals that he had, he ordered to make the

\* An oriental tune.



fire, immediately our vessel took course north-east towards the vessel. They threw a large quantity of coals into the fire-place; the wheels went to work, and the wind was fair, so that we moved with extreme rapidity. After having gone some distance, and being still very far off, they loaded a gun with much powder and fired it.

Immediately afterwards the captain ordered the sails down, and hoisted a red flag at the top of the mast. As soon as the flag was up, we knew that we were nearer to that black object. I asked the captain what the flag was for? He replied, "For the information of the other vessel; we fired the gun, that hearing it they may look towards us; then we hoisted the red flag, which is a sign of distress, to ask them to come to our help; now, if that vessel is English, or a friend, she will turn to us." After this, the captain brought some books which he placed by him, also many flags, and we saw the vessel approaching nearer to us. The captain looked through the spy-glass, and gave us tidings that the vessel had the English flag. As soon as our captain found out that she had British colours, he ordered the flag of distress to be

brought down. Four other flags, each one of different colours (joined to one another) were hoisted up. We asked what signs were those? he said, "Each flag meant a part of a word, all of which combined made the name of the African, thus the other ship will know the name, and, as ours is the king's ship, will come to us." After this, the captain looked in the glass again, took his hat off rejoicing and said, "She is a steamer of the king! she is the Spitfire! coming out from Malta, going to Corfu on official service, to carry the letters of Government, and take and bring news." The captain looked again and said, "Behold, she says she is coming to us." Now from these heavenly tidings, we were so joyful that I cannot describe it in writing. We adored God the Lord, for this relief after such danger. In order to put our hearts at ease, we asked the captain to explain to us how he could, at such a distance, make out the name of the vessel, and that she was coming to us. The captain first showed us some books which contain the names of all the ships of war, and of steam-vessels that belong to the English empire, with their colours, and draw-

ings of the ships themselves, being in all seven hundred large vessels. Also in another book, he showed us thousands of flags, of which each corresponds with a word in the alphabet, and is a sort of dictionary of their language, by which they can speak with each other at sea, so as to understand each other. More surprising still were other books which had signs by means of lanterns, so as to enable them to speak at night; in fact this most useful language was the tongue that made known our state, and obtained for us deliverance. While we were wondering at this accident, the vessel, like a lion, arrived, roaring with her wheels, which made a large hollow in the sea, and by its noise prevented our hearing each other. When she appeared before us, our own vessel looked very small, and the worse did we feel ourselves on account of our not having any coals, and we stood, as it were, before her, begging for assistance. The two large vessels stopped, and the two captains came on deck, offering each other the usual compliments. Our captain spoke of the deficiency of coals in his ship. The other captain replied, "I can give you any quantity of coals you may

want." This answer gave us much pleasure. Thanks be to God most benevolent ! who sent to us at this period a vessel to aid and assist us, and afford us a supply of coals. " Let every heart and mouth give thanks to him, that looked to us in the days of distress." The two vessels stood near each other—the boats of both were ordered down to bring the coals. The other captain was informed who we were ; and that we were going to the English government. He came in his boat to see us, and stood by the side of our vessel, and expressed his friendship and good wishes. We also manifested to him our friendship. We asked him to come on board ; he said, " God forbid ! if our vessel should touch yours, that is to say, if any body of our vessel were to touch any of yours, then all the men of the Spitfire will have in Malta, or any other parts of Europe, to make forty days' quarantine ; no one can touch you, you are now in quarantine." After the compliments passed between us, we inquired from him all the news he could give us about Europe. He then sent us some fresh fruits as a present, and other eatables ; this he threw on board, without

coming in contact with any body. There was another Frank in the boat, sitting at the side of the captain, who said that he was on his way to Teheran, and inquired whether he could be of any service. We told him we would give him a letter to carry with him to our brothers; he said, "I cannot touch the letter."\* Then we delivered to him our message to Nasralla Meerza verbally, informing him of our health, and of our state on board the ship, and the accidents which we had experienced, and the mercy of the Most High. We found, among the fruits that the captain sent to us, a new kind of fruit which we had never seen before, very soft to the touch, of a red colour, like that of the mulberry, the seeds very delicate; it is of sweetish taste, which they eat with pounded sugar; they call it strawberries. After the required quantity of coals was taken on board, each of the captains ordered the fire to be rekindled for starting. All on board of both vessels standing

\* Quarantine was also a new thing to the princes, no such thing being practised in Persia. Many religious Mohammedans consider it against the law or faith, and many Mohammedan doctors write and preach against quarantine as an infidelity.

up and taking their hats in their hands, thus bidding each other good bye. In a very short time we lost sight of each other. Notwithstanding the wind continued still contrary, we went five or six miles an hour. On this day, thank God! we were going on perfectly happy and full of joy. We had an excellent appetite, and longed for some good fish, and inquired of the captain whether he could catch us some. He replied, that it was not possible to catch any when the vessel is going, but, said he, "I will furnish you with fish, which you cannot distinguish from being fresh, and perhaps it will be more delicious." He ordered a few cases to be brought, which were closely shut up, and opened two of them, from which he took out some ten or fifteen fishes, which appeared as fresh as though they had just been caught, and from the other cases he took out some mutton, which also looked perfectly fresh. He said, "This fish is two years old, and the mutton four years. The English men of war which navigate in the Great Sea, and in the New World, and for a year do not see or touch on land, carry with them this flesh, which is prepared by some chemical process,

and it is then put into cases which are carefully stopped, so that the air may not injure it, and by this means it remains as fresh as in its original state, and is eaten as if it were fresh. There is also some meat twenty years old in this vessel, which is as fresh as that which is just killed." We were quite astonished at this description, and ordered our cook to come, and we gave him some of this fish to wash and cook. When it was brought to dinner, we found it superior to any fish we ever ate. We asked what kind of fish it was. They replied, that this kind of fish is only found in the West Sea, called Sultan Ibrahim. To close our repast we enjoyed a refreshing night's rest.

Thursday the 4th, at two in the afternoon, the land and shore of Malta began to appear; every one was running for a spy-glass, with full joy. After a little while, we came within sight of some vessels; the captain looked with the spy-glass and said, "These are the ships of the English Badi-shah, which are under the Captain Bashi,\* Sir Joshua Rowley. This Admiral guards the White

\* A Turkish name for Admiral.



Sea,\* and commands the Grecian Sea, from Malta, Alexandria, Constantinople, and the Austrian and Italian Seas ;† that is, he protects the seas. They came from Malta, and now are under sail, for we do not know where." They are seven in number, all ships of the line, but the one in front, which is the Admiral's ship, called the Caledonia, the eyes of time and the revolvings of day and night, have not seen such a ship, it takes the first seat or rank over all the ships of Europe. It is the largest in the world, and the English Emperor by having such a ship takes the pre-eminence over all the Shahs of Europe. He can in a moment destroy all the kingdoms of Europe and of Room with this ship alone. This ship has cost millions of money. We requested the captain to take our vessel near that ship. A few days ago, our captain had asked us about the Persian flag. Taymoor Meerza had shown him the form and arrangement of Thoolefekah,‡ the conqueror of

\* The Arabic name for the Mediterranean, or what the Prince calls also the West Sea, which is the Persian name.

† Adriatic.

‡ This is the name of the Persian flag ; it is the same as the sword of Ali, the son-in-law of Mohammed, whom the Persians follow. It is



the world, and gave him a picture of it. The captain made one like it, and to day when we were approaching the royal fleet, our captain first hoisted the flag of the other ships according to the custom, afterwards he hoisted the colours that explained the name of the African, and then hoisted Thoolefekah. When we came near the Caledonia, Praise be to God! she appeared like a large city on the face of the sea. The mind is astonished and delighted at her noble figure she has several stories, and her masts reach to the sky, so lofty that an eagle could never fly above them. She is so elegantly constructed that no edifice was ever built like her, and being so beautiful outside, what an idea must we form of her splendour within!—120 very large guns were the measure of her power, and her other military stores are without number. A large number of marines were bringing up their beds, and we had an excel-

believed by most Persians and Mohammed's followers that this sword had two blades, and that it was a heavenly gift. They believe that this same sword (which bears the title of conqueror of the world) will be used again by the twelfth Kaliph, who is to come and conquer the whole world, and make all mankind followers of Mohammed.

lent opportunity to see them, for we were sitting on chairs on deck. The Captain Bashi, after being informed concerning us, came upon deck and manifested his friendship, and presented us his compliments; we also returned our compliments to him. We also had a view of all the other ships of war, which on the whole afforded us a grand and most interesting sight. One hour before sunset we arrived near the isle of Malta. What a beautiful city presented itself! It is 1120 miles by water from Beyroot, but we were, from the contrary north wind and want of coals, thirteen days and nights coming.

The Isle of Malta is a part of the kingdoms of the Franks. It is sixty miles round. The city of Malta is called Valetta, situated on a hill, on which there are roads made so fine as to have the carriages run in every place. The houses are high and built of stones. A very strong wall surrounds the city, so strong that if all the troops of the world should encamp against it, unless from want of provisions, they would never take possession of it. It is in the West Sea, which is called, in their language, the Mediterranean: it is a part of the

confines of the English empire. The English take exceeding good care to watch it and to fortify it. Alexandria and Egypt are to the eastward of this island, Africa and Algiers to the southward, and northward Sicily. There are some regiments of troops and soldiers ordered by government to defend the isle ; also some men of war, with an admiral and other officers, to protect these parts. It is bounded in part by the emperor of Austria's dominions, in part by Rome and Italy, and in part by the Room's dominions. The Isle of Malta, after it was given up by the emperors of Kayan, became the possession of the priests and monks ; afterwards it was taken by the Khaliphs of Abbas,\* but it afterwards came again into the hands of the natives. In the year 1213, it came into the possession of Buonaparte, the Badishah of the French, who had then taken many kingdoms of Europe, and destroyed a multitude of people. It remained in his possession two years, and at last it was taken possession of by the English, who have now possessed it thirty-five

\* Abassi Khaliphs, who reigned from A.D. 749 till the extinction of the Khalifat in 1258.

years. In time of peace they keep there four thousand soldiers; in time of war many more. Seven ships of war are also here for carrying forward and backward news. These soldiers are distinguished by being naked from the knee to the thigh. The language of the natives is Arabic mixed with Italian. The reason of this mixture of language is, that during the reign of the Khaliphs of Abbas, there were a great many mussulmans residing here, and although the original language of the isle was Italian, yet by reason of the residence of the mussulmans it became mingled with Arabic. The air here is very cold. The inhabitants cross from one place to another in boats, for there are many different places inhabited which are separated from each other by arms of the sea stretching up into the country like canals. The anchorage is near the hill on which the houses are built. All kinds of fruit both of a cooling and heating nature are cultivated here; and also brought from other places where they abound. There is also the orange fruit, large and good. The vegetables are excellent. There is another sort of fruit like a pear, but it tastes like an orange;

lemons and citrons also are plentiful. The corn is good, the bread very clean and excellent. Their gain is by trading; the bazaars are fine. The whole population, according to this year's census by Government, as put down in books, with the person's name and quality, is 120,000. The most wonderful thing is, that there is no laban\* to be got at any price. It is likely that in all the kingdoms of the Franks and in all Europe, it (laban) is not to be had. This is very strange, neither is it the custom to have baths in Europe. All the flowers of spring and autumn are found in Malta; the roses and pinks are superior. In summer the day is as long as fifteen hours, and the nights of winter are the same length. The Gidi, which is the north star, is to be seen here in the midst of heaven, and by facing towards the east, is to be seen on the left side. Such a splendid place as Malta has not been seen by us till this time, but comparing it with other cities of Europe, it is like a village. On this day one hour before sunset, we came to the harbour of Malta; the anchor

\* Sour milk, a very esteemed and general dish in the east; it is to be found every where eastward.

made such a concussion in the sea, as to resemble the shaking of a foundation of a castle in town. It was not possible to land during the quarantine, yet we sent Khoojah Assaad to the Lazaretto to prepare a clean place for us; and this night we slept on board.

Friday the 5th, one hour before noon, we entered a boat, and landed in the quarantine establishment. What a beautiful edifice! what a strange building came to our sight! all of stones, and all for the sake of quarantine.

The law of quarantine with the Franks is an important article of faith in their religion; if they break it, according to their belief, they will be punished in the last great quarantine.\*

The quarantine, or the Lazaretto, is a very strong, large edifice, and very lofty. All the kings, by the advice of learned men of Europe, have in their different dominions such an establishment. According to their law, it is most necessary to perform quarantine, and whosoever breaks it, is condemned to death. It is established on account

\* He compares it with the last punishment.

of the plague and other contagious diseases. In every kingdom of Europe there are different opinions in regard to the period of time necessary to observe quarantine. Some demand forty days, others a month; in Malta it is twenty-two days. This establishment is built on a place opposite the city, and separated from it by the quarantine harbour, which nearly surrounds it in every quarter. There are a great many apartments in this Lazaretto; large and lofty rooms. It has two captains and agents for its direction, who must be acquainted with its laws. God protect! If any one should break the law of this place, or do any thing contrary to its regulation, though it should be the emperor of all the face of the earth, and offer millions of money, it would not be accepted; nor could he escape the punishment. All vessels which come from the Great Sea (or the surrounding sea) do not perform quarantine, but those that come from the White Sea, (or West Sea,) and the Room's dominions, must perform the quarantine, also those of Austria and Egypt.\* The

\* There was at this time a quarantine from Trieste, on account of cholera being there.



regulations of quarantine are as follows: Whenever a vessel comes near the isle, it must hoist a yellow, bad-looking flag, which is the quarantine colour. When it comes to the anchorage, it must communicate with nobody, and no person with it. When it lands, in the Lazaretto, it will have a guard, whom they call the *guardiano*, and then they can buy any thing they may want. The passengers take apartments furnished, which they must pay for. They can have any thing they may like, any thing eatable or drinkable, every thing that even delights the eyes or pleases the tastes. Some men come from the city in boats, on the face of the water. Each different company in the Lazaretto has a separate passage, where they can purchase whatever provisions they may want. The seller puts the articles on the stone, and the purchaser takes it; the *guardiano* always is standing by the purchaser to see that he does not communicate with others. They believe that wood, stone, iron, any thing in liquid or powder, does not communicate the plague. In case the seller should by accident touch with his finger the purchaser, then the *guardiano* will immediately take him up and make



him perform the quarantine which the purchaser has yet to perform. There is no avoiding it. Even those that are in the quarantine could not communicate with each other, except those who have arrived together, or those whose quarantine is of the same length. Those that have different time to stay, have different departments; each has limits which he cannot pass over. Should persons of different periods of quarantine communicate with each other, they must all perform that quarantine which is the longest. After they come to the Lazaretto they must open all their clothes, and every thing they may have, to the air; the captain of this establishment must see every day that this is done; if any thing were left unopened, the time of quarantine would be lengthened. When the twenty-two days have elapsed, the passenger is visited by the captain, who gives him a note in his hand, stating that he has finished his quarantine. If, as he goes to enter the boat for the purpose of going to the city, he should touch any body who had just arrived, he must be taken again to perform a new quarantine. If any one should run out from the quarantine, or come into the

city without performing the quarantine, he would be put to death, and his blood goes without price. The law of the Franks does not inflict death as a common punishment, but punishments are either fines, imprisonment, or banishment ; yet the sin of breaking the quarantine is condemned as crimes to death.

A curious accident occurred during our residence here. Taymoor Meerza, in order to beguile the tedious time, took his gun and standing in a sort of window,\* which faced the sea, amused himself for a few hours in shooting gulls. He then sat down in the same window, which happened to be directly over the spot where the man who provides the passengers with provisions (called spenditore) had just brought some things to sell ; upon this unfortunate man one of Taymoor Meerza's slippers dropped from his foot. When the guardiano saw this, they fell upon the spenditore like the angels of punishment. The poor man ran away to his boat, where he touched the other two that were with him in the boat. All three were brought up

\* Balcony.

and were obliged to perform the quarantine. When we landed at this place, we were conducted to a spacious, lofty apartment. The Governor of Malta, who is named Colonel Cardew, as a favour to us, had sent orders beforehand to the captain of the Lazaretto, to prepare for us a place furnished with every thing, and not to charge us for it. To-day the Colonel sent a person to us with his best compliments, and begged us to fix a time when he should call upon us. We mentioned the afternoon of the following day. After this messenger had been despatched with the answer, another came from Sir Thomas Briggs, a gentleman of high respectability holding the rank of Rear Admiral (or the Captain Bashi of this isle) appointed by the King to this office. We fixed to see him also on the ensuing day.

The next day, Saturday, the captain of the quarantine with the other agents had prepared a place below, close to the sea, for receiving our visitors. It is the custom here, that if a person of distinction should unavoidably endure this quarantine, he need not undergo the additional sufferings of being deprived of a sight of his friends.

For this purpose, they have some rooms built near the sea. These rooms are divided by balustrades, on one side of which sits the visitor, and on the other the visited. Guarded by the agents and guardianos, they converse together, but without being allowed to touch one another, for should this be the case, the visitor must join the visited in this confinement. When the Admiral called they informed us, and we went into the room. We found him a very friendly person. He was accompanied by six other officers, and he offered us his services and friendship. After the compliments passed between us, he withdrew. The Colonel also, at the appointed time, called and was very polite and friendly in offering us his services. He asked us by which route we intended to go to England, whether by sea, or by land; we replied, that we had not yet made up our minds, as the sea did not agree with us, and that we should like to go by land, but that we should be guided as God would direct. He remained with us about an hour and then departed, and we returned to our mansion.

Sunday the 7th, Monday the 8th, and Tuesday the 9th, we were at the quarantine engaged in

performing the prayers of Ashoorâ,\* reading the Holy Book,† with thanks to the Most High, and awaiting the end of our quarantine.

Wednesday the 10th, nothing happened worthy of notice.

Thursday the 11th, we were quite depressed; we asked the agents whether there was a place in the Lazaretto where we might take a walk. They answered in the affirmative, and conducted us through large buildings built of stone, which are so exceedingly elegant, that nothing like them had been seen. We were three hours looking at these places, and did not see the tenth part of them. We were surprised how they could have built them, and at the vast sums which must have been spent upon them. In some of these places, we observed some bullocks and other kind of quadrupeds which had also, as we were told, to perform quarantine. In another place we saw a noble lion within a grating of iron, which had just arrived as a pre-

\* It is a time of mourning with the Shiaâs Mohammedans, as about this time Hossein, the Son of Ali, was murdered by the Ommiades.

† Korân.

sent from some King to the English Badishah. We afterwards visited the burying ground, where they inter those who close their lives during the quarantine. It is a garden of beautiful flowers, the tombs are built of fine marble. After we visited these places, we returned about sunset to the mansion.

Friday the 12th, we entered a boat, and had a view of the city Valetta, and about sunset we returned to our place.

Sunday the 13th, Monday the 14th, and Tuesday the 15th, nothing worth notice occurred, except on the night of Tuesday, one hour after sunset, news was brought us that the Spitfire had just entered the harbour, on her way to England. We also learned, that if this steam-vessel should leave Malta, and we did not take our passage in her, there would be no other packet for at least another month, and we should be obliged to take a sailing vessel, which would be at least two months in reaching England. On this account we wrote to the governor to procure us a passage on board.

On Wednesday the 17th, he sent us an answer, saying, "That it was true the Spitfire is a very

fine steamer, and that, although he would have been very happy to see us land in Malta, that he might be of use in offering what was in his power; yet as we were anxious to start, he had given instructions to the captain, with regard to what was necessary and proper for us." His letter was a great instance of politeness and condescension.

Wednesday we ordered every thing to be ready for starting.

Thursday the 18th, very early in the morning, the Colonel of Malta\* sent us a very polite letter to the following effect: "It is the desire of your obedient servant, that, after quarantine, you should pay a visit to the city, where his best services would be at your command continually." We were now informed by friends that we should send to the Colonel of Malta our cards. We asked what were cards? They replied, that if a man is invited to the house of a friend, and cannot go, the card answers the purpose just as well as if he should call in person. We accordingly ordered some of these cards, on which we wrote our names

\* I believe the prince by saying the colonel, and not the governor, means to give him the military rank and honour.



with our titles of honour, and sent them to the Colonel. About noon we entered a boat, and were received on board the Spitfire with all honour. What a beautiful ship! Every thing prepared as if it were a city! The fire was increased; Thoolefekah, (the Persian flag, see note, p. 206,) was hoisted up, and when we came before the city, we received a salute of twenty-one guns. The wind becoming contrary, and the sea very tempestuous, we were thrown down quite helpless.

Friday the 19th, and Saturday the 20th, the wind continued as before, but she was so fine a vessel that she nevertheless continued to make eight miles an hour.

Sunday the 21st, the tempest became a little less, and we were at this day off the coast of Barbary, and soon after came in sight of the city of Rafrat, at which we gazed from a distance.

Monday the 22nd, we were all the day close to the coast of Africa, which is one of the four divisions of the world.

Tuesday the 23rd, we lost sight of land, and came again into the midst of the sea.

Wednesday the 24th, we reached the coast of



Spain, which was to the right hand. It is in Europe, which is also one of the four quarters of the world. We passed some beautiful cities, and wonderful remains; we were favoured with a south wind, and the vessel went twelve miles an hour. There were at this part of the sea, about five hundred vessels, which were driven from their course, and thrown into disorder by the adverse gale which they had encountered. On this day, the wind being favourable, they made all sail, and every one endeavoured to obtain a quick passage, but we beat and passed them all; though the wind was quite in their favour, our steamer went twice as fast as they. In short, this day our horse went with extreme rapidity. Scarcely did we come in sight of a place before we lost it again; so favourable was the weather. We continued this during the day, and some hours of the following night, But at the end of the night our vessel fell into an extraordinary dashing and commotion of the waves. We were quite surprised at this change, and said to the captain, "The wind is favourable, why is all this?" he replied, "This place here is where the Great Sea comes into the White Sea, and

Gibraltar is not far from us, where there is the narrow strait; this being the case there must be all this motion of the ship, and we must expect more of it." We passed the night in this terrible motion, but the wind was so fair, that the wheels of our ship cut the sea as if it were a sword, and the noise of the wheels extended two parasangs distant.

Thursday morning the dashing of the waves became much more violent, so that we lost all hope of our lives. We never thought of such calamity; the water of the waves dashed into our vessel, and we were nearly drowned. The waves carried the vessel as high as the mountains; all of us were entreating and beseeching God that we might reach the land. Four hours after sunrise, the mountain of Gibraltar came in view, and the strait was not more than one parasang broad. To the right hand is Gibraltar, and to its right is Spain. Gibraltar is a place, that if all the troops of the whole world should assemble against it both by land and by sea, they will never be able to gain possession of it, for it is impregnable. The king that has possession of this important place will oblige

all the other kings of Europe to stand in need of him. Without his licence, no boat could pass the strait. The city of Gibraltar is situated at the foot of a very great mountain, which stands between the two seas. The height of the mountain is about two parasangs, and one parasang round. All this mountain is of hard and naked rock. The waves of the Great Sea themselves are like mountains around this great mountain. Every second these waves are lifted up high to heaven, and every moment they quarrel with the mountain, and their noise stops the ears of the sky. The two seas make a terrible commotion, and cause a dreadful noise, so much, that if a gun was to be fired near the ear, it could not be heard. Such a horrible and dreadful sight is not in any other place of the world. This mountain, although rocky, yet is adorned with flowers.

The city of Gibraltar is between the western and southern parts of this mountain; in addition to its forts, it has a wonderful wall cut out of the mountain itself, sixteen feet high, and eight wide. It is so strong, and extremely fortified, that even a mouse could not pass through it. There are

some edifices, built by Charles V. of Spain. Gibraltar, for a considerable time, belonged to Spain, and, in fact, it is in Spain. Before this time, the kings of Spain were in possession of all Europe, and were more powerful than all the kings of the west. Three hundred years ago, a Spanish philosopher, who was named Christopher Columbus, by his observations and reflection of the planets, and his knowledge of astronomy, which receives great attention among the savans of the Franks;—this philosopher, by his industry and superior skill, found out the New World, which is known by the name of America. Spain possessing then this New World, and the mines of gold and silver, became so rich that it neglected the discipline of the troops, and the wise superintendence of the empire. Their kings also, from the pride which attended their great accession of wealth, fell from their high position, and lost many parts of their dominions. Gibraltar also was taken by the English Badishah, (i. e. Emperor,) and it is now about fifty years since it came into his possession.

The English have laid out enormous sums upon

it, and have so much fortified it, that no person without seeing it can form any idea of it. Every king of Europe has been extremely anxious to possess this place, and every one who has ever had it from three hundred years ago till now, has endeavoured with great zeal and power to fortify it. The English were the last who got possession of it, and as it is the key to their empire, and, as all the other kings of Europe keep their eyes upon it, so they have employed all their wisdom and skill in rendering it impregnable. The mountain is steep, and two parasangs high, and over all these mountains, where a cat could scarcely find its way, they have cut excellent roads in a most wonderful manner, so that carriages may ascend to the very top of the mountain. They have also built barracks for the soldiers, extending from the sea-coast, where the city is situated, to the top of the mountain, in a serpentine form. Batteries mounted with cannon six feet long communicate with each other in every direction, and when war takes place, no one could escape from their balls. They can hit every place; even a little boat could not avoid their

fire. All this mountain presents a most wonderful sight; tiers of guns rising one over another in such an astonishing manner. There are now mounted nine hundred very large cannon, and the preparations for war that are to be seen here, are sufficient to bewilder the mind of the beholder. What wilt thou say? The one half of the ammunition and military preparations is in all the rest of the world, and the other half is in Gibraltar. The balls and shells are innumerable. When we landed here to go to the governor's palace, we were half an hour in passing by the hills of cannon ball piled up ten feet high; like the harvest of corn, one above the other, as in a magazine of grain, so beautifully arranged that the eye never wearies gazing at them, and the mind, by observing such preparations, is greatly astonished. The whole materials of ammunition are in perfect order; the balls are of ten Tabriz mauns weight, and every thing connected with war is in perfect order, and their number is beyond calculation. In short, a city in such fine order, and such powerful fortification,

is not at this time to be found in any part of the whole world, and the greatest travellers have never seen any thing like it, neither does it ever enter the minds that there is such a castle upon the earth. Even the swift-winged wind has never passed any other place like it. In short, unless the eye should see how the cannon are ranged on the mountain, how wonderfully the batteries are constructed, pointing in every direction, the ear would not believe it. This place was formerly in possession of the Mussulmans and the Khalifs of Abas. The prince Kouragan also once possessed it, and there are still now some buildings of his. The heat of the air in the summer season raises the thermometer to 85 degrees, but in winter it is as low as 45. Fruits of all kind might grow here. The edifices of this place are lofty, the city is built in the lap of the mountain, and the houses receive all the water of the winter season, so that not a single drop can pass away without a use. All the rain that falls is conveyed through channels cut in the rock, which carry it to the houses, and to every other place where it is wanted. All the year long they drink the rain water, yet spring water is



found also. They cultivate in these mountains some fine gardens, which contain beautiful roses and different sorts of delightful flowers. The bazaars and markets are in very good order, and beautiful women sell and buy. In short, it is an adorned and perfect city. On this day, four hours after sunrise, we arrived at the harbour, where we found about ten thousand vessels of different descriptions.

The distance from Malta to Gibraltar is 1130 miles, which the Spitfire performed in eight days. The Captain of our ship is called Kennedy, indeed he is Khennedy.\* When we cast anchor, the Governor having been informed of our arrival immediately sent his Lieutenant on board, with his compliments, manifesting his friendship. He also sent a splendid carriage for our reception, in which we sat and passed by many places where we observed the beautiful batteries and excellent cannon and ammunition. When the people of this place heard that the Persian Princes had arrived, all, both old and young, men and women, about

\* Name of a mountain in India; I believe the Prince compares the Captain to the mountain, on account of his being a very stout gentleman.



50,000, crowded around us to gaze at our caps and costumes ; and followed us all the way, till we arrived at the Palace of the Governor. Here a good number of soldiers were standing under arms to salute us. The Governor came out from his residence to meet us, and in a most friendly, honourable manner, invited us into his palace. After a few minutes his Lady came into the drawing-room, and with great politeness complimented us on our arrival. Here we had a very pleasant conversation ; indeed we were now most agreeably reposed. But whenever the troubles and sufferings of the dreadful sea, with the dashing of the terrible waves, were recalled to mind, every pleasure was dissipated. From the fear of storm and noise of the waves we had enjoyed no sleep for several nights past, and accordingly we now felt very sleepy. The Governor very kindly said that he would esteem it a great honour if we would take our rest in his house, yet as he was anxious that we should be most comfortable, he therefore had prepared a separate mansion for our reception, where he hoped we should be very comfortably and pleasantly rested. The carriage therefore was

ordered, when the soldiers who were standing at the gate saluted us, and we were conducted to the house with due honour. As soon as we entered our mansion, every one of us went into his bedroom and sunk down upon his bed for repose, and slept all the rest of the day and all the night until the following morning.

Friday the 26th, the first aide-de-camp, with some officers of rank, called upon us on the part of the Governor, brought to us some fine horses, telling us that if we pleased we might take a ride and see the batteries that they had cut out of the mountain, where cannon without number are arranged. We having been for so long a time denied the pleasure of riding longed for such an opportunity, and gladly accepted the invitation. Thus we with our suites mounted, accompanied by the officers who conducted us to the mountain. Oh! what a wonderful place! the mind here is completely bewildered. Serpentine passages are cut in the mountain itself, like the ascending stairs of a minaret, and the rock itself is constructed into a battery, and pierced for the reception of the enormous cannon, which are so skilfully point-

ed, that if even a fly should attempt to pass the strait, it could not escape the balls. In fact, if all the troops of the world were to encamp against this place, neither their number nor their power would be of any avail. Some of the cannon were fired while we were there, and caused a dreadful roar. Afterwards we took a ride around the mountain, visiting some of the edifices and so returned home. About the Asser,\* the Governor sent us an invitation for a visit to his beautiful garden, where the ladies of the city expected to be present. According to the Governor's request we entered the carriage and set off for the Palace. When we arrived, the Governor came out to meet us and conducted us to the garden, which is like a Paradise. All kinds of roses and elegant flowers were smiling with their blossoms, and music prepared. There were there young ladies of graceful forms and beautiful faces and ambergris hair. These houris were taken by the hand by handsome young men, who conducted them to the garden,

\* Asser is generally about three o'clock in the afternoon. The day with the Mohammedans is divided into five principal times of prayers. Asser is one of these.

and seated them under the roses, where their own fair cheeks and the blossom of roses gazed proudly at each other. The nightingale also was jealous at the song of the musicians, who were standing by, ravishing the hearts. All kinds of fruits and sweetmeats, with drinkables, were furnished on long tables, throughout this place of pleasure. In truth it was altogether a majestic assemblage. Under those trees of roses, chairs were placed where we were seated. After we sat down, the moonly faces with perfumed hair added to our pleasure by making a ring around us ; we at the same time complimented every one of them. As soon as the musicians began to exhibit their science with their instruments, every one of the gentlemen present took the hands of a lady and commenced dancing. The movement of their feet in this garden of Eden was wonderful. After they finished dancing, every one took the one he loved to the place of refreshment, and presented her with whatever she desired, conversing with each other on things relating to the heart. At sunset, the Governor invited us into his Palace, where we had to take dinner. The table was splendidly

furnished with all kinds of delicious things, such that it would be entitled to be called a magnificent entertainment. After dinner, we went into the drawing-room, where there was assembled a company of honourable ladies with whom we carried on some interesting conversation, and spent a very pleasant part of the night ; and the day and night were most agreeably spent. Late in the evening the Governor asked whether we should like to see a manœuvre of the soldiers and the exercise of the artillery. We being anxious to see the exercise of the English Badishah's troops, his offer was quite to our desire, which we accepted and afterwards went home.

Saturday morning the 27th, the Governor with the generals and officers of rank dressed in their military uniform, with the artillery, &c. went out of the town. We also after breakfast mounted our horses and accompanied the Governor out of town. The people of this place old and young, also went out to gaze upon the two things, that is, ourselves and the manœuvre. There were such crowds, that they covered the face of the plain. No man remained in town, and no woman was left in

her place. We arrived at the place where the royal standard was flying, where we also halted. The artillery were first ordered to give their fire. The cannoneers ingeniously and fearlessly poured forth their burning fire, so that the plain from the blaze of the cannon became as brilliant as Kooch Badagshan,\* and the smoke obscured the face of the boundless sea. Afterwards the soldiers were ordered to exercise, and they exhibited in different ways; in truth such instructed, well disciplined troops we have never seen. They continued the fire of exercise three hours, and the roar of guns was perpetual. After this, the colonels and officers passed by us with their regiments, saluting us; we praised them for their ingenuity in their evolutions. The standard bearers also passed by us and saluted us by bowing the flags down, according to the honour due to royalty, also the bands of music. We also returned them all the necessary compliments. Indeed it was a most beautifully arranged army, and quite wonderful. We were exceedingly pleased with them, and re-

\* The name of the mountain in India, where they dig the rubies. This illustration is to show that the fire appeared as red as rubies.

turned home with the Governor through the bazaars, extremely satisfied; the Governor accompanied us to our residence, manifesting great politeness and friendship. He again invited us to a parting dinner, for this night we had to embark on board. Three hours before sunset, the Spanish Consul-general at this place called upon us and said, "As you are to leave the next day, and have to pass by Cadiz, which is a place of the Spanish empire, I came to offer you my service by writing to the Governor of that city to be ready for your reception, and to present you with his humble services." We thanked him for his offer and told him that, as the steamer would remain there but a few hours, we should have no opportunity; but, please God, on our return from England we might pass that way, as we intended to return by France and Spain, and then it would be the time to give him some trouble,\* and accept his offers. After we had some conversation together, he took leave and departed, and we went to the Governor's. When dinner was over, we conversed on the sorrows and grief of separation. In truth, although

\* This phrase, in Persian as well as in Arabic and most principal oriental languages, expresses acceptance of favour with humility.



we had not known each other before, yet all of us felt much pain to separate from each other. His friends and family all are excellent people, and very polite and friendly. We spent four hours of the night on this subject, afterwards we bid them good-bye. The Governor came out with us, and sent his first lieutenant and other officers to accompany us and see us safe on board. In this manner he conducted us to the place where we entered the boat, and requested them to go back; thus we entered the Spitfire, again awaiting fresh sufferings and sickness. Five hours at night, the captain ordered the anchor up and started. We were all the night going by the coast of Spain, and at one hour after sunrise of the next day, Sunday, the last of Moharem, the Sacred,\* we arrived at the harbour of Cadiz. This city gives a beautiful view, with the churches in it. There were in the harbour innumerable vessels. Our vessel anchored here for five hours, to land the passengers they had on board for this place, with other

\* All the months in the year bear rank with the Mohammedans. For example, "Moharem" is the name of the first month of the Mohammedan year, and "El Harâm," or "the Sacred," is the rank or title of that month; so "Safer" is the second month, and its title is "El Kheir," or "the Good," &c.



things, and to take the letters and whatever passengers might be ready. When the royal ships in this harbour were informed of our arrival, they fired a salute for us. The British Consul-general here came on board to visit us; the Governor also sent an officer to compliment us on our arrival. Taymoor Meerza, being desirous to visit the town, took a boat, accompanied by Khoojah Assaad, and went on shore; the boat was nearly upset. God was merciful, and they landed safely. It being Sunday, he visited the celebrated church, which is the most splendid in Europe, and nothing like it among all the churches of the Franks. After visiting this church and some of the bazaars and other edifices in the city, he returned on board. Immediately after the anchor was taken up, the smoke rose high to the sky, the steam forced its way, and the wheels opened canals in the sea.

Monday, the 1st of Safer Victorious, Tuesday the 2nd, Wednesday the 3rd, and Thursday the 4th, we were going by the coast of Portugal, which is a kingdom of Europe. All this time we had a storm, and nothing entered our mouths, being all the time sick. Friday we came to the great

surrounding sea, where there is a bay which has no end, and can only be fathomed by the Creator. It being so deep its water is as black as ink and turbid. It is 400 miles long, its waves rise like mountains, and their water poured out on the top-mast of the vessel; it is called the Bay of Biscay. Although the wind was not much contrary to our course, yet in this place it caused a most dreadful motion to the vessel, such as we had not had before. The captain said, that ‘ There was not any such dangerous place in any other parts of the seas, not even in those of America and Hindoostan,’ and that he had navigated in many parts of those, but never saw any such frightful place. God have mercy upon us ! About a thousand vessels yearly meet their fate in this dreadful place, indeed few are those that pass it in safety. In short, from fear of Biscay we lost all rest and tranquillity, every hour imagining that we should be drowned. Two hours in the night they gave us tidings that we had passed this Bay. But now we were informed of another dread, that on account of this Biscay and the fear of it, they lost their calculation, and the man at the helm lost his course, and from the

apprehensions of this we were again thrown into trouble. The following is an account of what happened once to a ship.\*

There was a vessel taking this course at this season of the year. At midnight a cry was heard on deck. On inquiring what it was, God defend ! behold it was a ship, wrecked all in pieces, and her masts on the face of the water. At a distance some planks from the wreck were seen, on which there were four persons in perfect distress ; the waves were tossing them up and down in high mountains : it was a most terrible frightful sight. The captain seeing these most unfortunate beings tried to go towards them in order to save them, and at last he succeeded in taking them on board, when they were almost dead. The captain put them in a hot place to get warm, and gave them some broth to eat. The next day they related their history as follows :

“We were (said the shipwrecked) in an Austrian

\* I believe the Prince introduces this accident as a fact which happened. It is similar to some Arabian night tale ; however, I believe his object is to show the danger of the sea, and especially this Bay ; and in short, it is a certain style of Asiatic writing.

vessel which sailed from Austria to the New World. On our way home we met a very strong hurricane, which continued fifteen days and nights; we did every thing we could, but all our labour was of no use. At last the masts broke, and the vessel went to pieces. Seven of us, that is, the captain, three seamen, and three passengers, placed ourselves on a raft of planks, and all the others were drowned. The waves of the sea carried us where they pleased. For four entire days and nights we were on the waves, and had not a drop of water, neither a crumb of bread. We were nearly destroyed by thirst. One of the seamen said that he had saved in a case four bottles of wine, the case was near us, we luckily took it up and obtained the four bottles. We were three days and nights more in the same condition, having nearly lost the sight of our eyes from hunger and want of sleep, because we were always obliged to keep awake, lest we should fall into the sea. At last the hunger became insupportable, so much so that if we had not obtained anything to eat before the end of four hours, we should all have perished. Then we came to the determination, one of us had better perish for the sake of the

other six. We agreed to this, and made the selection of the individual by lot, which fell upon a young man. This unfortunate young man had never before left home, this being his first voyage. He consented to his fate, but not having had sleep for a long time, he begged us to give him half an hour's rest. We allowed him that; when he got up, we cut his hand, and all of us drank of his blood. Afterwards we ate some of his flesh, and kept some pieces by us. This dead meat we continued eating for three days and nights, and all this time we did not meet with any vessel. We again remained other three days and nights without having any thing to eat or drink, and nearly perished with hunger. We cast lots for a second victim, which fell upon an old man who had not a drachm of flesh, however, the other five determined to kill him. The old man requested half an hour's rest and went to sleep; when he got up, he went near one of the companions, saying, "I have no flesh, neither blood, and there will be no use in killing me. I am an old man of seventy years, and have not a half drachm of flesh, but look to that young man (he pointed to another) how fat he is; and

what a thick neck he has. You might kill him, his flesh and blood will last you five days, and as for myself I will eat nothing." The companion to whom he proposed the young man agreed to it. At last the captain was informed of it. The captain said, 'This is contrary to justice, and by being guilty of such a violation of it we shall all perish. It is necessary at this time, when our life is coming to an end, to walk uprightly and decide justly, it will be also a thing against honour to act otherwise.' One of the party agreed with the captain, and the other three were against him. Our distress and misunderstanding rose to such a pitch, that we fell upon each other and wounded each other, and drank the blood that ran from our wounds, we also ate the small pieces of flesh which we cut off from each other in the contest. The captain then reprimanded us for this evil conduct, and said, 'This is against every law, and it is most unjust to act in this sort of manner.' At last we fell upon the old man, and the youth whom the old man had proposed to kill, fell upon him and cut his throat with his teeth, then drank his blood as if it were a glass of pleasant refreshment, and ate of his flesh, and

we kept the rest by us. We were other three days and nights in this condition, but from eating the corrupting and poisonous flesh of the old man, we all became like madmen. After we finished the flesh of the old man, and became extremely hungry again, we cast lots again, which fell upon the young man before mentioned. This unfortunate young man seeing this was the case threw himself into the sea and was drowned, and to-day we were going to cast lots again; but God has sent you for our deliverance." We were exceedingly glad that the four remaining unfortunate men were saved, which we must attribute to the will of the Almighty. We now reflected, how God had protected us in all our difficulties. Our home is a year's journey from this place; how often has God saved us from the snares of the enemies and the highway robbers! how has He given us water and bread in the desert; and now how has He saved us from the hurricane of the terrible sea! Indeed, we must thank God the Most High who has given us strength in this our time of distress. When we were in our former state of splendour in our kingdom, we were very frequently sick, and now



He has carried us through all our difficulties, and preserved us in health, thank God the Father of all! The next day, the wind became more favourable, and the steamer went on with extreme rapidity. About noon we came in sight of the island of England and the seaport of Falmouth. We now adored God the Most High, the most merciful, thanking Him a hundred thousand times for His mercy which has been bestowed upon us. We went upon deck, gazing upon the shore in the same manner as the lover gazes upon his mistress, when waiting to receive her. Thus our eyes looked on the shore with great anxiety till we came to the harbour, and the anchor took its hold upon the bottom of the sea, and the fire was put out. Behold, now we are new born in the world, as if fresh from the womb of our mother. Thanks be given to the Most High, who bestowed upon us as it were a new life in this world.

As Falmouth is a small town, it has no Governor. Khoojah Assaad went on shore to prepare a resting place (mansion) for us; when he returned on board, the captain ordered a boat in which he hoisted our flag. We entered the boat with him



and landed. The royal ship here fired a salute for us of twenty-one guns. Khoojah Assaad conducted us to a beautiful house situated on the shore.\* This house was splendidly furnished, and had every thing most comfortable for life, and fine looking women were serving in it ; indeed we were astonished at the fine arrangements of the house. We asked what was this fine house ? They replied, that the master of it is a tradesman of this city, and his commerce and profit are to receive travellers into his house, who all have different rooms agreeably furnished, and that there are about several hundreds such establishments in the country, which render a large profit to their proprietors.

Falmouth, comparing it with other cities of England, is very inconsiderable ; it is a seaport, where the mail packets go and come. About sunset we told the master of the house to have the carriage ready, which we entered and went to the baths.

\* It was the Green Bank hotel. The Princes were astonished at my finding such a mansion in such a short time. It was the first hotel they ever saw, indeed there are no such things in the East : such an establishment would be taken as a palace in the East.

Although the baths are not like ours, yet after such a journey we enjoyed them very much. On our way to the baths and back again, we had an opportunity to pass through the town and bazaars in the streets, and observed the fashion of the Franks. Also we saw some beautiful women, and were quite astonished to see them in the shops carrying on business; they appeared like men in trade. The captain Bashi here, who is also agent to Government for the packets and mails which come from all parts of the world to bring news, called upon us.

Monday the 7th, about sunset, we mounted into the royal mail which comes every day here and departs for London, for the purpose of carrying the letters.

---

*Description of the Mails, Posts, &c.*

THE post in this country consists of two establishments. One is the royal mail, which is

simply for carrying letters throughout the empire. Without interruption, it must go to and from London every day; to every city in the kingdom.

The other consists of private coaches belonging to companies, who have in every place horses for changing, and agents or partners in every direction for arranging the business of travelling. They give some duty to Government for being allowed to carry on their business, but they receive from their employment a very considerable amount of interest. There are throughout England, Scotland, and Ireland, about two millions of coaches for this purpose, which afford the Government an extraordinary income. They run twelve miles an hour, and then change horses. One of the twelve vizirs of England is the director of this business, who is called the post-master general. Although England is so thickly populated, there being not a span of land without habitations, that one would suppose that there can be no necessity for such a thing, yet the rule of the royal mail is to blow a trumpet, that, in case there should be any body or carriage in the road, notice may be taken so as to

prevent all accidents; and should there be any letters to be forwarded, on hearing the trumpet persons may have them in readiness: when also the coach gets near the place, where it is necessary to change horses, the coachman blows the horn, that the horses may be ready. When it stops to change horses, two minutes are allowed for the passengers to refresh themselves and take their seats. They also give fifteen minutes for breakfast, and likewise for dinner. The mails go so quickly, and the time is so well kept, that from Falmouth to London, a distance of more than 300 miles, not more than twenty-four hours are required. The price for each passenger is fixed by Government, and the inside, of course, is dearer than the outside. The charges in the private coaches are somewhat less expensive than the mails. Although travelling in England is expensive, yet one has the best accommodations in the world. From the time that we left Falmouth till we arrived at London, we did not see a span of earth uninhabited. In all places along the roads and streets we observed men and women walking arm in arm; also coaches and carriages, in which there were ladies, like the houries, running

in every direction; every moment increased our surprise, as we advanced. Even the peasants that dwell in villages have lofty and beautiful houses; outside of every house there are beautiful gardens, adorned with very fine flowers, where ladies splendidly dressed take their walks. All the time of our travels in this country, our eyes did not see a single handbreadth of earth, but all covered with delightful green, roses and all kinds of flowers guarded by the nightingales' singing. Such air and water are scarcely in the world, indeed what there is to be seen is enough to take away the senses. It is the first story of paradise, the majestic moon, the nightingales on the trees standing with pride, the roses resemble the cheeks of the inhabitants. At length, all this night we went on, passing by gardens, edifices, and lights, there was no darkness at all. In all the roads, there are lanterns lighted, also the houses give out their lights from the windows, in short, our travelling in midnight was not less pleasant than that of mid-day. The air at this season, in this country, is extremely cold, on account of its being under the constellation of the Twins, and near to the north

pole. While the night was not more than five hours long, the day continued fifteen hours. In short, we travelled all this night till Tuesday morning, the 8th, when we came to a beautiful city, called Exeter, where we saw beings without number. The time for breakfast having arrived, the mail stopped at the gate of a house where we alighted. What a wonderful lofty building! consisting of many rooms which are royally furnished. These rooms have places for washing, the hot water was quite ready placed on the wash-hand table, standing before large looking-glasses, and towels hanging down exceedingly clean, with perfumed articles and fine soap. Every traveller is shown to a room to himself, attended by a servant. In every room there is a splendid bedstead with every thing belonging to it; ink and pen, with fine paper, are placed on a table, for the convenience of travellers. Fine-looking women also serve here, and every thing is most desirable. The rooms for eating are separate from the bed-rooms; where there are fine large tables furnished with all sorts of eatables, both cooked and uncooked; every thing that you may desire and imagine is placed on the

table. Many people were sitting round the tables taking their breakfast, others reclining on the sofas. We were quite astonished at this house, and asked whose it was, and we were informed that it belonged to an individual whose business is to entertain strangers and travellers; and as he knows the time that the mails come in, all things are made ready for travellers to take their breakfast, that no time may be lost. Moreover, we were informed that there are in this city about five thousand such public places; each of them gains about 1000 tomâns per day; indeed the money here is like dust. In fine, we were conducted to some beautiful rooms where we washed, and afterwards took breakfast, which cost us eight tomâns. All the other travellers must have paid the same; this might have rendered him a sack full of minted gold. The mail did not stop, till we had finished our breakfast, because it waits for nobody, lest its time should be lost, as it must arrive at a certain minute. But we were told that we could go by another coach, which we availed ourselves of; moreover, we did not intend to go direct to London, wishing first to hear from Government. In truth,



the regulations in Frankestan are most wonderfully arranged. For instance, if a man should have baggage, &c., of a million of money, and wants to depart, he can do so at any hour he likes ; he has only to touch the bell, the servant immediately comes in, he has then only to tell the waiter, "I want to go to such a place, (which may be about 1000 miles distant,) I must leave after five minutes." After the time is expired, he will find the carriage waiting for him at the door. But he must have a full purse, without which he can do nothing. However, we hired another coach and departed. All the day we were travelling among habitations, and beautiful gardens, which the pen cannot describe. The roads are most admirable, and the hills are most beautifully graduated and adapted for the carriage, so that it has nothing to interrupt its course. Indeed, travelling at the rate of twelve miles per hour (which is equal to four parasangs of ours) is no child's play. The streets are so paved that you do not see a speck of mud. We observed in the gardens along the road, partridges, gazelles, deer, and other game, grazing without fear. Having the gun by my side



I took it in my hand to amuse myself by shooting some of them ; but I was quite astonished to be told the fact, that every one of these animals and birds has a master, and that none can shoot without the permission of the owner ; and if any one does so, he must bear the punishment of the law. Even their owners are not allowed to shoot them during five months of the year, (that is from the time of the Pisces, or fishes, till that of Cancer,) while these creatures are laying their eggs, or producing their young. During the other seven months, when shooting is permitted, it cannot be practised except by the owner, or by his friends, to whom he may give a license. By saying that every bird has its owner, of course it will be understood that while the bird is on a person's land it is property. The fact is, no one can shoot but on his own land. Every man can only enjoy the game of his own land, and must wait till the birds come to him, and then they become his lawful property. The Shah of the kingdom cannot hunt on the land of the least peasant. In short, to-day with looking at the buildings, the people, the gardens, and beautiful objects of admiration, our eyes became tired,

and we were overcome with astonishment. We scarcely knew in what direction to bestow our attention and at what objects to gaze. We travelled till two hours before sunset, and arrived at a large city where the coach stopped, at a place where the passengers took their dinner. Here we remained twenty-five minutes and then departed. About sunset we came to a very large and more beautiful town than any we had yet seen, and made us forget what we have already so highly spoken of. This place is called Bath; the streets are very large, about 100 feet broad, all capitally paved with a kind of marble stone, very clean, and exceedingly pleasant; so much so, that a person might sit down, and take his dinner on the ground. There are in the streets, on both sides, separate side walks for those that pass on foot, so that they are never interrupted by the carriages or horses, which have their separate path, and they do not interfere with each other. The houses are lofty, 100 feet in height; their walls are glazed and look like glass, and all of them are straight to a hair. The names of the inhabitants are either written on the door of the house, or else the doors are numbered.

Every street has its name ; there are many houses which have balustrades beautifully worked in iron. In truth, we did not know on what place or at what work of art to gaze. Before the door of every house there is an upright pillar of iron, to the top of which there is fixed a lantern, the light of which is so powerful that it allows of no distinction between day and night. We came into an hotel which is furnished in a royal and majestic manner, (York house,) which has every thing in order, and on the whole is a complete place. Khoojah Assaad arranged with the master of it for our expenses, &c. He gave us each a separate room, also rooms in which to sit and eat. A little after we took up our abode, an Englishman came into the room to see us. He complimented us in the Persian language, which he speaks with perfect eloquence. We were surprised and very glad to find some person that spoke our language. We asked him who he was ? He is Woolock Sâheb,\* who had been eighteen years in the service of the Prince Regent Abas Meerza, as instructor to the

\* Sâheb means friend ; they called all their Christian friends Sâheb.

cavalry, and fourteen years ago he paid us a visit in Shiraz with the English Ambassador. He said that when they were at Shiraz and the pardoned Firmân Firmân went out to take a ride, he invited the Ambassador and himself, on which occasion the attendants played and exercised on horseback, and that his horse fell down. By the account he gave of himself we recollected him. We were very happy to see an old friend, who was at this time a gift from God the most Benevolent. We had some conversation together, and discoursed about matters that came into our minds.

Tuesday evening, I wrote an application to the Badishah, and a letter to Lord Palmerston, the Vizir of foreign affairs, who has in his hands all appointments of Ambassadors and Consuls, and such diplomatic officers as are sent to foreign kingdoms; and all the affairs of all foreigners who come to England must go into his hands. We also wrote a letter to Lord Glenelg, the Vizir of affairs relating to the New World and India. I informed the pillars of Government of our arrival in this country.

Wednesday the 9th, I gave the letters to Khoojah

Assaad, who went with them to London. Now we were left alone, and we could not speak the language of the people, neither they ours. We were waiting, daily, news from London. For the sake of amusing ourselves, we sat at the window to gaze at those who passed by. We observed multitudes of people, and so many were the carriages which passed, that, according to our calculation, they were 3000, besides those which might have passed through other streets. About the asser (three o'clock) we saw a horse drawing a sort of carriage on which there was a large wooden barrel, which might contain about 2000 manns (a Persian weight) of water. Attached to this barrel there was a hollow tube pierced with small holes, through which the water pours out, and by this means all the street was sprinkled with water in a second, which a hundred carriers of water could not do in five hours. After this another cart came and swept all the dirt and carried it away. In a minute all the street became as clean as a looking-glass.

Thursday the 10th, crowds of people of this place, about ten thousand men and women, came

below our house to look at us through the windows, where we were standing behind the glass. They continued to do this from morning till night. We, in order to satisfy their curiosity and get rid of their gazing, ordered our Persian servants to go out of doors, that they might see them. As soon as the servants went out, they were surrounded by vast crowds, about 20,000, and all the streets were full. At last the servants could bear it no longer, and were obliged to re-enter the house. In short, we passed the time during the day in looking at the streets from the windows, and at night we were visited by some fine English young men of excellent manners, who used to come to learn Persian; so we became schoolmasters of Persian, and pupils of English. We endeavoured to take and give lessons by signs with our fingers, which caused much laughter.

Friday the 11th, in the same manner the people came as usual below the windows to gaze at us. This day we were much annoyed by it, and were obliged to leave the windows and conceal our caps. On hearing a noise, as if there were many people below, we then went to the windows to look.

The fact is, that the proverb was verified, "Like as the thirsty desire the cool waters, so the waters try to force their way." They were gazing at us, and we were delighted to behold their beauty; they showed us much respect by bowing their heads. While we were sitting, when it was about the asser, behold! a sun appeared from our east, shining and flashing. On seeing this incomparable beauty, and beholding this lovely face like the full moon, I lost my senses, not to say that I lost my sight, in admiration. No, my eyes, by beholding her smiling, became a hundred times more powerful. The delightful odour of her hair fell into my heart, and I was obliged to rise up and invite her to sit by my side, paying her all honourable respect. My heart died away, and unless my mind had gained strength to maintain conversation with this visitor, I should have appeared as if I were lost. I asked who she was. This full moon was the daughter of a captain in the East Indies.

From Friday the 11th to Monday the 14th, we had nothing to do but to continue looking at the beautiful Christian daughters. The least number that we ever saw in one day was about 5000.



Now the master of the place asked us whether we would allow the ladies to come to see us; of course I replied, "Let them come." Thus, all the day long we were engaged in receiving our most excellent visitors. Once we were sitting, when there came in sight a planet which dazzled our eyes as it rose up; I took courage and touched her beautiful jasmine hands, and invited her to sit down. What a life to the heart! how could the poor slave in love ask a kiss? What is the courage of a dervish to stand before this majesty? We requested all the ladies that came to see us, (at the sight of whom we were forgetting our homes,) to write down their names. In this way we had about a thousand visitors of these most illustrious houris. About the asser we visited a church in this place, in order that the people might see us, and to put an end to their curiosity; but it was all useless, they still continued coming every day. The second day, Tuesday the 15th, the same thing took place.

Wednesday the 16th, we received a letter from Khoojah Assaad, saying that government was informed of our arrival, and that nothing was yet decided with regard to our affairs and our reception,



and that he hoped to be with us soon; some other hints were also given in his letter. Indeed, the letter of Khoojah Assaad gave us much to think about, and required a good deal of consideration. Having come so far from our homes, and encountered a hundred thousand difficulties and sufferings, this made us unhappy, and through the whole night we were troubled with painful reflections and had scarcely any sleep.

Thursday the 17th, Blane Sâheb, who was for some time resident at Bushire, and an old friend of ours, came to see us. We were very glad to see him, and asked him some questions; his replies and opinions were almost like those which Khoojah Assaad gave us in his letter. This also gave us additional reason to be unhappy and full of anxiety. After Blane Sâheb had left us, Khoojah Assaad came from London, with a very polite written answer from Lord Palmerston, saying that when we go up to London his Lordship will be very happy to see us, &c. From the letters of Lord Palmerston I thought it best to send my brother Wali to London with Khoojah Assaad, accompanied with a letter from me. When

Wali arrived at London, he took a residence with MacNeil Khan, who had been for fifteen years in Persia during the reign of the pardoned Shah, and who speaks the Persian language exceedingly well, being just appointed ambassador to Persia when he called upon him. To mention all the conversation which took place between them on different points, would only tend to lengthen the book. However he, as a minister for Persia, promised to do every thing in his power on our behalf.

On Tuesday the 19th, about three o'clock in the afternoon, when Lord Palmerston was in his office, and MacNeil Khan with him, Wali wrote a letter to Lord Palmerston, enclosing mine, and despatched them by Khoojah Assaad, our principal interpreter. When Lord Palmerston understood our views, that they were for the welfare of Persia, he was exceedingly glad. He then sent an answer to Wali fixing the following day to call upon him.

Sunday the 20th, some of the nobility called upon Wali; and in the afternoon Lord Palmerston called. After the usual compliments had passed between them, they conversed upon the object

&c. Then Lord Palmerston said, "As you are of the first branch of the Royal Family having come to this kingdom, and as true friendship always existed between the two kingdoms, we are always anxious and desirous to pay great attention towards the welfare of Persia, even more than other countries. As to your case, I would say that if it be according to the convenience and policy of our Government, then we shall gladly employ our best influence in presenting your case before Mohammed Shah, and it would give us no trouble to do it. But, if you have any other views, I must tell you that we never like disturbances in Persia; on the contrary, we desire her welfare." Then Wali gave Lord Palmerston full details of our case, and removed from him all doubts, and satisfied him in every point. When Lord Palmerston learnt what he wished to know, he said, "There will be no slack hand on the part of the British Government on your behalf.\* A Mohammedan shall be appointed to attend you daily, and we shall see what is to be done." The

\* This means, we shall not neglect your request.

interview being thus ended between them, Wali sent me a full account of what had passed between them.

Wali remained at his residence from Monday the 21st, to Wednesday the 23rd, receiving visits from the nobility and great personages of the kingdom. Mr. Fraser, a distinguished gentleman, and a person of consideration in this kingdom, who had been in Persia during the reign of the pardoned Shah, on a secret mission, and who speaks Persian, then called upon Wali on the part of Government; saying, that as we were the guests of his Majesty the Shah, we should have a place fit for our reception, such as was to the honour of both the host and guests, and that one was already prepared, and asked Wali to occupy the new abode. Wali went with him into a lofty place containing many apartments majestically furnished, (Mivart's Hotel) with every convenience. At this splendid establishment there were other Royal Princes, one is the brother to the King of Naples, who had come to London on account of some misunderstanding between him and his brother; another Royal Prince, the son of the King of Holland, and heir to the throne,

with his sons, who had come on a visit to this kingdom, was also at the same hotel. Every one had a separate apartment in this house. When Wali came to this place, Sir Gore Ouseley called on him. Sir Gore was twenty-seven years ago (during the reign of the pardoned Shah) British Ambassador in Persia. When he came to Persia he landed at Bushir with his lady; arriving at Shiraz, he was very kindly received by his pardoned Holiness Firmân Firmân, and his lady was also kindly received by her Royal Highness Nawab Hajeb,\* indeed they received the utmost kindness and friendship. When he called upon Wali on account of former friendship and the kind reception he met with from Firmân Firmân, he offered him his best services, in every thing in which he could aid him in England.

Thursday, the 24th, Mr. Fraser called upon Wali, saying, that some regulations for the support of poor children and orphans had been established for many years. One day in the year all the orphan children meet in the largest church in

\* The mother of the Princes.

this city, and the king, royal family, vizirs, nobility and gentry, both male and female, come to the church to give their charity towards the support of this institution, and that to-day, this feast takes place; and he asked Wali whether he would be pleased to accept an invitation. Wali accepted the invitation, and went to the church.

---

*Account of this Institution.*

Throughout England, Scotland, and Ireland, there is in every town and village an institution for the education of the poor and orphan children. One day in the year, which is the 7th of June, all these children come from every direction to the city of London, accompanied by their teachers and superintendents. Each party have different coloured dresses, the children march two and two, both male and female, all in perfect order; they are beautifully arranged in their way, like a disciplined army. This great church, where they assemble, is a lofty edifice, magnificently

built, the sight of it dazzles the mind ; there are in it a number of splendid statues cut in marble, with most beautiful figures of animals and birds ; in short, if a man does not see it, he could not believe any description of it. The outside of this church all round, and the inside consists of four quarters ; each of them is two hundred feet long, and fifty feet broad ; the church is three hundred feet high. Around the four parts of the church, there are seats beautifully arranged ; from the one end of the church to the other there are forty ranks of seats, and all see alike ; all of them are made of fine wood, elegantly worked, and cushioned with rich woollen cloth : besides these, there are other places expensively fitted up with beautiful chairs : these are seats for the royal family and their attendants. All these poor children, in regiments and beautiful order, were seated on benches round the church, each company by itself ; the seats raised one above the other from the ground up into the dome, so wonderfully, that it could not be described but by a drawing. When all these children took their seats the visitors came into the church. At the gate stood some priests



and persons of their religion, dressed in a strange costume. These priests gave the permission for entrance, and held in their hands plates of gold, and every person, who entered the church, put into the plates some charitable money for the support of these children; every one gave according to his ability and zeal. After all came in and sat down, then the very large organ, which they have in this church, began to play, and the children followed by singing. The high tune of the organ and the singing of the children could not be distinguished; all their hymns were composed with reference to this charity, and what the prophets had ordered for this purpose. Every one in the church was quite silent while all this was going on. Afterwards, one of their great iskofs,\* a follower of Christ, went up into the pulpit, which was beautifully dressed with rich woollen cloth; he opened the books of the Gospel and Psalms, and read some chapters relating to charity, and gave a sermon to that effect. When the preaching was over, they began singing again so pleasantly, that

\* Bishops.



it nourished the heart. On the whole, it was a most brilliant sight to see those beautiful faces who attended the feast. There must have been at this day in the streets near this church, about 40,000 carriages, besides many who came on horse-back and on foot. The money which is collected, is regularly distributed for the support and education of the children; these children are kept in the parishes till they arrive at the age of maturity.

After Wali had a full sight of this feast, he returned to his residence. In the evening he was asked to go to a house of music and pleasure, which they call in the Frank language, the Opera. Thus Wali, after sun-set, went to this place, and he gives the following description of it:—\*

“It is a very lofty edifice, built in a wonderful manner. From the roof of it to the ground, on the three sides round, there are small rooms made of wood, these they call boxes; these rooms or boxes are elegantly dressed up with woollen cloth and velvet; before every box there are forty chandeliers of cut glass, each has fifty lights; there are

\* Here the eldest prince is supposed to speak.

also lights in every part of this house. The forty chandeliers of cut glass, each containing forty lights, and each light of five branches, as well as the other lights, have one pipe, which, by touching an instrument, all the thousands of lights suddenly become dim, so that you scarcely see any thing; and by moving the instrument differently, they as suddenly give a powerful light. There are young ladies with faces like the full moon, the beauty of whom makes the illumination of the sun dark; and a company of young men, whose beauty obscures the sun. Seats are provided below for the musicians; they play with instruments which nourish the heart: the pen and the tongue are incapable of giving an adequate description of them. The proprietor, who keeps this establishment, advertises in the newspaper, that such a play is to take place on such a night; he also prints cards or tickets of prices which are bought: those who wish to go to this place purchase a card, and off he goes to the Opera; according to the money he gave he takes a seat, that is to say, there are dear and cheap places, yet the cheapest is about one tomân of ours. There were in the

boxes around, more than a thousand young and beautiful ladies, splendidly dressed with jewels; the beam of their beautiful faces illumines the place, the brilliancy of their sweet faces takes away the heart; my whole soul cried out to leave the body, that it might go near those houris. The heart beats with the ravishment of that sight. There are also distinguished places about this house, where are fine-looking women with arms like jasmine, and faces like a shining mirror; these handsome young women sell refreshments, and on the whole this place seems to furnish the nourishment of life. Hand is taken by hand, all sit down, conversation takes place, joy and pleasure seem to go to the extreme, indeed I have no power to describe it; let those who desire to know more endeavour to find their way to this place, where they will receive all the pleasures of life. Hour after hour I observed new things, and while I was looking around, behold a curtain, with different figures, was lifted up, which was about ten draas long, and of the same width. A terrible sea presented itself behind that curtain, and the noise of waves came to the ears, and a vessel under sail was navigating

in it ; a city was built on its shore ; and people were seen in its houses which had their lanterns burning. On looking at this sight, even with a spy-glass, you would never believe it to be a mere representation. The curtain was dropped down, and the music began to play. After ten minutes the curtain was lifted up again ; behold ! that sea and city disappeared, and a beautiful green land came to sight, adorned with elegant flowers ; a large city in the midst of this place, on the side of which there was a large mountain ; the moon began to appear from behind this mountain, and slowly rose up till it shined over this plain. Afterwards a company of fine young women and men came out, beautifully clad, arm in arm ; all of them came out singing : after standing in this place awhile, they began to dance ; their sweet voices went to some distance, and in this manner they continued about half an hour delighting their guests. The curtain was dropped down, and after ten minutes, it was lifted up again ; every thing that I just mentioned disappeared, and a large plain with a high mountain presented itself, and the air of day-break was felt ; the sun began to

shine from behind the mountain, and the wind blew, and raised the dust on the plain. Two armies came out from different directions with artillery, they stood before each other in a regular military form; the batteries were well arranged, and the artillery began to play: the cavalry and infantry went against each other, and the smoke of the battle rose up most dreadfully; the swords flashed like lightning, and the battle was terrible; both parties fought most bravely, and many fell in the fields dying; at last one party was beaten, and the victorious party pursued the vanquished, which was obliged to retreat: the plain where the battle had taken place was seen to be in flames. What shall I say—what am I to write—to all this most wonderful, astonishing, amazing play? one imagines that he is in a dream. The curtain down again, music played, ten minutes after the curtain was lifted up again, every thing just mentioned disappeared, and a beautiful, lovely, green plain presented itself, all in one garden, with fine trees loaded with fruits: flowers of all colours and descriptions, where all kinds of birds, headed by the nightingale, were singing, and several hunters were

after the antelopes ; in fact it was such a delightful garden, like that of heaven. The curtain was lifted up again, and there appeared an emperor of the world with his majestic state ; he sat on the throne and all his vizirs, princes, and principal officers of state bowed down to him ; they were ordered to take their seats around him on chairs all ornamented with jewels ; his guards were all standing under arms, while he was holding an imperial levee. Musicians sang and others played before him ; there were also some fine dancing-women. Some persons, who were in prison for crimes, were brought before the Shah, who ordered that they should be put to death ; but the vizirs and high officers of state interceded before the badishah, to bestow his mercy, in granting the criminals their lives : their mediation was accepted, and the criminals were set at liberty. Such kinds of marvellous representations were made all the night, and the people came and went away every hour. The one night's income is about fifteen thousand tomâns. At the end of the play the dance begins ; ye, who possess a heart, what shall I say ? beautiful young women with young men dancing ! now the pen could not

run, and the eye would fix itself, but Wali must leave his heart, and return to his residence.”

Friday, the 25th, Government having consulted upon our affair, Lord Palmerston sent me an answer to my letters, inviting me to the capital as a guest to the badishah.

On Saturday, the 26th, Khoojah Assaad with the letters came to Bath. On this day my brother Wali, with Mr. Fraser, went to visit a garden. This garden belongs to a company of the nobles and rich men; they send persons to different parts of the world, and bring them all kinds of seeds of all sorts of fruits and flowers. They are planted in this large garden, where there are large glass-houses to bring up the fruits and flowers of the warm climates. It is a beautiful place, adorned and proud with its natural ornaments. This company, on this day, invite their friends to come and enjoy this delightful place. Handsome ladies with gentlemen were walking among the trees. There were tables here and there furnished with all kinds of excellent eatables and drinkables: the visitors also are presented with fruits out of their season. Here are all the year round whatever belongs to each particular season,



every kind of fruit that you can desire, proper to any season, you find here. They keep the fruits through the whole year so fresh, and in such excellent order, that you might say they had just been taken from the tree. Thus the tables of the English entertainments are furnished with all kind of fruits out of season, but they are very dear; for instance, a melon is worth ten tomâns, and a musk melon four tomâns, a quince three tomâns, an apple costs a tomân; in fine, all kinds of strange fruit are to be seen: in this country, those which belong to America, Africa, and Australia, are to be found. Every person here seeks for his love, takes her by the hand, and shows her all the fine flowers, afterwards he gives her a seat, and offers her whatever she desires. Every one looks to his own person, and no one looks to what the others are doing; in the mean time the musicians are standing by, on all sides amusing these guests. Wali verily was quite satisfied with his visit.

Sunday the 28th. I, with Taymoor Meerza, one hour before sun-set, left Bath for London. The distance from Bath to London is 110 miles. All the way, and in all directions it was beauti-



fully cultivated, and no space of land without occupation. In every place I saw numerous large and lofty buildings on all sides connected with delightful gardens, the walls of which are elegantly built, and many are protected by iron balustrades. These are estates and country-seats of the nobility and gentry of this kingdom. I observed also along the road to London, neat pillars, fixed on both sides of the road, supporting fine lanterns. Whether it is raining or not, these lanterns are lighted up, burning all the night long. This light is not of oil, or any other liquid, but the extraordinary production which they call gas, a description of which I will give hereafter. This, which is the spirit of coals, is conducted through pipes, in the same way, to every place. Thus the whole empire at night is as brilliant as day-time.

In every minute and in every direction on the road there is seen a stone on which is numbered after this manner, "To London" (or any other city) so many miles, and at every fork of the road there is a piece of board fixed to a post pointing out with a short hand and open finger to such

a place, and mentioning the distance. Thus a stranger or blind man might travel all the kingdom without asking which is the road. In all the roads there are habitations; carriages and coaches perpetually running in every direction, in such crowds that sometimes the road is blocked up by them. The noise of the carriages and coaches of the great city of London and the voice of its most enormous population, are heard like thunder at seven parasangs distance. In fine, whatever may be written on the edifices, gardens, roads, habitations, population, cultivations, and other wonders of this kingdom, will not be a thousandth part of what might be said. When I arrived at London, many of the nobility and great men called upon us, with sincere friendship, and the compliments received were duly returned by us.

Thursday the 28th, Khoojah Fraser called and told us that on this day all the people in the city dress finely and visit a large garden, which, in addition to its beautiful flowers, also contains all kinds of animals, and all tribes of birds found in every part of the world, in land and in the sea, and that they are wonderfully arranged and in perfect

order, so as to afford a most capital sight of them. Wali and Taymoor Meerza went to gaze at these wonderful creatures, and gave the following account.

---

*Description of the Zoological Gardens.*

FOR the sake of advancing the splendour and eminence of the kingdom, a society of nobles and rich persons have raised among themselves an enormous treasure of gold, in order to collect all kinds of beasts, animals, and birds, from every part of the world, to preserve them alive in a wonderful manner. In order to this, they appoint some clever hunters and other men, that may be acquainted with this subject, and send them to every place in the world, allowing them any sum of money that may be required, to fetch, by any means, and at any cost, all these tribes of creatures. All that the ear hath heard of, as well as those not previously known, all that might or might not have been mentioned in histories. By this means they have succeeded in bringing every

thing, from an elephant and rhinoceros to a cat, and from an ostrich to a bat and a gnat. Every one is kept in a separate cage, or room of iron. There are men appointed on purpose to take care of them. Whenever any of them die, they take off the skin and stuff it so wonderfully that no one could know that it was not alive.

A few days in the spring, when the garden is ornamented with its natural beauty, and the animals become fat and sleek, multitudes of people both men and women go to visit this scenery. Every one that enters has to pay something, this renders an income of several thousand tomâns per day. There is no possibility of describing these strange and wonderful animals. For however they may be recollected in the mind or imagined in the head, these kinds of creatures cannot be described by the pen. There is to be seen an elephant twenty-four feet high, and his proboscis forty feet long; this wonderful elephant was brought from the extreme parts of the East India islands. The tooth of this mountain-like beast stretches out like a long ivory promontory, and on the whole this animal presents a most frightful appearance.

And a noble lion, which was brought from the southern part of the world, measures from the tip of his nose to the top of the head fourteen kirat,\* the bones of his body are beyond imagination, his two eyes are like glassfuls of blood, his claws like daggers; such a lion has never been seen till now. There is also an extraordinary rhinoceros (whose likeness is taken by Taymoor Meerza, with whom it might be seen), and there is a most wonderful lioness of a saffron colour, and a most extraordinary leopard, which was brought from the New World, such an one we have not seen before; some bears also, white like the snow, have been also brought from the New World. I find no way whatever of describing these innumerable and most wonderful kinds of lions, and other kindreds of animals. They were all brought from far distant countries; from America, India, China, Tartary, Australia, Africa, and all other parts of the world.

There is also to be seen every species of venomous serpents of most wonderful size, also all sorts

\* That is, an inch.

of insects. Thousands and thousands of various kinds are put in bottles, some dead and some alive. There are also to be seen some extraordinary bullocks formed like a sheep, but with extremities like a bullock. All kinds of gazelles, antelopes, hares, large and small, grazing in the garden. Dogs of enormous size from the New World. There is also one of the wonderful amphibious animals of a curious form. It is as large as a horse, it was brought from the interior of Africa. It is a very beautiful creature. When it stands and walks, it very much resembles mankind. All kinds of baboons of wonderful sizes and forms. They act like human beings; bears, white, red, green, yellow, and, indeed of all colours. Also a kind of monkey, which is of all the animals most like the human figure, the size of a mule, with an extraordinary long tail. These monkeys act like human beings, and laugh wonderfully, and play at chess with men, and some of those that visit the gardens play with them. To-day, a Jew happened to be at this place, and went to play a game with the monkey. The monkey beat, and began to laugh loudly, all the people standing round him.

The Jew felt exceedingly ashamed, and was obliged to leave immediately. The most wonderful animals of all, were a pair of creatures larger than an elephant, and higher than a camel, their necks are fourteen feet long, their legs are handsome, their tails are like that of an Arab horse of red colour, and with white spots on the face. They were brought from Africa, and their flesh is said to be excellent. They go as fast as a gazel: all the world from England, Scotland, and Ireland, come to see them. Yet the animal most striking to the people here, was the camel, at which they gazed more than any other, and paid more attention to see it. In fact, there is no doubt of what is mentioned in the Holy Book, with regard to the superiority of the glorious camel:\* it always has something striking about it more than any other

\* The camel is much esteemed by Mohammedans, on account of the usefulness of that animal to Mohammed himself, and the Arabians in general; moreover it is on the camel that the annual pilgrimages from Damascus to Mecca are made, and the vast desert of Arabia traversed; this being the only animal which can subsist five days without water. The truth of this, I myself have experienced during my travels in the desert.



animal. If any person should doubt it, let him go to England, and see how much the camel strikes the eye of the people. There are horses of an extraordinary size, as large as the camel, mules, donkeys, all of very curious sizes are to be seen. There are also more than 30,000 kinds of birds; in truth, we do not know how even to write their names, to describe their colours is impossible. Some elephant birds just like an elephant, but without a proboscis. Their wings are about fifteen yards long. There are some others which were brought from Abyssinia of an extraordinary form. There are in the garden about forty kinds of peacocks, white like the snow, with beaks like rubies, and eyes like emeralds; such peacocks we never saw before. There are also twenty-five sorts of nightingales, and parrots, and goldfinches, and fifty kinds of fowls; cocks from all parts of the world, their beautiful colours cannot be described. The most surprising of all is to see the excellent order in which these myriads of animals and birds are kept. Verily a visit to a place like this brings to the mind the power of the Omnipotent. The eyes are dazzled, the mind is

surprised, the heart is agitated, and curiosity takes its utmost fill. All this gives a most excellent opportunity to the lover, to lead his favourite by the hand to show her this and that curiosity; besides all the above, you will see beautiful moonlike ladies, led by the hand, to gaze at these wonderful spectacles, and repose under the delightful shade of the beautiful trees. In truth, unless the eye should see, the mind cannot form an idea of this place. There is also in this paradisely garden a bazaar of all kinds of sweetmeets and refreshments. It was truly a most interesting visit. On our way back home we passed by a shop of a gunmaker where we observed some wonderful arts, which if they were to be described would too much lengthen the book.

Wednesday the 2nd, some of the pillars of Government called to see us.

Thursday the 3rd, Wali joined the Freemason Society, having beforehand written a request to the head of the Society for his reception, and to-day (Thursday) they hold their monthly meeting, and Wali took his first degree. If any person desires

to be honoured in this company, he ought to send in his application beforehand.

On this evening we were invited to Lord M——'s, a noble peer of this kingdom, and there were about 5,000 guests present, also some members of a foreign royal family. All this illustrious party were clad in a fancy dress. Every one took the hand of a lady and went dancing. The one who could dance best was praised most. They continued dancing for some time. Afterwards the honourable ladies came to us, ascertaining from us how the English dancing appeared in our eyes. Those whom we praised most for their dancing were pleased most, and went again dancing. Some ladies said, that if we were pleased to dance they would be happy to dance with us. This custom being exceedingly strange to us, and moreover, as we had never learnt dancing, we now endeavoured to find out some decent apology. At last we told them that the Persians do not learn this art. They were exceedingly surprised, and wondered how there could be a man who had not been taught dancing. Among this 5,000 persons

here, no one had his usual dress on; all of them had fancy and foreign costumes, and all fashions of every nation were to be seen here. The fact is, no one would be allowed to enter if he had not a mask dress on. Some had false moustachios, and others had beards; even the highest person here had made some change, for it is not disgraceful amongst the English. They conversed with each other, and no one ever laughed at the curious dress of the rest; in fact, it was a most curious exhibition to us. At this assemblage we met the Russian ambassador, who manifested to us his sincere friendship. We also met at this place Mohammed Ismâel Khan, Ambassador to this court from Nasser el Din Hider, the Badi-shah of Oude, and we were glad to see him.

Friday the 4th. The Royal Prince of Orange called to see us, and manifested his sincere friendship.

Saturday the 5th of Rabiah II,\* Mr. Fraser, our Mihmander, called upon us, and said that this was the day when they celebrate the feast of their

\* Corresponding to the 18th of June.

greatest general, the Duke of Wellington, in memory of his victory over Buonaparte in the battle of Waterloo, and that all people here, women and men, the King, the royal family, and the troops, go out to the park, to a public review; and that the Duke of Wellington appears in the uniform which he wore at the battle, conducts the manœuvres, and is saluted by all, young and old, small and great. Mr. Fraser asked whether we should like to be present; while he was speaking, our true friend, Sir Gore Ouseley, called and invited us to the same spectacle. We went with our friends to a house situated near the Park, from which we had an excellent view of this show. There could be no adequate description of the shouting of the crowd, soldiers, cavalry, and the artillery, also the multitudes of people round. The Duke of Wellington is about seventy years of age; he stood in the midst, dressed in his military uniform, and after the manœuvres were over, he was saluted with shouts by every person present. Such an honour must have given him a new life. In truth, his name is such a feast itself, he cannot be otherwise than exalted. All the officers who had been with him

at that battle were also present, enjoying the honour of their victories in India, and other parts of the British possessions; they had come to this age, and had been never beaten in battle. After we had a full view of this, we returned home.

Sunday, the 6th, Lord Palmerston, the vizir of foreign affairs, (our business being also in his hand,) called upon us. He came on the part of government to learn all our plans and views, as he was to inform all the other vizirs of it; he asked us to put every thing down in writing: this, I believe, he requested, so that we may always be held responsible by our own written pledge that nothing new should occur. We explained clearly every thing of importance, so that he was satisfied with our reasonable requests; he promised to do every thing in the name of the badishah with Mohammed Shah in our behalf, so that we should be satisfied with our visit to this kingdom, to which we have come from such a great distance. We also proposed some questions to him, to which he gave no answer, but promised to think about them, and let us know the result. We therefore put down all our requests in writing, which were translated

by Meerza Ibrahim, a Persian, native of Shiraz, who had been here for the last twelve years. Before Lord Palmerston left us, he took our promise to dine with him on Sunday next.

Monday, the 7th, we went to a large edifice to inspect the English arts. They conducted us first into a very large room, where there were some beautiful pictures and likenesses of preceding kings and heroes, as well as some distinguished and celebrated personages. Afterwards we were guided up-stairs into a lofty place, where we were shown a room, and we were asked to sit down on the chairs in it; there were also some ladies and gentlemen seated on chairs by our side. As soon as we sat down, suddenly the room\* left its place, ascending up quite like an eagle, with large wings, into the atmosphere. After an hour's time, this bird folded its wings and stopped in the sky, then fortunately it opened its beak,† and we went out. We came out of this room on a terrace, where there were a great number of men and women standing. This place affords a most beautiful

\* The Colosseum.

† The door.



view of the city of London, with the river Thames, and all England up to the sea; in the same manner are to be seen all the edifices, gardens, and the crowds of people in the streets in all quarters; and a great noise is heard of carriages, coaches, and horses. In the river Thames we observed innumerable vessels like forests, many of which were at anchor, others under sail, and a great number of steamers going and coming at great rapidity. Many persons were going to church, others were taking walks, and some on horseback about the beautiful gardens. We had a spy-glass, which enabled us to see places at a great distance; such a command of a view surprises the mind. After I had a full view of the country, I said to Mr. Fraser that, although this is a very excellent view of London and of the country, yet I should like more to see and visit some of the English arts, and asked him to take us to such places, because what we see here we see every day. Mr. Fraser laughed at our question, and said, "Is any art better than what you are actually now seeing?" What an art is it! we said; does any one doubt the power of the Creator, by whose order this world was created with its

natural beauty? Then Mr. Fraser said, "This heaven that you see is not more than four yards distant from you; if you throw an orange against it, it will return back to you; and that which you behold with your spy-glass is not more than ten pikes from you. The city and habitations, with the crowds of people in every direction are about this terrace, and they are not more than six yards in each direction." I\* was angry with him at his saying this, it seemed as if he were playing with us. I said, "O man, have we not eyes to distinguish between the real and artificial?" Mr. Fraser replied, "It would be impossible for you to know how this is done, unless you saw it." Then he conducted us by some steps up where we saw the same spectacle, with this difference, the former was cloudy, and in this place the sun was shining. This increased our disbelief; however, we went up and down until we were satisfied. All this miracle was simply produced by a picture, which causes all this wonder and astonishment. The air here is so shut out by the painting, as to make a philoso-

\* Here Reeza Koole Meerza seems to speak

phical illusion; in short, it is impossible to describe this wonderful picture; and we could not believe it until it was proved to us by examining the mystery which produces all these artificial realities. There was in this country a very rich man, who was fond of drawing; he found out a very clever artist, to whom he gave a very large sum of money, and arranged with him to draw this picture. That celebrated artist used to go up the dome of the greatest church in London, from which he had a beautiful view of this capital and the neighbourhoods, and in four years' time he completed his work. This edifice itself was built also by the same rich man, which cost him in all four hundred thousand pounds sterling, or eight hundred thousand tomâns of Persia. In the following three years, he received from the money which was paid by the visitors, (one shilling from each) the sum of six hundred thousand pounds sterling, or a million and two hundred thousand tomâns, thus he gained two hundred thousand pounds sterling, and still daily it renders him a large income, and moreover an everlasting name. We left this place perfectly astonished.

Afterwards we visited the great zoological gar-

den, where birds, flowers, and the numerous visitors are indescribable. We saw whatever Wali had already seen, and some which he had not seen, such as the giraffes which had just arrived from Abyssinia. We observed here also a dreadful rhinoceros of an extraordinary size in an iron house. I went near him, and gave him something to eat; but once he got angry, and made a most terrible noise; indeed he was a dreadful beast. Taymoor Meerza took a sketch of him. It is utterly impossible to describe these animals and birds.

Tuesday the 8th, Mohammed Ismâel Khan, the ambassador of Oude, called to see us, and he tendered to us his sincere friendship; we also manifested our friendship towards him. We conversed together on several subjects, also on the wonderful arts of this country. We related to him what we saw the day before. He said, "I visited a beautiful place yesterday, a lofty edifice containing a great number of rooms, which contain some beautiful pictures beyond conception: I was perfectly astonished at them." He said, "Will you be pleased to visit it, and let me conduct you there?" Accordingly we ordered the carriage, and with Mohammed Ismâel Khan went to see the place

which he praised so much. It is a very lofty edifice of innumerable large rooms, containing from the ground to the roof, some most beautiful pictures, such as astonish the mind and affect the heart. But above all, our visit was at a most fortunate hour, when the originals of these pictures were walking about the rooms, so we left gazing at the artificials: and as a matter of course, our heart forced the eye to admire the splendid and beautiful visitors; yet at last we were obliged to return home, quite against the sanction of the heart. In the evening we went to the house of pleasure and music, (opera;) new plays and representations were performed, with dancing by beauty, such as was before mentioned by Wali. What shall I write? what am I to say? Nothing but that which is mentioned in the Hadith,\* by the holy lips.†

\* Hadith is a saying of the Prophet, i. e. his verbal words which were related, or written by his successors; these are taken as holy and by inspiration. The Mohammedan Doctors, in almost all their writings, refer to the Hadiths to prove their texts as a matter of fact; yet each sect of Mohammedan, i. e. sonnites, and shiceâs, differ in their Hadiths very much. There are some Hadiths which go beyond three hundred years from the Hegira, they are taken simply by—It is said by so and so.

† Mohammed's lips are what H. R. H. means. I wish that Christian authors in general would show their veneration when speaking of the Lord Jesus Christ.

The world is the prison of the Believer, and the paradise of the Infidel.”\* In truth, there is nothing wanting in the paradise, except that grace which the God of the universe has promised to his faithful servants, in the world above ;† He has given the same to them in the world below, with this difference ; theirs is made by hands and is transitory, but ours is eternal and everlasting, and the draught wine of its pleasure is not made from earthly materials. In fine, the Most High, for the sake of fulfilling his word and grace, presented these people with their paradise in this world. I could give no description of these wonderful and delightful representations, &c.

Thursday evening, we were invited to an evening party at a nobleman’s, where we observed many expensive articles, and costly furniture. This entertainment might have cost 4000 tomâns.

\* I would refer the reader to that part of the Journal in which H. R. H. describes his visit to St. Paul’s Cathedral. We can easily see that all sights and exhibitions do not produce the same effect on the minds of Asiatics. The question is, which would be most advantageously shown them.

† For this, I beg to refer our readers to the Ayat el Rehman, in the Korân, or the chapter of The Merciful in the same book ; there he will see the desirable promises made to Mussulmans.

All the vizirs of Government and noblemen were present here. There were also some members of the royal family ; with all of whom we formed acquaintance and friendship. The people here have a very curious custom, that in their assemblies they do not sit down, neither is there any distinction ;\* there were about 1000 persons, men and women, mixed with each other. Every one takes the hand of a lady with an angelic face, and begins to converse with her, endeavouring in every respect to please her. They have no jealousy in this ; and if a man converses much with his wife at such a time, it would be considered an ignorance from him, or rudeness. When the music commenced, every person, princes, vizirs, nobles, and gentlemen, took a lady by the hand, and went dancing while we were admiring. They who cannot dance are considered neither respectable, nor considered as persons of complete education, particularly so a lady. Many of the ladies asked us to dance

\* This was quite a new thing to the Prince, and would be to all such oriental people, who are accustomed to a different way, that is, not only when a royal Prince, but even when a judge or a vice-governor passes the streets, all men must stand up ; how much more to a Royal Prince!



with them; now we were puzzled what to say; however, we were obliged to take oath that we did not know how, and that our mother did not care to teach us, and thank God we did never dance. God protect the faithful!\* In truth, it was a splendid assembly. There were in this house some vessels such as we never had seen before, which were brought from Greece: such antiques among them bear a high name and value. We spent some part of the night here, and returned to our apartments.

Friday the 11th, Mr. Blane, the former Balios† at Bushir, and a real old friend of ours, came to see us, and said, “I went yesterday to a house of arts, and I saw most wonderful instruments, and most surprising inventions, such I have never seen before, indeed they appeared to me as miracles; I wish you would be pleased to see

\* I take the liberty of begging the reader who may feel disposed to argue with the Prince upon the lawfulness of certain representations, to ask himself whether those who profess Christianity are living up to their profession, and are endeavouring to show Mohammedans and other sects that this world is not their paradise.

† A name given in the East to Residents and Consuls.

them, and allow me to conduct you there." Accordingly the carriage was ordered, which we entered with Mr. Blane, and went to the place he mentioned. It is a very large lofty edifice, consisting of several departments. There are in it about 3000 men employed in different works, and there were at this time about 5000 men and women who came to see it. The master of this establishment is an old wise gentleman, whose life was spent in inventing new and wonderful arts. When he learnt who we were, and that we came to visit his place, he immediately took us by the hand to show us what was to be seen. First he conducted us to a place where there was a fire-place, which produced the steam in a vessel; on the top of this vessel there is fixed a long barrel of a gun, and a hole attached to it for the steam to enter, which serves instead of powder, or even acts better. On the top of the barrel of the gun there is a cup of iron which holds 200 bullets. When they touch the lock, it fires seventy times in a moment, and all of them hit. We observed in this invention that no powder ever has such power. In the same manner they invented cannon and balls.

Afterwards he conducted us to another place, where was an iron bridge: this is for crossing a river where a bridge cannot be built, and where arches could not be constructed on account of its depth; however, to every thing there is a remedy. This was after this manner: Two bars of iron, six hundred feet long, like an arrow of attraction, which is wonderfully constructed for that purpose, but no description of it could satisfy the reader, he must see it for himself. Afterwards he took us to another place, where there is an instrument for looking at and searching the bottom of the sea. This instrument is a kind of a bell of crystal, which the water cannot penetrate, nor can air. To this bell there is a hollowed instrument like a probe, fixed like a pipe of leather, which conducts the air down to it. This apparatus is a box of glass, and a man might enter it, and be shut up and thrown into the sea, to the bottom of which it might go. Thus the diver goes to the bottom of the sea, and whenever he finds his air exhausted, he has only to touch this pipe, which would convey a most pleasant breath into his heart. In this manner he might stay any length

of time in the world of fishes, and will never be overcome by the water. In truth, it is a very valuable invention, it is called in their language a diving bell; it is most useful for shipwrecked vessels, and in such rivers as have rocks. By the aid of this, they can blow up the rocks, as has been done in the Euphrates, which by this means is made navigable. We also were shown here a figure of a negro man made of iron, so ingeniously, that it could not be distinguished from a living man; two swords were made to appear to cut at his neck, through and through; and yet his head never falls. Also carriages and coaches made of iron, which go by themselves on roads of iron: this indeed is a most wonderful invention. We also saw many other valuable and wonderful inventions, and we found this visit an exceedingly interesting one. In this establishment there are also imitations of the celebrated precious stones of the different emperors of the world, made of cut glass, possessing all the different colours of their originals. The most valuable, and most striking of them all, was the Kooh Noor of the Badishah of Persia. The next in rank was that which the English Crown possesses, yet Kooh Noor

is the highest of all. After we had gazed at all these different kinds of inventions, we asked whether there were other things to be seen. They said, "All that you have already seen are old inventions, and their glory is passing away, but the real sights you have not seen." "Well," said we, "where shall we go?" They invited us up stairs into a large room, half of which was furnished with seats for visitors to sit on, who have to pay some money for entrance. We sat on these seats, and a number of men and women were also seated. The wall opposite to our face was made most elegantly white with paint, so much so, that in the place although dark, yet the face of a man might be seen in this wall; opposite this wall there is another which was just behind us, which had several holes in it, where there are several instruments, which had such a power, a thousand times more than the lustre of the sun. Whenever they touched this apparatus, the array of the loadstone came out of the holes, and gave out such a ray and light that no one dared to look at the wall; but when they moderated the power of the instrument, a man might look at it. The light was so great as to lead any one to say that all the

power of the sun, or the sun itself was in this room. Afterwards the master brought some water in a glass, which he placed against this light. This drop of water suddenly (praise be to God!) looked as if it were a great sea; in which we observed myriads of animals of different kinds, in forms of leopards, and some as large as elephants, and camels, they were mingled together, and eating each other. All of them had several thousand feet and hands; such a thing had never been thought of, nor would it enter the mind. Indeed, all those that came to see this, had no courage to look at these dreadful beasts. The operator was standing by the wall with a stick in his hand, explaining the nature of every one of these animals, and said in the English language, "This is the pure water that you drink every day, without being sensible of the wonderful power of God of the universe displayed in it; and what food he has given you which you do not understand." In the same way the changes of times are hidden, and we do not think of them. One after another he explained, what is their benefit, and what is their injury, that "in this drop of

water there are about four millions of different kinds of animals." Thus God the most powerful has concealed from our sight many of the things that are created, existing even in what we swallow daily. After this, he presented on a glass some little insects, such as flies, muskittoes possessing feet, and hands, and hair, of extraordinary form. This magnificence of what we saw in these little insects, could never be described; nor would it be believed unless a man in person should go himself and see them. Indeed, we doubted the truth of the spectacle before we rose, and were induced to examine the originals. To-day we had indeed a very interesting, wonderful exhibition.

END OF VOL. I.







JOURNAL  
OF A  
RESIDENCE IN ENGLAND

Vol. II



JOURNAL  
OF A  
RESIDENCE IN ENGLAND,  
AND OF A  
JOURNEY FROM AND TO SYRIA,  
OF THEIR ROYAL HIGHNESSES  
REEZA KOOLEE MEERZA, NAJAF KOOLEE MEERZA,  
AND TAYMOOR MEERZA, OF PERSIA.  
TO WHICH ARE PREFIXED  
SOME PARTICULARS RESPECTING MODERN PERSIA  
AND THE  
Death of the late Shah.

ORIGINALLY WRITTEN IN PERSIAN,  
BY H. R. H. NAJAF KOOLEE MEERZA,  
*Son of Prince Firmân Firmân, Grandson of H. M. Fathali  
Shah, the late Emperor of Persia ;*

AND TRANSLATED, WITH EXPLANATORY NOTES,  
BY ASSAAD Y. KAYAT.

IN TWO VOLUMES.  
VOL. II.

PRINTED FOR PRIVATE CIRCULATION ONLY.



## CONTENTS OF VOL. II.

---

	Page
Dinners at the Marquis of Salisbury's, Lord Palmerston's, &c. . . . .	1
Description of the Railroads . . . . .	10
Account of London, and of England in general . . .	17
Account of Bavaria, &c. . . . .	200
Account of Passports . . . . .	201
Account of Hungary . . . . .	209
Account of Austria, &c. . . . .	215
Account of Walachia . . . . .	237





# JOURNAL

OF THE

## PERSIAN PRINCES.

---

FRIDAY the 12th, we were invited to the Marquis of Salisbury's, where we met a noble assemblage, similar to that which we have already described. Many of the nobility and gentry of this kingdom were present at this assembly, all splendidly dressed, and all united in dancing. We took our seats at one side, gazing at this adorned party, among which we admired many angelic faces. The expenses of this entertainment must have been a considerable sum, and we in every respect were quite pleased with our visit.

Saturday evening the 13th, we were invited by

Mr. White, a friend and agent of Farren Sâheb,\* the consul-general at Damascus. Here we took dinner, where also we met some other friends, and verily it was a very pleasant, lovely party.

Sunday evening the 14th, we went to the entertainment of Lord Palmerston, the Vizir for Foreign affairs. When we entered the house we did not find him present. We asked about him, the other guests present informed us that news had just arrived that the king of the French had recently received a signal mercy of God, in a very narrow escape from being shot by a person, who fired at him; this happened as follows: This dishonourable assassin had for some time in view to destroy the Shah, but he could not find an opportunity, on account of the life guards surrounding the king. At this time he loaded a gun, it is said, with twenty-five bullets, and approached the Baidishah while he had only seven attendants. He suddenly fired the gun at the king, six of the attendants were killed, and the king was saved. After this had taken place, the king called together

\* Sahab expresses Esquire, Friend, and Mr.

his Government, informing them of this terrible outrage. The assassin was taken up, and was sent before the house of justice. This event had taken place this morning at Paris, and the news reached Lord Palmerston about sunset of the same day, although the distance is about 300 miles ; thus Lord Palmerston went to present the news before the throne of his Majesty. In the mean time, I held some conversation with the ambassador of the Grand Seignior, and with the Vizir of Hindoostan, and the other vizirs who were present at the same entertainment. An hour after, Lord Palmerston returned from the royal palace and presented us his excuse, and then we went to dinner. It was a very large table, the vessels of which were of gold. All kinds of nice and delicious dishes were served. After the dishes were removed, then was brought to the table all sorts of sweets and fruits. We have here observed all fruits that we ever saw, besides many kinds that we had not before seen, such as are imported from India, the New World, and Africa ; all could not grow at the same seasons, yet all looked as if they had just been plucked from the tree. We then asked how it was ma-

naged, to have such fruits out of their season, and so fresh. They said, that most of them grow in hot-houses, and some are carefully preserved. Even the pistachio nuts grow here better than in their own climate. All other fruits of hot countries, such as melons, musk-melons, grapes, pomegranates, apricots, peaches, &c. were on the table quite fresh, and all sorts of lemons, oranges, citrons, quinces, &c. were also placed on the table. Perhaps such an entertainment might have cost seven or eight thousand tomâns, because a sheep here is worth eight tomâns, and fruit is very dear, a melon is worth ten tomâns, and a bunch of grapes is worth three tomâns, and a damask plum one tomân. Notwithstanding these dear prices, they give such entertainments. In truth, it was a noble party, and we spent some very pleasant hours of the night, conversing on interesting topics, and afterwards returned to our mansion.

Monday the 15th, we were invited to Mohammed Ismâel Khan's; he offered us some fine refreshments, and we conversed together on some Arabic and Persian poetry. He is a well educated gentleman and of excellent manners. His harem

(lady) is an Indian, a pious and religious Moham-  
medan ; she left home for the desire of visiting the  
most holy sacred house of God.\* Now when she  
was informed of us, and being of the same reli-  
gion, she came to see us. She complained much†  
of her residence with the infidels, and said, “ I came  
out from my country, most anxious and desirous  
to be honoured in the most holy house, and now,  
it is four months since I came to this country,  
where I have not yet seen anyone of the believers.”  
Then she wept very bitterly, and begged me to  
hear her read some chapter in the most glorious  
book. I accepted her request, and allowed her  
to fetch the holy book, when she was exceedingly  
happy to repeat a few verses. Afterwards she  
begged that we would come and dine with them on  
some day, when she intends to cook some nice  
dishes with her own hands ; she said also, that she

\* Mecca.

† I was with the Prince, and afterwards I visited her again ; she taking  
me for a Mussulman, desired me to read with her the Korân : I did  
so ; she then requested me, as often as I could, to give her some les-  
sons in the same book. I think that she did not complain so much  
of her residence among the Infidels, as she did of her husband's at-  
tending the most delightful English parties, and his enjoying such  
society.

had already bought a lamb for ten tomâns and desired to kill it,\* and eat it with some friends ; such as we are. So we accepted her invitation, which was for the following Friday.

Tuesday the 16th, Noori Effendi, the ambassador of Sultan Mohammed, called to see us ; he manifested his friendship, and we did the same. In the evening, we went to the opera ; where a new representation with dancing took place, like that already mentioned and more.

Wednesday the 17th, we visited the King's College, having been beforehand invited by the professors. This college is one of the institutions of this country. It is a very large, lofty edifice, of numerous apartments, enough to accommodate 10,000 scholars ; there have already been in it that number of students, endeavouring to obtain the wonderful sciences. Each class has a different department ; one day in the year all the students meet in a large, lofty room. On this day many of the nobility and gentry come to this assembly. Then

\* Our readers will recollect, that the Mohammedans observe the same law, of killing animals, as the Jews ; in consequence, consider the meat in Christendom as unlawful.

the students of different classes present themselves, and every one stands before his professor, in the presence of the college agent, and gives a proof of his progress in his studies. Many questions are put to him on different points, which he ought to answer, to show his qualifications, which if great would be also an honour to his teacher. When he satisfies the examiner, a prize of twenty tomâns immediately is presented to him, generally a handsome book with gold binding. As soon as he receives his prize, he is applauded by perhaps 40,000 persons who may be present; it is done by clapping of hands. In the evening we visited a large garden, beautifully lighted up, and the fireworks that we saw here made us forget all others we had already seen. A garden, a heaven, large, adorned with roses of different colours in every direction, the water was running on the beautiful green, pictures were drawn on every wall. Here and there were young moonly faces selling refreshments. There were burning in this place about two millions of lights, each giving a different colour; the lanterns and lights are so arranged as to make poetry, in such a manner that they have no end. On every



side there appeared the moon, and the sun, with the planets, each moving in its orbit; and in every walk there were about 10,000 Frank moons,\* walking and gazing about, where the roses and their tribes were admiring their beautiful cheeks. Each was taken by the hand, such a company in such a place says to the soul, Behold thy paradise!—pleasure and joy appear; woes and sorrows are banished;—every hand asked for a glass of refreshment to present to the possessors of jasmine hands. Thus we were happy to have in each hand a paradisaean companion, and to point out the beauties of the place, in order to draw forth the sweet music of their replies; we left the rose and met a pink! are we awake or in a dream? We walked in this garden from one place to another, till we came to a place where we saw crowds of people gazing at a boy elegantly clad who was playing on a rope; now we were as though we had lost our mind. This rope was made fast high above in the garden, on which this boy was dancing; indeed he was like a bird with wings in the air. Afterwards

\* English ladies.

a young and beautiful girl handsomely dressed increased our surprise, she joined the boy, and they played together in a most wonderful manner, enough to take away the senses to look at them. When the boy and girl had finished their manœuvres, the people in the garden went to another place, where there was a wheel which was set on fire: as soon as it was lighted it began to ascend, throwing out fire of red, green, blue, yellow, and other colours wonderfully, as if all the world had taken fire, and continued to ascend till it reached the sky. All this was done without giving any unpleasant smell of powder. The people that make such fireworks, derive a large income from it; also the Treasury receives a great annual sum from them. We had an exceedingly interesting exhibition, and returned home perfectly satisfied with our visit.

Thursday the 18th, we visited that place which is celebrated over all the world. This was the Thames Tunnel, the construction of which would never enter the human mind. The noble river Thames is navigable for ships of the line; the ships pass over the heads of the people in the following

manner: The learned men of England in their wisdom have dug a tunnel under this river. It is constructed in the form of arches, and miraculously lighted with gas, and it is free from all damp. Thus they have most wonderfully succeeded in making a road under the water, like a bridge under the sea, from one side of the river to the other. To this we call the attention of all travellers. In truth, it may be called a glory of this country, and the name is a sufficient reward for the millions of money that have been spent. It is established by the law that any person who passes this tunnel must pay a certain sum, so that in a short time they may receive what they have spent. After this we went to the road of iron, or railroad, which is near the Tunnel. On railroads there are steam-coaches, which go at the incredible rate of forty miles an hour.

---

### *Description of the Railroads.*

THE wise and learned men of the Franks knowing that expedition in passing over great

distances would be of immense advantage, the learned English in the New World invented first steam vessels, and afterwards they were used by other nations. All the wonderful arts which require strong power are carried on by means of steam, which has rendered immense profits and advantages. The English then began to think of steam coaches, which are especially applicable to their country, because it is small, but contains an enormous population. Therefore, in order to do away with the necessity for horses, and that the land which is sown with horse-corn should be cultivated with wheat, so as to cause it to become much more plentiful, (as it is the most important article of food,) and that England might thereby support a much greater population, they have with their ingenious skill invented this miraculous wonder, so as to have railroads from the capital to all parts of the kingdom. Thus, by geometrical wisdom, they have made roads of iron, and where it was necessary these roads are elevated on arches. The roads on which the coaches are placed and fixed are made of iron bars. The coach is so fixed that no air or wind can do it

any harm, and twenty or thirty coaches may be fixed to the first in the train, and these one after the other. All that seems to draw these coaches is a box of iron, in which they put water to boil, as in a fire-place ; underneath this iron box is like an urn, and from it rises the steam which gives the wonderful force : when the steam rises up, the wheels take their motion, the coach spreads its wings, and the travellers become like birds. In this way these coaches go the incredible distance of forty miles an hour. We actually travelled in this coach, and we found it very agreeable, and it does not give more but even less motion than horses ; whenever we came to the sight of a distant place, in a second we passed it. The little steam engine possesses the power of eighteen horses. These roads are made for two coaches, one to go and another to come ; there are also paths for people on foot. The box that raises the steam is joined to another, and the steam goes from the one to the other, where it dissolves into water ; they do not require water but once in three days. In time, these valuable roads will be established all over Europe, and which will render the shareholders an enor-

mous income. To-day, we paid a visit to two most interesting objects.

Friday the 18th, we went out of the Capital to a city forty miles off. Here, there is a large river, over which they construct in five minutes a complete bridge, on which carriages of artillery and horses, &c. might pass in perfect safety. In the same manner the bridge is withdrawn in five minutes. We had a very good exhibition, but the distance was great; and, we being engaged to-day to dine with Mohammed Ismâel Khan, we tried if possible to return in time for dinner, but it was not possible, even two horses were nearly killed, and did not arrive at the time. But brother Wali having remained at home went to that party at the fixed dinner time. There he met the son of Tippoo Sultan; after dinner he returned home.

Tuesday the 19th, I went in the morning to the house of Mohammed Ismâel Khan, offering excuse for not being able to attend the night before. Afterwards we paid a visit to Sir John Hobhouse, the Vizir of the East Indies. He was sitting in his magnificent apartments, and we had with him some conversation respecting our affairs and those

of Persia in general, and afterwards we returned to our residence, and on this day, three hours before sunset, we went to the house of Woolock Sâheb, who had invited us to dinner. He was formerly ambassador in Persia for twenty-two years, and knew both the language and customs very well. Here we met several personages who had been formerly in Persia as ambassadors and residents, who also spoke the language, and others who obtained our language in the East Indies. Here we were shown many books in Persian, and several other things from the East. This house is beautifully situated on the bank of the river Thames, and has a most pleasant garden, and excellent air. Among the trees of roses we took a walk, and afterwards we entered a boat to look at the noble river, where we saw a new art which we had not before seen. It was a bridge of iron, constructed as follows :—

There are two lofty arches erected on both banks of the river, on these arches there are fixed two very thick chains of iron, and bars of iron like planks were placed on these chains, over which were fixed the planks of wood. They could in



ten minutes fix or unfix this great bridge, hanging sometimes as if it were in the air. After we had well examined this, we returned to the house; the dinner was served, consisting of all kinds of nice dishes, delicious sweets and fruits, and the conversation was kept up in Persian. After we had spent some very pleasant hours of the night we left, and called upon Lady C——, sister to Lord M——, the Vizir Azam, (or prime Minister). All the vizirs, princes, nobles of this Daw-lét (or Government) were present at this assembly, and we were introduced to each other, and formed their acquaintance, including Lord M—— himself, and all manifested to us their friendship: here also we met Lord G——, the Vizir of the New World, who invited us to dinner. We remained till nearly the morning at this happy assembly, all the time admiring the angelic faces.

Sunday the 20th, we remained at home, when many friends of the nobility came to see us.

Monday the 21st, about the Asser, we went to the house of a very great Nobleman, Duke of B., who is also richer than any other of the nobility of this kingdom. Majestic splendour and impe-



rial greatness appeared at his house. Many princes, vizirs and nobles, were present at this assembly, also many handsome ladies sunk in jewels and precious stones, the beauty of whom made the sun that illuminates the world look ashamed of itself. His house is situated on the river Thames, where many of the young nobility and great personages were in their boats, betting with each other about their best sailing. The band of musicians were also standing by. The one who beats, receives the high tune of praise from the musicians, and the beautiful ladies clap their hands, burning the hearts of their admirers. In several directions of the garden, were tables furnished with all sorts of sweets and refreshments for the pleasure of the visitors. More than 200,000 tomâns on this day changed owners. Here also we met the Shah Zadeh,\* the Duke of Cumberland, a brother of the Badishah: his Royal Highness showed us the utmost politeness of friendship. He is a true noble Prince, and a kind friend.

Tuesday the 12th. About noon we went to a

\* Royal Prince, but literally, it means son of a King.

jeweller's shop. Praise be to God! what a number of most valuable jewels! what a quantity of gold vessels! how beautifully they are made! in fact, the mind cannot but be astonished. This is a mercantile shop of the city of London. We left this shop quite surprised at the wealth of this country. On our way to this mansion we observed some domes (balloons) flying to heaven, and men in them; this is as great a miracle as any.

---

*Account of London, and of this kingdom in general.*

THIS kingdom consists of three great divisions, viz., England, Scotland, and Ireland. Scotland is connected with England, Ireland is a separate island. These islands are surrounded by the Great Sea and the North Sea. These islands are bounded northward by the North Sea. (In this direction by sea, there is no habitation till the New World, a distance of upwards of 2000 miles.) Southward it is bounded by France, which is separated from this country by a channel of twenty-three miles in width, which is crossed in three hours: westward

by the Atlantic Ocean, and eastward by Germany. Between England and Ireland is a channel fifteen miles broad. They are under the 51st degree of latitude, and according to the four divisions of the world, they are in Europe. Being near the north pole, England has a very cold climate; so irregular is the weather, that in four hours you may experience the four seasons of the year. It is generally cloudy, and the four seasons have no separate ranks. Even in summer it is cloudy and rainy. Owing to the constant rains in all seasons, the whole country is green as a garden of emerald colours. Thus all the quadrupeds here enjoy the green which they eat all the year long. Sometimes it happens, that for a month or forty days they do not see the sun, and the air becomes damp. The length of their days, from daybreak till sunset, grows from the beginning of Cancer as long as eighteen hours and a half, and the nights, from the beginning of Capricornus, are eighteen hours and a half. Most of the public affairs are decided at night. These islands are 3000 miles round. Their population is 27,000,000, which is equal to fifty-four kerrors of

Persia. The revenue to government, the whole of which is spent, is 60,000,000, or 120 kerrors of ours. But when government goes to war, they raise much more money. This took place during the war with Buonaparte, when the people gave the wonderful sum of 840 millions, which was spent during the said war. There are to be found in these islands mines of gold, silver, lead, tin, mercury, iron, and salt. But the greatest of their mines, (which are like gold mines,) are their coal mines, which are essential to all their steam inventions both for vessels, railroads, and manufactures. The income of their precious coal mines is two hundred kerrors and a half per day. The capital of this kingdom is the celebrated London. Although in all the kingdom there is not a span of land uncultivated or without habitation, and we might call it all one city, yet London by itself is a Dooniachah, or *Μικροκοσμος*. It contains a population of 2,000,000. This extraordinary amount is known by the census; even the houses are numbered. There are people who are worth millions of money; indeed, unless a person should be very rich, he could not enjoy life in this

capital. If a man gets short of money, he would be obliged to sell his house and leave the city. The competition of multitudes of people causes the land all over the kingdom to be exceedingly dear. Inside the city of London, a foot of ground may be worth a hundred tomâns. Some houses, with a little garden in them, may be worth to a person the sum of 300,000 and 400,000 tomâns. London is one of the largest cities in the world, which are as follows:—first, London, the capital of this kingdom; second, Paris; third, Pekin, the capital of China. Although Pekin is not so beautiful and complete as London, yet Pekin has been estimated to contain a population of 3,000,000; fourth, Astambool, or Constantinople; fifth, Rome, the capital of the Romans; sixth, Vienna, the capital of the Emperor of Austria; seventh, Petersburgh, the capital of Russia. The greatest, the most populous, the most noble of them, is London. The river Thames passes through it. Although the water of the river Thames is not more than that of the Euphrates, and perhaps less, yet the English, by their wisdom and skill, have made it navigable for ships of the

line. There are over it twelve wonderful bridges, each of which cost three kerrors, and perhaps some of them four or five kerrors. One of these bridges is made of iron, without being mixed with a piece of stone or plank, which is distinct from the other bridge of iron that I have already mentioned. The ships on this river are like forests. The large men-of-war are 1200 in number, some of which are of 120 guns; these, besides the packets and steamers. The least of their navy carries thirty guns. The British mercantile vessels are above 25,000, such is their extreme and extensive commerce. Indeed, the English power on the sea is so great, even that the present sovereign, during the reign of his brother, was the Lord High Admiral, and he spent a very long time of his life on the seas. In fine, all the ships of other nations on the globe could not equal the number of the English ships alone, nor ten foreign men-of-war stand in battle against one English; they have always been victorious over their enemies. One of the twelve vizirs of government has the management of the navy; he is called the High Lord of the Admiralty; Lord Minto fills this high station at

present. In his hand is the direction of the whole navy. Besides the above-mentioned ships, they have innumerable others in the West and East Indies, in America, and Australia, which are called out at the time of necessity. The water of the river Thames is very heavy, and not at all good for the digestion, nor could it ever produce an appetite. Yet the people of this country do not use water as a drink; when it is necessary they take a little, once in three or four days.

The principal arts and manufactures are out of the city; the goods are brought into the town for sale ready made. The shops in this city and the streets are as follows: In every street there is the light of many thousand moons put together. All the houses are of five stories high, and have windows with glass, looking to the streets. All round the outside of the houses there are fine balustrades of elegant iron bars, which are truly admirable. Their doors are beautifully worked, and many have *gold knockers of a hundred tománs'* value. The houses are regularly numbered, and the names of the proprietors are written upon them, and those that are in business have their



profession written on the doors of their houses. Thus, for example: if a man wishes to write to another, he has only to know the name of the individual, and from the book printed for the purpose can find his address. Thus he is guided, and may address the letter according to the book. In every street there are boxes where he can put the letter, which will be forwarded, and may obtain an answer through the same means. By such extraordinary facilities their business is conducted. Many other such advantages they have for their affairs, which at first would appear as incredible; but by examining them, you will find that every man is furnished with such preparation as to perform his work without the least trouble. As to fruits, those of both cold and warm climates, are made to grow here in hot-houses, as already mentioned, but very dear. Some fruits and other eatables are imported from other countries: wine also of different kinds, which is to them a staff of life, is imported from foreign countries, for they have not a drop of their own produce. Most of their necessary articles are also brought from other parts: such as cotton, wool, sugar, rice, coffee, &c. ;



corn also is imported; most of these articles are brought from the New World, which itself formerly used to import them from the East Indies, but now they cultivate them themselves, and stand in no need of other places; especially they cultivate the ginger, which is as fine as the snow, and superior to any of other countries. It is so rich in soil that it produces enough for the home consumption, and also to export to England and other kingdoms of Europe. The most important article from the East Indies is cotton: vessels daily arrive in England loaded with this article. The cotton manufactory in this kingdom has risen to such a height that they bring the raw materials from such a distance of five months' passage: they pay taxes thereon; but their wonderful machines and skill enable them to make such an enormous profit; that is, they send it back manufactured or twisted, and make thereby wonderful gain. Indeed they export their cotton manufactures to all parts of the world. In a word, they gathered up to themselves all the arts of all parts. Their commerce is attended to, and every thing is watched to protect it. If any individual or individuals invent or

propose to bring forward any thing which may seem to injure the public or the interest of commerce, whatever its importance may be, it will not be allowed by Government. In fact, every thing that relates to this worldly prosperity is conducted in perfect order. What to us may appear difficult to the mind, to them is very easy. The people of this kingdom are of genteel nature, and delicate constitution; most of the ladies, and females in general, are more delicate and refined than the blossom of roses. Their waist is more slender than a finger ring, their form is beautiful, their voice gains the affections. The men are very particular in their disputes, which are carried on with great ability. If there should be the widest possible misunderstanding, still they keep up the rules of politeness. If it should rise so high as to produce vindictive feeling, still they carry on their disputes in a genteel style, and bad language (God forbid!) is not used. To be called a liar is the utmost insult: this will lead to a duel; the duel is allowed here. Sometimes this happens in such circumstances as the following: If a man should be at an assembly, and should have some-

thing said to him improper or disgraceful, he who feels it to be such would at once leave the room. Then he will relate it to some friend, saying, that he heard so and so, at such a place, in such a party, which he did not like at all. Then his friend will reply, "So and so perhaps did not intend to insult you, he might have said it by accident, write a note, and I will carry it to him, and learn more fully." Then the plaintiff will write to him a respectful letter as follows: "At such and such a day, at such an assemblage, I heard you say such words which made my heart feel angry, please to explain to me what you meant." Then the friend will carry the note, and request an answer. If the object of the accused is not to insult him, he will write him an answer as follows: "Upon my honour I never intended to create any displeasure in you, and should I have said any thing which you consider improper I now beg your pardon." Such an answer will settle the question. But if otherwise, he will neither excuse himself nor beg pardon, but will answer as follows: "I have received your letter, which I will thus answer: meet me on such a day, at such a place, and thereby you

will be informed, and learn all the particulars." This will give him to understand that the object is a duel. Then he informs his friends of it, and commences preparations to meet his opponent, and likewise the other will inform his friends that he has already appointed the time to fight with such a man. Then the friends of both endeavour to settle the question between them, but generally, this cannot be effected without fighting the duel. However, when all mediations fail, then the two individuals, accompanied by their respective friends as witnesses, meet at the appointed place, exactly at the fixed hour, which will be published in the newspapers. When the two come to this place with their pistols, then the friends use their utmost influence of mediation; if at last all should be in vain, then they separate from each other a distance of twenty feet, and the signal will be given when both fire. Then it becomes a matter of chance; sometimes both of them are hit and perish, and perhaps no one is hit, or one dies, and the other is saved. Thus the question is finished; this act is permitted by their law which does not condemn it, and it has been a well-known

practice among the fools of this nation from the ancient times.

It is quite similar to the old foolish custom of the heathens, who threw both the plaintiff and defendant into the fire, believing that the flame would only burn the criminal and not the innocent. Thus, also, these people believe that the bullet will not hit the innocent, and this old foolish custom is continued among the imprudent class of the Franks; this, however, takes place more in France than other parts. Just at this time we observed in the newspaper that a great man in that country had been killed in this act.

In fine, in former times, the Franks, especially those of England, were like animals and quadrupeds, and had no arts of any description. They dwelt in forests, mountains, and the extreme coasts of the sea, dressed in the skins of animals, eating the natural productions of the earth, and if they had a king, they sometimes killed him; and likewise their kings killed many of the people. These oppressions, outrages, and violations caused always quarrels between the kings and their sub-

jects. Many people, during the height of oppression, had no rest, and were obliged to abandon the country, and go to the New World and other parts. It appears that at different times, according to the wisdom of the Lord the Omnipotent, oppression falls upon the people in different kingdoms, according to the state of their hearts. These horrible outrages which at this time are practised to their extreme in the Asiatic kingdoms, are entirely banished from Europe, where there is no oppression, and cannot be. In all parts and cities of England which we visited, the inhabitants are a very high-minded people, and conduct their affairs with perfect prudence, so much so, that they have no governors, nor do they require civil power. All of them know the law, and what is justice: they obey their laws, which are founded on liberty. Every person enjoys this liberty, and acts according to its laws. Vizirs, princes, even the king himself, has no power to kill a bird. For instance, should the king fire at a bird during the prohibited season, he must stand before the law, and receive the decision thereof; in short, every person is under the law. Slavery among

them is prohibited and forbidden; and if a man should come here with a negro, the slave, the moment that his foot reaches the English land, is free. Their love of liberty is beyond measure; so much so, that at present they have abolished slavery in their colonies, in the following manner.

Their colonies in the West Indies and other parts, are beautifully and richly cultivated, where also all kinds of arts are employed; they are indebted for this to the quantity of water and good soil which they enjoy, yet almost all the work was done by negro slaves, both male and female, who were bought and imported by the colonists from the coast of Africa. These slaves were employed in cultivating the sugar plant. But when the English at home began to think that all these productions of the colonies, which they received and ate daily, were cultivated by the forced labour of the slaves, and that if they compelled their masters to free them, the colonies would greatly suffer; at last, after discussing this matter for a month, the nation at home liberally granted the enormous sum of twenty millions of pounds sterling to the colonists to free the slaves. Thus they



were liberated, and the trade was abolished, and those people who were once slaves, will now grow up as independent men, seeking after knowledge and fame. The English are not accustomed to entertain strangers in their houses like the Easterns; and unless they see some prospect of advantage, they will not spend a dinar.\* But when they observe a prospect of gain they spend millions: they even plant now, and have no objection to gather the fruit after a hundred years.

In charity, and supporting the poor and orphans, they are exceedingly liberal; so much so, that they give ten per cent. per annum of their income to institutions of charity. On account of the dear prices of living, there may be, out of the 27,000,000 of population, 7,000,000 poor; but not a single person begs in the streets, nor in any part of the kingdom; in fact, if there should be any one begging, he would be taken up immediately and punished for it, as it is against the law; because, in every quarter, there is a house built on purpose for charity, where the poor are accommodated. An agent is appointed for it, who receives the revenue from the good men, and

\* A thousand dinars make a shilling.



spends it on clothing and maintaining the poor comfortably. There is also in every part an hospital: these hospitals are for the sick poor, are beautifully built, and have many bequests, giving large incomes, which are spent for the relief and cure of the poor, who are also attended by well-paid medical men and surgeons of first-rate ability, with servants always on duty, in short, every thing of clothing and diet, that is most suitable to sick people. These hospitals have agents with salaries, to see that every thing is right, and to collect the income; the agent must also present an account once in six months to the society, and if the revenue has not been enough, they will make it up with all their hearts, and if it should be more, then they put it to interest, by which they increase the income of the institution. All these institutions have taken their rise within a period of two hundred and ninety years. Before that time the people were wild beings, and now they cultivate all branches of science, so much so, that their children are scientifically educated, and speak twenty languages. They do not spend one moment in vain. Great and small, old and young, every one is endeavour-

ing to enlarge his interest. Perhaps, out of this 27,000,000 of population, there is not a single soul who does not know how to read and write, not even the dumb, deaf, or blind. They do not give credit for fine hand-writing; they say, writing is good enough if it can be read, and they do not spend the time simply in learning a beautiful hand. They have several thousand colleges and schools, for instructing in every class of learning, on which they have spent millions of money. All this for education and wisdom. Verily, such a magnificent kingdom and high nation is not, in these times, in any other part of the world, nor has such an one been, even in ancient times, mentioned in the histories. Their wealth comes from their arts and extensive commerce, and they daily find new inventions, and make others grow jealous. They send out their vessels with their artificial articles, and in return receive them laden with solid gold. They have no desire of gaining possession of other countries, nor of raising money by their civil power. They say, "If we take possession of foreign countries, and wish to keep them in a good condition, and have the natives

satisfied, we must then spend in that country whatever income we may raise ; if not, the people will not be satisfied, and the country will never advance. A better possession than the East Indies there is not, where we have above 100,000,000 of subjects: the civil income is about £50,000,000, which are spent in it. The only interest we have in its possession is for our commerce ; what is, therefore, the use of being at the expense of taking other kingdoms, which would only give us trouble, and be of no profit at all ?” Thus they do not regard extensive lands. They like to be on good terms with all foreign powers, and desire peace to rule over the face of the earth. They always take great interest in establishing peace between such powers as are at war, even if they spend millions of money on it. Their object is to prevent war, and keep the world in tranquillity ; their policy in it is this, that war would take away the security and happiness of the people, that commerce would be stopped, and their trade much injured, which would be a great loss to their revenue. But if the world remain in peace, their goods will be always wanted, for which they re-

ceive gold. For this important principle, they have a Board of Trade, whose duty it is to see into and promote the welfare of commerce. There are, also, for the encouragement of commerce, some large establishments, called Offices of Insurance, which are established by law, with millions of capital. For instance, if a man wishes to send some goods to other countries, say to Constantinople, or Damascus, and is afraid of loss by sea, either by their being wrecked or burnt, he need not be prevented by these suspicions. He has only to send his goods on board, and get a receipt for them from the captain, (which they call a bill of lading ;) he then takes the receipt to the insurance office, and declares the value of the goods he has exported, and on every thousand tomâns, he pays the company ten tomâns, (which is one per cent;) then he receives a written legal contract from the company, that so and so has insured such a sum on such goods, exported in such a vessel, and that if any thing should happen to them either by fire or shipwreck, &c., the company undertake to pay him for it. Thus the merchant, with perfect safety, exports his goods.

There are also many other such establishments, against fire and other accidents, the gains of which are considerable, and their losses innumerable; in short, it is a kind of gambling. Verily, the commerce in this empire enjoys the utmost degree of encouragement.

Living in this country is exceedingly difficult, and to foreigners is impossible, every thing being very dear, so much so, that the cost of living like a poor man, is for one person a tomân per day, and that simply on bread alone. To live comfortably it requires an expense of fifty tomâns per day. The charges on their workmanship are higher than the value of the original; for instance, you give to a goldsmith ten drachms of gold to be made into a vessel, he will charge you for making it alone thirty tomâns, whereas you have not paid for the original gold more than this sum. Likewise, a tailor will charge, only for making a coat, five tomâns while the cloth itself is not worth more than three. Thus all their charges are higher than the value of the original materials.

Their dealings are in one word, that is, they

have one price. Whenever you go to a shop to buy something, the seller will tell you his price, either you must take it or leave it. If you should offer him any thing less, it will be considered as an insult to him. A part of their currency is in stamped papers, sealed and signed by Government; they are as good as gold money. Thus a man may carry in his pocket 100,000 tomâns; this is to save the trouble of carrying money about. These are called bank-notes, and are from ten tomâns to a thousand. They are good in every part of the empire, and could be changed in any city of Europe, but in the East they do not pass, except in their Indian territories, or unless some English commercial house should cash them. These notes render the Government a large income.

When any thing happens that requires the Government to carry it on with money, and the people to support it, this is arranged in their Parliament, that is, in the House of Commons, which raises the money out of the taxes on lands, vessels, houses, horses, customs, posts, public places, cattle, &c. The duty on every thing is regularly

fixed, and commissioners are appointed to purchase what is necessary for Government. However, it will be better explained hereafter.

Their carts and carriages strike the observer very much. A large tree, which would require 500 men to carry it, may be easily transported to any distance, on a cart drawn by two or four horses. They have also instructed their large dogs even to draw carriages quickly. They are fond of dogs, and take pains to teach them to become useful; they make them so serviceable that sometimes they are sent on business. For instance, if a man wants something from a shop that is known to his dog, he will write a note to the shopkeeper, asking for what he may want, then he puts the note into a basket, and hangs it on the dog's neck, and gives him a sign. The dog will carry the message immediately, and return to the satisfaction of his master. Many other curious things are done by their dogs, not important to be mentioned. They do not keep any useless animal; all that they keep must be of use. If any should be of no use, they will dismiss them. The English are very particular to raise



and cultivate the country, which they like should be famous in this respect. They seek very much after news, and every person, old and young, is acquainted with the Government, its regulations and arrangements. Every soul is at liberty to say what he thinks of Government, and propose what he approves. A man in this kingdom is not great by being of a noble family, or a descendant of so and so. The high are those that are superior in mind. Many times a learned private individual becomes a prime minister, and the son of the prime minister, if he is not high-minded, will be considered as a fool. When I say Government, I should state that they who control it are distinct from those who do the duties of it. One is the Privy Council, and the other the public Government. The Privy Council is the king and his vizirs or ministers. The public, or general Government, are the whole people of this kingdom, from the king to the poorest. Every one has a right to vote. In fact, this is the Government, because the Commons have the purse, and the voice in the whole affairs. As every person has the right of directing the affairs, therefore, all of them try to establish what is best



to them all. In this case, as all of them have the power to think and to direct, yet it is impossible to assemble the whole nation, to conduct the business of government. This being impossible, therefore they established what is called a council or Parliament. This Parliament consists of three houses. First, the House of Commons, which consists of 650 men, elected by the nation, and of course what they say comes, as it were, from the mouth of the whole people. These members are some of the most learned and highest in mind among their countrymen. Every member will vote according to the wishes of those who send him. It is the duty of this body to look after the revenue of Government, how it comes, and to take care that not a halfpenny is spent in vain. The vizirs have the direction of the great affairs, they constitute the Privy Government; however, I will explain this hereafter.

The second house of Parliament is the House of Lords. Lords are peers, or like our khans. A peer is such, either by inheritance, or being created one by the king. Their house is between that of the Commons and that of the King. All Eng-

lish peers have a right to sit in the house, but those of Scotland are only sixteen, and those of Ireland are also of a limited number. In short, their constitution consists of three divisions—first, the House of Commons; second, the House of Lords, who are the pillars of the kingdom; third, the king and his vizirs, who have in their hands the actual direction of affairs. Every one of these three divisions has a separate department in the metropolis. In fine, this Government, that is, the Parliament and ministers, assemble in the first month of the year. All the agents of the nation, who form the Houses of Commons and Lords, wherever they may be, must come to London at the said time, ready to take their seats in Parliament. The king, wherever he may be, will come to the capital. The king on this day opens Parliament, arrayed in all his majestic splendour and state, with the crown on his head, escorted by his life-guards. Then he sits on the throne, embroidered with jewels, in the House of Parliament, where there will assemble all the vizirs, peers, agents, foreign ambassadors, and about 400 of the noble ladies, all of them seated

on splendid chairs, ready to receive their king. When every person is ready, then the king stands up, his face towards the assembly, and with perfect eloquence, he makes a speech as follows:—

“Thank God that my kingdom is in perfect happiness, and all the affairs both at home and abroad are in perfect order. All the Badishahs (kings and emperors) have sent to me ambassadors assuring me of their union and friendship. The commerce of this empire is enjoying its highest prosperity, and all these benefits are through your wise direction of affairs during the last session. This year also I have to request you again to meet in the houses, and with your high skill and learning take all affairs and matters into consideration, and settle them as you think best. Should there be any misunderstanding in any part which may require either war or peace, you will also thereupon take the proper measures to settle it according to the welfare of your beloved country, with all other matters necessary for the interests of the kingdom.” Then they receive their instructions, the king leaves them, and they thereupon meet in Parliament every day from one o’clock in the afternoon till four

hours after sunset, Sunday excepted, (for the Christians keep it holy.) All of them sit in Parliament, and take all matters and affairs into consideration, and decide on all questions, and every thing important both at home and abroad, and when there is a difference of opinion there will arise great voice and vehement disputes.

The Lords also meet in the same edifice, and the vizirs sit either in the House of Lords, or in that of the Commons, or in them both, as they must be elected out of the members of Parliament. Their meeting continues four months, after which, on a day appointed, the king comes to the House in the same imperial splendour and state, when all of them, as before-mentioned, (the ladies come only on these two days,) and gives another speech, thanking them for the supplies of money which they have appropriated to him, and to all the important objects of the kingdom, and praising them for their labour. Then he tells them that they have been a long time absent from their homes, and that now he wishes to prorogue the House, that they may go home, and please God they will enjoy all pleasure, and may their lives be prolonged to meet again.

Then the king departs, and Parliament closes, and the presidents will keep the keys. Thus every member goes to his pleasure. Then all the business will be left to the management of the ministers who will direct the affairs, even if the commons are not present; yet, whenever any thing very important happens which would require the sentiments of the people, then the king will call Parliament to meet, but this does not happen often. This that is already mentioned is the idea of Parliament, yet I think on this point, it will be desirable to give distinct details of the powers belonging to each of the three Houses.

I have already mentioned that the members go every night to the House, to see and decide on all subjects great and small.

First, every thing begins in the council of ministers, then one of them will present the case before the House of Commons. If the House should reject it, it will not pass. But if some should object to it, and others approve it, then each party present will give the advantages and disadvantages of the measure. After much discussion then they divide, the larger party have the power, and

thereupon the bill, or whatever the case may be, will pass. And if both should be equal in number the party that have the ministers will be the stronger. After it passes the House of Commons, then it is carried to the House of Lords, and the peers will examine the case or bill. They can either reject it, or approve of it. But if they reject it, then they of course will be against the public; however, if they should send it back to the House of Commons, yet they will return it again to the House of Lords, with strong majority, showing that the bill has passed the House of Commons, and must pass in the House of Lords. Then the vizirs in the House of Lords, who are always supported by the Commons, being of their party and policy, will endeavour to carry through the bill in the upper House. If the Lords should still be against it, then they will all give their proofs, and show reasons and explanation to their objection. At last they will divide, and the majority will be victorious. If the majority should be against it, then it will be carried out of the House of Commons, and all the ministers will meet in Parliament, and carry through the bill, having the strong majority

of the Commons on their side. But no bill is passed without much consideration and discussion, and unless the Lords should be satisfied in the plan of the case they will never agree to it. When they divide, the result is given by the presidents of the two Houses. When the bill passes the two Houses, then it is carried to the presence of the king, by the prime minister saying, that the Government in council have thought best to establish this act, or law, or whatever it may be. The king has the power to refuse it; but as by doing so it will be quite against the nation, therefore whether he likes it or not, he will sign it; then it is a complete law, and it will be sent to the minister whom it may concern to be directed by it.

It has been already mentioned that the revenue of the treasury is about one hundred and twenty kerrors, and that during the time of war it is much more. Of the whole of this the vizirs must present every year a correct account to the House of Commons, even to a penny, with satisfactory explanation, how and for what these kerrors have been spent. If the expenses that were made should be agreeable to the Commons, well and



good, if not, the vizirs must stand the consequence, and will be obliged to prepare more satisfactory proofs in the next session, and on the whole, it is impossible that a halfpenny should be spent without utility. The treasury has a vizir on purpose, whose duty it is to receive in, and to present the accounts at the proper time. These accounts must also be regularly published in the newspapers, that every soul in the empire may know how the money was spent, and every person that has given ten tomâns of the revenue, in case he should see any thing wrong in its expense, has a right to rise up in the House of Commons, and seize the vizir by the collar, saying, "What have you done with my money?" But as there will be always some expenses which cannot be published, for this they raise a sum, called the secret fund, which is placed at the disposal of the ministers, who are the faithful trustees of the nation.

The six hundred and fifty members of the House of Commons are the agents of the nation: they are also regularly elected by the people in majority, and are among the most learned and most respectable. They have no salary for their labour,



they only work for the love of their country and the kingdom, and always endeavour to promote the welfare of the nation in general; and their office is also of high honour.

As to the vizirs or ministers, they are not of a limited number, they are such a number as can perform all the duties of Government, (in fact, they are the Government.) First is the prime minister, who is connected on all affairs referring both to home and abroad; he is the second person after the king, and the head of Government, and in rank he is higher than any of the nobility. Second is the vizir who directs the affairs of the Home department. Third is the vizir of Foreign affairs, in whose hands are the appointment of ambassadors, consuls, and all affairs in foreign kingdoms. In his hands are also all the affairs of all the diplomatic officers that are sent to this court. All British diplomatic agents must keep up their correspondence with him, from whom also they receive their instructions. In his office he is perfect master. Fourth is the vizir of the Colonies, whose office is a very high one, and very important. Fifth is the vizir of the Royal

Navy, in whose hands is all that concerns the English forces in the seas, also the appointments and degradation of captains, and all naval officers. Sixth, the vizir to the Treasury, who receives all the revenue of Government and pays it out, and at the end of the year presents the account to Parliament. Seventh, the vizir of the East Indies. Although all the affairs of the East Indies are in the hands of the Company, and Government has nothing to do with it, yet, as the principal appointments and important affairs have to come from the Crown, for this reason, there is a minister, and without his advice and sanction nothing can be settled by the Company. Eighth, the vizir of infantry soldiers, in whose hands are all appointments of generals, colonels, captains, and all officers of rank. Ninth, the minister of cavalry, in whose hands are all their affairs. Tenth, the minister of the artillery, who has also the same power in his department. Eleventh, is the vizir who is called the Postmaster-general. He has the direction of all the mails, posts, roads, carriages, &c. The twelfth is the vizir who is called Lord Chancellor; he is very great, and the

head of Parliament, and the head of the judges ; his office is a most noble, honourable one. In Parliament he sits even above the prime minister, and his speech is regarded more than any other. All of these vizirs have vice-vizirs, (under-secretaries of state,) who have thousands of persons about them who carry on the work by the minister's orders. Although every one of these vizirs is master of his own department, yet they do not drink water without the advice of each other, they do nothing without consulting each other.

The administration consists of two parties. The one is named whig, the other tory. The difference between these two parties is political, that is, every one has a different opinion on policy. Their seats in the Vazaraship, or administration, depend on the House of Commons, that is, if the majority of the House are tories, then the ministers also are tories ; and if they be whigs, then the ministers are whigs. They cannot both be in office at the same time. Administration must be of one party alone. It happens sometimes that they are changed, one goes out, and the other comes in. Sometimes the father is a whig, and

his son a tory, and two brothers may also be one a tory, and the other a whig. The difference between these two parties is as follows :

The tories in ancient days have always been in office, and thereby they have established to themselves some privileges by which every one is now a possessor of millions of money. As to their policy and their views, they say this :

“ Three hundred years ago, we were wild people, and our kingdom then was worse and lower than any other. But through mind, wisdom, and learning, which we have now, we have brought our kingdom to its present height of honour; and as our empire grew larger by our management, why should we now reform and give up our policy which has done all this good?” This being the case, they say they will not give up their views. As to the whigs, they say this :

“ We know that it is more prudent to go according to the changes of time and circumstances; moreover, by the old policy, only a few were profited, and as our government is a general one, therefore we must observe that which is best for the whole nation, and that all should be profited,

and every person should enjoy the same privileges. It will never do that some should grow rich beyond measure, and others should be left poor. The policy of the whigs is for the advantage of the public in general, and they are most powerful in the House of Commons. Also the present administration is formed of whigs. But there are also a good number of tories in Parliament, who always dispute with the opposite party: in fact, each party uses its utmost power, by proofs and arguments, to establish its own view. Thus they, (the two parties,) have always great discussions. There is also in this kingdom another foundation, which is of invaluable importance and exceeding advantage, that is, what they call newspapers. These papers are written by some very clever editors and authors, who are very learned, and poets. They enjoy the confidence of the people. They have large establishments, furnished with every convenience, such as types and presses, and every necessary material. They employ thousands of individuals in these undertakings. Some of them are appointed to go about the different parts of the city, to learn all

the news concerning every thing that is going on, of life, death, birth, war, quarrels, arrivals, departures, sales, purchases, failures, friendships, disputes, and, in a word, all kinds of information, which they relate daily to the editors. Others go about the king, queen, princes, vizirs, and, in an astonishing manner, they learn what is going on, in detail, and give in an account of it. Likewise some are sent to the different departments of the vizirs, such as the Vizir of Foreign Affairs, who is always visited by foreign ambassadors, political agents, and consuls, and receives news from all parts of the world. Thus the information is collected, and reported in the printing-office. Besides all this, they have agents in every place abroad, to inform them of all foreign news and accidents.

There are also some of the best and quickest writers, whose business it is to go every night to Parliament, and write down every breath that comes out from the mouth of each member, and this is perpetually sent to the printing-office. Perhaps before the representative has finished his speech, half of it is already published and given to the public to read. In this manner they collect all the news,

and publish it on large sheets of paper, every thing in its detail. There are printed myriads of these papers daily, during the whole year long. Thus every soul in the kingdom is informed of the proceedings of the Government, and what is their intention, what good they are doing for the people, and how the House of Commons is getting on, and, in fact, whether every thing is right. Besides, they have all the particulars of foreign countries. From these establishments the treasury derives an income of some thousand tomâns annually.

There is another department in this kingdom, of great usefulness to the public, which they call the Post; that is, an establishment for the conveyance and despatch of letters. This is arranged in the following manner:—in every direction about the town there are boxes, where letters may be put in. Every person that may want to send a letter to any part of the kingdom, or abroad, has only to address his letter regularly, as before-mentioned, and may send it to be put in these boxes. People on purpose are appointed to go out, morning and evening, with leather bags in



their hands, and bells, and gather in the letters. All the letters are brought to the large department of the Post-office, where the lord vizir resides, and also some thousands of persons are engaged in carrying on this affair, to separate the letters for different parts and put them all in order. Afterwards they put each mail in a separate bag, and despatch them in fast coaches for their respective places. The best horses and coaches are provided for this important business. When the mail approaches a town, the postman blows his trumpet, so that the post agent, on hearing the sound, will be ready to receive the bag of letters belonging to that place. As to the postage, it is fixed by Government. The same is true when the mail returns to London, with the answers to what has been sent. Thus every morning and evening 500 coaches leave London with letters to all parts of the world. If the postage be paid, it will be written on the letter "Post Paid," if not, on its delivery it must be paid. Through this excellent facility, the letters in this country are forwarded. The larger the letter, the more it pays. The revenue to the treasury on



this establishment is six kerrors, while the advantage to the people is very great.

Another of their excellent arrangements, and which attracts much notice, are their lights during the night, which make the day and night to be nearly the same. In all their cities, towns, villages, hamlets, mountains, hills, plains, bazaars, and every street, light at night is just as it is in the day-time. This is effected by means of their conducting the light through pipes, as if it were a liquid, or water. This they call gas, or what we may call spirit of coals. It is produced as follows:—

A few miles distance from every town there are placed some pots or kettles of iron, on high situations, every one like a room of iron, founded on arches of iron. They put every day in them some thousands of tons of the mineral coals, which they burn until the coals become dissolved like a black liquid. To every pot there is a pipe of iron, and all are connected together with one large pipe, through which all the gas runs into a cistern of iron in the shape of a vat. On

the top of this cistern there is a tower of iron, in the form of a trumpet; this is to prevent any accidents in the pipes, in case they should be overfilled with gas. To this large deep vat there is a very large pipe of iron, six pikes in circumference, leading out to another place near the town, where it is joined to several other pipes of iron, through which the gas is conducted to every house and street. Myriads of houses, of fifty or a hundred rooms each, receive this light from one pipe, to the head of which there is an instrument in the shape of a lion's head, through which the gas runs; so that a house may be either lighted or darkened by turning the said instrument. In truth, this gas lights better than any other liquid. In this same manner all the lights through the kingdom, after sun-set, are lighted, and by day-break they are put out. Thus, without trouble, a man may have any quantity of light in his house, by paying so much for each light to the Company, who will convey gas through pipes to his house, and fix the light for him. Most of the people in this country use it; all their public-houses, churches, shops, and workhouses have

their lights of this gas, without the least trouble of oil, except some of the great people use fine spermaceti candles in their drawing-rooms. Verily, it is a wonderful thing, and a very wise invention! Some kerrors of revenue from this go every year to the treasury, and to the country its mines of coals are more precious than one of gold, because through them they carry on their wonderful and most valuable machines of steam.

There is another object which displays the ability and industry of this nation. They cut, out of the river Thames and other rivers, some large canals, to bring the water to different parts of the country; this is to save them the expense of carrying their heavy goods throughout the country. They have rafts of planks on these canals, which they load with goods to the weight of 10,000 mauns, and the raft is drawn by a single horse: from this may be learnt their income, when one horse is made to draw the weight of 10,000 mauns. Indeed, all their affairs are measured by wise calculation. They divide their time, both day and night, in regular hours of business, and they are exact to a minute. They are very parti-

cular in their time, which they value very highly. When a person has an engagement or an appointment at such an hour, either on business, a dinner-party, or whatever it may be, the person always puts into his mind the fear of not being in time; therefore, he is always on the alert to be at the exact moment. For this purpose, they have, on the outsides of all their churches, at the four sides, fine clocks, which strike every hour, exact to a second, and the striking of the clocks may be heard four miles distant. The clocks that are thus fixed on the walls of the churches and other edifices in London, may be more than 500,000. For the night-time, they have, on the minarets of their churches, clocks, behind which are placed lanterns that give a powerful light, which enables every person to see the fingers of the clocks from one mile distance, and they look very handsome, like full moons. The Franks count time from noon to midnight, quite contrary to the Oriental custom, from sun-set to sun-rise. It is likely that their account is more correct, because there is always a difference and change in the length of day and night, but mid-day and mid-

night can have no changes. However, as they know best in this science, it would be better to follow their time.

They have also some other regulations and customs, which I must not omit to mention, as they may furnish some useful information. One of them is, several thousand public-houses, for entertaining foreigners and travellers, and every body. The first class of these houses are called, in the Frank language, "Hotels," which resemble the Persian caravansaries, yet the cost of each building simply, must have been 200,000 tomâns, and the furniture is worth much more. All the plate for the table, and other vessels, are of gold and silver, and whatever you may think of, you will find in these establishments. It is not the custom of this country to receive any body in their families, not even a friend nor a brother, therefore it is necessary to lodge in an hotel, and all travellers in this country, even the natives themselves, go to these public-houses. For this reason they have built such splendid houses, capable of entertaining all kings, princes, vizirs, nobles, and gentlemen, who visit

this kingdom, and take up their residence in them. In every hotel there will be more than 200 servants, male and female, who are ready at any moment to receive orders, both day and night. They serve with all their hearts, and are always very attentive to the guests, like mothers or brothers. Each of these establishments contains more than 100 rooms, and every room is furnished with all things, as sofas, bedsteads, table for writing, a fire-place, &c.; in fact, every thing is most splendid and comfortable. As to the servants, they have separate places in the house, where they attend to its duties. In every one of these rooms, there is a long fine silk cord, which is joined to a bell below. All the rooms, and likewise the bells, are numbered, so when you touch the cord, of course the bell rings, and the servant immediately looks to the number upon it, and in an instant he will be with the gentleman. I, on purpose, did sometimes touch the bell at midnight, and scarcely had I touched it, when a man or woman came up, and whatever I ordered, it was brought immediately. In short, there is nothing wanting in them, they are even better than your

own homes. The servants get up very early in the morning, and sweep every part in the house; the dirt is immediately carried away, and they make the house as clean as a looking-glass. The servants themselves are very clean, and particularly so when they wait at the table. There are also in these establishments some washing-women, who wash and iron so well, that the clothes, after being washed and ironed, look as if they had just come out from the tailor's.

All the people in this kingdom are clad alike, and there is no distinction in dress. Such persons of rank as vizirs and other officers, put on their uniforms when they go to the King's levee, but at other times they dress just like other people. It is not even the custom here, to take servants with them, except one behind the carriage, whose place is always to be there. Vizirs, nobles, and other great personages go out about the streets alone, and sometimes purchase what they may fancy; even members of the royal family do so, and sometimes the King in person goes out dressed like other people: when he does so nobody pays him the honour due to him as King.



He is only respected as such when he goes out in his state. The Kings here can only marry a member from the same royal family, and not from any foreign ; as it is considered unlawful, because he is the father of his subjects. Likewise a royal princess is never married to any person but to a royal prince, and this rule is kept by all the sovereigns of the Franks. In fine, all this comes from the liberty which they enjoy: this liberty is carried to a greater extent in France, and to its utmost point in America. In that part of the world, they advance daily in every thing, and nothing is made in Europe, which they do not also make in America. Although most of the people of America migrated from Europe, yet at present they enjoy such a liberty that they are independent in every thing. Their Government is also a republic, and in all probability they will be, before a long time, stronger than any other power. There are some possessions in America in the hands of England, France, Russia, and Spain, but it is supposed that these also will in time be independent. In short, wherever liberty and justice prevail, there civilization advances, the population



increases, and the arts flourish. For, London, the most noble, before justice and liberty were enjoyed in it, was inhabited by men so wild that they lived under the shadow of the trees, and were clothed in animals' skins; whereas now they have houses as palaces surrounded by balustrades of iron most elegantly wrought, of the value of 10,000 tomâns. The people are handsomely dressed, enjoying all the pleasures of life. Whence comes all this? From justice, and righteousness, and mutual love. This indeed proves what the holy mouth pronounced :\* “The kingdom will endure though infidelity be in it; but it will perish if there be oppression.” In fine, wherever you may fix your eye you will see that the grace† of this world is to them complete; with abundance of food, clothing, and every kind of luxury; in short, nothing is withheld from them. Their houses are like the palaces of heaven, their houris resemble those of Paradise. Water does not run in the streets in fountains as in the East, but in every place they have in their houses, water which is

\* Mohammed.

† That is, happiness.

brought through pipes, and drawn up to the fifth story by machines, so that by only touching the cock, they have as much water as they may want for use. By a similar contrivance they can put out fires, that often take place, in consequence of their houses being built of fine wood. In none of their houses do you see any fly, or muskito, or any other noxious insects. All their shops are magnificently built of marble, beautifully adorned with large glass windows, from which you can see all the goods inside with their prices affixed. Also shops and houses which may be rented, have in their windows a paper largely printed, thus: "This is to be let," with the price that is demanded; likewise, if it is to be sold. All business is thus carried on with perfect facility, without a broker or a porter. In the same manner a person can tell whether the master of the house is dead or alive, because they have large planks painted with black, which they fix against the wall of the house for a mourning sign which continues a year.

A little time ago, they invented a wonderful art for making things keep out the water. The material for doing so is a kind of gum, which was first used to

remove any thing from paper, even the marks of ink or any other article are taken off by it. This gum for a long time was used for this purpose only, as it is a solid substance. The learned among the English endeavoured to render this gum of greater use. About ten years ago, a painter who had his paints and some of this gum, accidentally dissolved by being exposed to the sun, took the gum, which had become like wax, and rubbed it on a piece of cloth which he found could not be penetrated by water: he then inflated the cloth, and found that even air could not get through it. By this he learnt that he could make some most profitable use of the gum. First he applied to Government, from whom he received a good present, of some thousand tomâns, and a patent that he alone might enjoy the privilege of this art five years. Then he made several kinds of dresses rubbed with this gum, and sold them himself. Multitudes of people bought of him, and they were exported by wholesale to foreign countries. By this he made an extraordinary fortune. After the five years were over, he sold his secret to a company for 30,000 tomâns. They make of it

cloaks and other things, through which water does not penetrate, and let it rain for a whole year the cloak would not even become damp. In the same manner they make beds and pillows, which you may put in your pocket, and when you want them, you have only to inflate them, and you are furnished with a very comfortable bed as soft as if it were made of feathers. By the same art they make girdles, called life-preservers, for the sea: let all the hurricanes, storms and waves be as strong as they may, a person having this on, will never sink under the water, unless he die through hunger or thirst. In short, they make by this art only so many useful articles, that if I were to mention them all I must write volumes; the prices though are very dear. The people of this country do not regard, neither believe the khimira or alchemy,\* but their doctors and wise men are always occupied in studying chemistry, by which they make many inventions that are more profitable than the imagined alchemy. After they

\* The art of changing base metals into gold. Unfortunately many people in the East believe this art, and accordingly they spend their fortunes and become poor. (See Richardson's Dict. second edition.)

finish their business in the day, they go to enjoy their pleasure with most commodious tranquillity. Every man in his house, rich or poor, great or small, in himself is a king. No one can interfere in another's concerns. All kinds of comforts and pleasure are prepared at any hour; you have need to have money, then you may obtain any thing you may want, and have in an instant every thing you like of any article from foreign countries, &c. &c. &c.

The marriages in this country are managed as follows: Young men must first receive complete education in mathematics and other branches of useful learning. Some, however, receive only a commercial education, so that they may be able to keep houses and provide for a family, nor do they till then seek for a suitable wife. The young females receive also a suitable education. They are taught to read and write, modern languages, music, drawing. They do not usually marry under twenty years of age. Their connexion commences as follows: most of the young persons who are bachelors go out to parks, gardens, and other places of pleasure, to smell the fresh air. The young

damsels have no veil on, so that the young men find no impediment to being introduced to them and forming their acquaintance. When a young man has been captivated by the object of his affections, and has been acquainted with her for some time, and learnt her manners and qualifications, he writes to the young love, expressing his attachment to her, and begs her to inform him of her inclinations. Then if she should not happen to be of the same sentiments she will not answer his letter. This will give him to understand his misfortune. But if fortunately she should be of the same feelings, she will then favour him with a lovely answer in writing, assuring him that he is accepted, leaving it for subsequent intercourse to fix the time and place of their marriage. At the appointed time, they meet in the church, present themselves to their kassis,\* and ask him to marry them. The kassis then will perform the ceremony of marriage, according to their custom. The bridegroom takes the hand of his bride and conducts her to the carriage. They visit the country, and remain absent for some

\* This name is given in the Korân to Christian ministers.

time from their parents and friends. During their tour they go from place to place, and from one garden to another, enjoying the company of each other. There are places fitted up on purpose for receiving such guests. Sometimes they go abroad and remain for a year and more, after which they return home. Their parents and friends then compliment both of them on their marriage and safe arrival. When the young lady gets married, she takes the name of her husband, being addressed as Mrs. so and so, whereas when she was single she was called after the name of her family, addressed as Miss so and so. In Europe, they have two names, one of the family, and the other that of the person. For instance, Fraser, is a name of a family, in which there may be two hundred souls, all of whom are called Fraser, both ladies and gentlemen. Yet to distinguish between these Frasers, they have what they call Christian names, such as George, John, William, James, Anne, Eliza, &c. Thus, a man is called Mr. George Fraser, and his wife, Mrs. G. Fraser, and his daughter Miss Anne Fraser, &c.

It is of the highest consequence with the Eng-



lish, that respect should be paid to the fair sex. The poorest female is higher than a king. They consider it as an important duty to respect the ladies. Princes, dukes, vizirs, lords, will stand before them, offering the utmost honour and respect; every one will endeavour to exceed the other by serving and pleasing the lady. Divorce, in their law, is an exceedingly difficult thing, and never takes place, except in cases of adultery, which must be legally proved before divorce can take place. But when such a thing happens, the divorced will lose their standing in respectable society, neither will they be any longer invited to any party, let their rank be what it may; their friends will abandon them, and their enemies will take every opportunity to speak against them.

Thus far I have endeavoured, from the information I have obtained during my residence here, to give my reader a brief statement of the customs and manners of this highly-favoured country.

To-day, about sunset, we went to the entertainment of the Honourable Lady H——. The house is a fine edifice, and the party was very pleasant. Here we saw a blind man, who played



wonderfully on a musical instrument, and he so perfectly imitated the voices of all kinds of birds and animals, that you could scarcely tell the difference between the imitator and the imitated; in truth, it was a complete art. Here we spent a few pleasant hours, conversing with the friends whom we met, and returned to our residence.

Thursday the 8th, we went to the house of Colonel Taylor, now a resident at Bagdad, to see his brother. Here we saw four children of the Colonel's. His mother is a lady, about eighty years of age, and when I saw her, she was weeping at the absence of her son. She told me, "My son, Colonel Taylor, was twelve years old when he went to Hindostan, and I have not seen him since; and now his children, who have been a long time with me, are going to leave me, for which I am exceedingly sorry." I asked her the reason why these young ladies and the sons had been so long absent from their parents. She replied, that it is the custom of the Franks when they are abroad, at whatever distance they may be, always to send their children, when they are very young, to London, or some other city in

Europe, to receive their education, as it is impossible to have them brought up in foreign countries. However, the Taylor's family were exceedingly hospitable, and very agreeable and friendly. Afterwards we went to the palace of H. R. H. the Duke of Sussex, a brother of the Shah, and the head of the Freemasons. His palace is a splendid edifice. When we came there, the royal duke was not at home, but we were admitted, and shown into his library, where we saw innumerable books of all descriptions. We asked whether there were in this library any Persian or Arabic books; upon which they conducted us to another room, the sides of which were lined to the roof with Oriental books, all celebrated copies of Persian works. In fact, not one book of any importance was wanting. We amused ourselves a little time with these books, till his Royal Highness came, who was exceedingly kind and friendly. We spent some time, conversing on different topics, and then took leave, and departed to the house of a celebrated astronomer of this country.

Here we observed a very extensive apparatus,

embracing a great variety of astronomical and philosophical instruments for the observation of the planets, the examination of which completely astonished and overpowered us. He has several rooms, built in a beautiful garden, adorned with elegant flowers, for the purpose of making astronomical observations. There were some most wonderful telescopes, fixed on wheels, which turn in any direction that is desired. These are put, when necessary, on the terrace, and through them one may look at every planet in the heavens, and see whatever is wished. One of these wonderful telescopes was nearly twelve draâs long, and about one draâ and a half in circumference, fixed on a wheel. This telescope magnifies the planet 6000 times. They show in the day-time every planet or star near the sun. One of the glasses which is attached to the head of this telescope is worth 15,000 tomâns. We remarked that glass in this country is not so valuable; how then could the price of this glass be so enormous? He replied, that this glass must be perfectly pure and transparent, otherwise it would not answer the purpose; and such a glass is very difficult to be made: this makes it so valuable. The astrono-

mical and philosophical instruments that we saw here were beyond number. But as the day was rainy, we were not able to see any thing in the heavens, and returned to our residence with the intention of visiting it again.

On this day, after sunset, it being fine weather, we went to the same house again. Saturn at this time appeared in the west, to which we directed the telescope. It appeared to be inclosed with a beautiful ring, but it passed so rapidly that we were obliged to turn the telescope continually, in order to keep it in view. We saw two of its moons, which appeared to be in the telescope. After we had had a full sight of this planet, the telescope was directed towards the moon, which looked so large and brilliant that you might say she appeared at the entrance of the telescope. We observed something like cavities in her, surrounded by black rings; also in these cavities there appeared some dark spots, and at one of her horns we saw a dark line, which appeared to be the breadth of a finger. We asked the philosopher what all these were? He replied, "It has been satisfactorily ascertained that these

cavities are very large mountains, upon which the sun shines, and the black lines are valleys, where the sun does not shine. The black spots which you observed are volcanic mountains, which continually emit smoke. The black rings at one end of the moon are two great mountains, which are opposite each other. Between them there is a very large valley, where the sun does not shine, which produces the black rings." As it became cloudy, we were not able to see any thing else. Then we asked him the distance between this world and the moon. He then conducted us to another very large room, where there was a large telescope, to which were fixed some instruments, about ten yards long. On this telescope were many figures. The astronomer said that each of these figures expressed the distance of five miles, and by certain calculations it is ascertained that the distance from our earth to the moon is 240,000 miles; it is also ascertained that the moon has no water or air; nevertheless, it is believed that it is inhabited.

"We have observed," said he, "in all the planets water and air, especially in Jupiter.

But in the moon and sun there is neither." In fine, they have arrived at these conclusions from their accurate observations. They have also ascertained that each of the planets is, like the terrestrial globe, inhabited, and that besides the known seven planets there are four others, and that the earth itself is a planet, and turns upon its axis like the others. As to the sun, they believe it to be fixed, and that the seven planets are perpetually revolving around it in their orbits; they approach and recede from each other. Some of the planets have moons; others have not. This world has one moon; Mercury, being so near to the sun, they have not discovered any belonging to it. Lovely Venus has no moon, and Mars has none. Jupiter has four moons, and Saturn, being very far from the sun, has seven moons, and the other four small planets have no moons. All these planets, with this earth, turn round the sun, and the sun itself is fixed. Each of the other fixed stars that we see is of itself a sun, and has its planets, just like the nine planets which are connected with this world. On account of their immense distance, they cannot be

seen by the naked eye, but they can be discovered by the telescope, through which they may be seen revolving like our planetary system. It still remaining cloudy, we could not see any thing, yet as there were not many clouds towards the west, the astronomer said that after four minutes there would appear in that direction a fixed star, which is in itself a sun, and has no moon, and is called Mahirkles. Exactly when the four minutes passed, he fixed the telescope towards it, when we did not see any thing else but that star, which had a most powerful brilliancy. Afterwards we saw another small star, very brilliant. The astronomer said that the little brilliant star is a planet, and that every hour during the night it revolves round the large one; just as the earth turns round its sun: that every one of the fixed stars is a sun, and has planets that turn round it, and that every planet is thickly inhabited by beings like those of this world, and that, without doubt, the earth, to the inhabitants of these planets, is like a star. Blessed be the Creator, and praise be to the high ruler of these vast dominions! Afterwards the astronomer invited us to his house, where we saw a very



extensive apparatus, so wonderful that it dazzled our eyes and minds. Then he presented to us some refreshments.

In the meantime, one of his pupils came into the room, saying to him, "The clouds in that part of the heavens which you wished to examine have passed away." He conducted us to the large telescope, saying that what we were going to see was more splendid and attractive than any other part of the heavens. We immediately fixed our eyes to the telescope, beholding that part which was to the north-east. We saw in one place most brilliant stars, very near to each other; then we looked again, praise be to God! we beheld myriads, thousands of myriads of stars, most brilliant, every one of which is a sun; round these there were others of different colours, without number. Now we lost our senses, and it is impossible to describe this scene. Would that all our friends could come and enjoy these sights! In truth, we were highly satisfied with our most delightful visit. Now, it becoming very late, we bade our host good-bye, and returned to our residence.

Friday the 9th, we visited the East India



Company's house. Sir John Carnac, the chairman this year, having previously called upon us, and also having met us at many parties, we paid him a visit. It is a very large lofty edifice, which is so splendidly furnished as to dazzle the eye; the riches of this Company are immense. The word "Company" means a body of men, joined together for mutual advantage. So the Company of the East Indies began originally as follows: a body of nobles and rich men of Great Britain, 150 years since, formed a company to trade in Hindostan. After they became well acquainted with every thing in that empire, they, through the sanction and power of the government, took possession of India, on the condition that the civil affairs of the country should be in their hands, and thus this Company became complete masters of that empire, and secured the interests derived therefrom to their descendants. The number of persons forming this Company may be about 10,000. All the income of India goes through their hands. They appoint and remove their officers, and the Government at home does not interfere in their affairs, except that one of the twelve vizirs has

charge of all the affairs of India, without whose advice or presence they do nothing. Sir John Hobhouse at present fills this office. This Company is called the Indian Government. The revenue of the treasury of India is seventy-five kerrois, out of which they pay their expenses. The army in India is 300,000, besides forty pieces of artillery, the cost of which is all defrayed by the Company. The ministers to Persia are appointed by the Company, except the present ambassador, who was nominated by the king; likewise the residents at Bushire, Bassora, and Bagdad are sent out by the Company. But out of the 10,000 men who compose this Company, there are twenty-four members elected, who direct all its important affairs. These are called Directors, and reside in London. Out of these twenty-four there is one who is their head for one year, and another, who is called the Vice, or Deputy Chairman, who becomes head the next year. Although these two change annually, yet they still remain members of the twenty-four, and obtain high honour, if they have advantageously promoted the interest of the Company.

By this wise management, the affairs of India every year become more powerful, and subject to better order. Each of these Directors has his own house, yet all of them meet daily in this large government-house.

This edifice must have cost millions of money. In it we observed most curious and valuable articles from all parts of the world. If I were to mention minutely one twenty-fourth part of what I saw, I should have to write volumes. The chairman conducted us to every room, and showed us all that is to be seen. In one of the large rooms, we saw all kinds of strange and curious quadrupeds from the East Indies and Western Islands, that is, their skins, which were so elegantly stuffed that they appeared to be alive. In another room, we saw all kinds of birds from the East Indies and Asiatic Islands, which had a very interesting appearance ; and in other rooms we were shown all sorts of arms from the East, and so many other things, that our eyes were wearied in beholding them. Afterwards they conducted us to their library, which contains 12,000 volumes, of all imaginable works, many of which are most beau-

tiful Persian manuscripts of the best authors and writers, such indeed as we had never seen in the library of the Badishah of Persia. We observed some of the Word of God, written by the most celebrated Meerza Ahmed, and Aga Kassim, and other celebrated writers. One of these Korâns is the most beautifully written in the world, the eyes of days and turnings of nights have not seen such a book; in its margin is the holy interpretation most wonderfully written.

Afterwards they showed us into another room, where we saw the portraits of the Badishah of Persia, with all the Royal Princes, all dressed in their royal robes, hunting in the presence of the Shah. All the names of the Princes are written on the portraits in Persian, and the pardoned Kassim Khan appears before the Shah, with a dagger in his hand killing a gazelle. In truth, these likenesses are so beautifully drawn that you hardly can tell the difference between these portraits and their originals. Our own likenesses are also in the same place. Afterwards they showed us the presents and the kind offerings of the pardoned Badishah to the English ambassa-

dors and other visitors, and also those that he sent to the Company with some of his works. In fact, the said presents are such as to reflect the highest honour upon such an Emperor. Thank God we did not feel ashamed of them. They said to us, that the majestic state of the Badishah of Persia is more splendid than that of any other king. After we had seen all these, we were conducted to another room and took some refreshments, and then returned to our residence. In the evening, we went to Lady——, where we enjoyed a delightful visit.

Saturday the 10th, two hours before sunset, we went to dine with the directors in a large lofty house. It was so splendidly furnished that we had not seen its like before. All nobles, vizirs, and several of the foreign Royal Princes were present at this noble assemblage. There were in all 400 persons at the table, which was loaded with all sorts of dishes of sweetmeats and fruits. Perhaps the expense of this entertainment was about 10,000 tomâns. This dinner was given in honour of Lord Elphinstone, who had just been appointed Governor of Madras. It was given in conse-

quence of his contemplated departure. And all the pillars of Government were present to receive his pledge of honour to promote the interest of Government, in the country to which he was going. Some of the distinguished personages rose from the table, and made speeches expressing the confidence which Government reposed in his Lordship, and he gave a speech expressing his thanks and assurances that he would promote the interest of India to the utmost of his power. In short, so noble an assemblage and so splendid a display we never had seen before. We were very happy to meet Lord Elphinstone, having previously made his acquaintance. While we were sitting at dinner, my brother Wali was suddenly seized with a terrible cholic, and was obliged to leave the table and go home. Mr. Money, a friend of our's, was immediately called to see him, and remained with him almost all the night. Wali was ill for five days, but thank God, at last he recovered. After dinner we had some conversation with our friends, and returned home.

Sunday the 11th, and Monday the 12th, during both days we received some visits from the nobility,

and in the evening we attended very pleasant parties, in delightful gardens abounding with pure water, and excellent air.

Tuesday the 13th, we went out of town to an entertainment of Sir Gore Ouseley. It is the custom of the nobles and great men of this kingdom to have country houses or seats. These seats are splendidly furnished and delightfully situated. The winter and the spring they spend there with their families, all the time enjoying the comforts of life. Sir Gore Ouseley bought this seat four years ago, for 150,000 pounds sterling, equal to 300,000 tomâns of Persia, besides expending enormous sums in making improvements. He has erected most splendid buildings upon it, and made it a complete paradise. The furniture of his mansion is of silver and gold. In short, here there is every thing that the eye and the heart can wish of the pleasures of life. His library is a capital one, and contains many Persian and Arabic books, that the Shah does not possess. Some of them were quite new to us. He has bought oriental books to the amount of 30,000 tomâns. We were indeed exceedingly pleased with our



visit to these good friends and this delightful place. About sunset we returned to our residence.

Wednesday the 14th, we received intelligence from Government that our affairs were nearly settled, and that our departure from London would not be long delayed.

Thursday the 15th, news came from abroad that the Tigris, one of the two steamers on the Euphrates, had sunk in a great storm, and that twenty persons on board had been lost. In the evening we were invited to visit the honourable Lady E——. It was a noble and delightful party.

Saturday the 17th, about Asser,\* we entered our carriage to take a drive in the parks and the gardens. In fact, the God of all has given these people all the enjoyments and happiness of life, and has withheld nothing from them.

Sunday the 18th, Lord Palmerston came to see us in a very polite and friendly manner, and informed us that our requests were granted and fairly settled, and that any time we pleased we

\* Asser, generally, is the time about three hours before sunset.



might depart, and that Mr. Fraser was directed to conduct us as Mihmindâr as far as Constantinople. His Lordship also said that his Majesty would be pleased and very happy to see us, and that we might have that honour on Wednesday, as the Badishah who had not been in the capital for some time, would be in his palace here on Wednesday next, where we might be presented. In truth, Lord Palmerston was in every respect very kind and polite, a striking proof of the friendship and union of the two empires. In the evening we went to the entertainment of Mr. V. Smith, where we met a noble and most delightful party of ladies and gentlemen. It was an exceedingly pleasant visit, as I had formed before a particular friendship with the honourable, agreeable, and accomplished Mrs. S——.

Tuesday the 26th, we visited a manufactory for the purpose of purchasing some instruments, and a pump, which is capable of drawing water from the depth of seventy draâs. This latter I bought for 200 tomâns, to be used on our return to the Holy Land. I hope that with my hand I shall be able to place it in the holy spot, for

the benefit of the pilgrims, and those that are honoured to reside in the most blessed parts.\* I trust that the pilgrims will remember me in their prayers. Then we visited a very learned artist, who cuts beautiful figures and statues out of marble and solid rocks. Tuesday evening we went to the entertainment of Mr. Money, where we enjoyed the sight of faces lovely as the beautiful moon, and had our hearts nourished with their sweet voices and music on the piano-forte. In truth, it was a very delightful sight.

Wednesday the 21st, we went to be honoured at the gate of his Imperial Majesty. The custom with the kings of this country is as follows:—when a foreigner comes to this kingdom on some important embassy to Government, his business must first be brought before the council, and before his affairs are settled and received by the ministers, he cannot see the king. But when his plans are accepted by the Dawlet,† then he

\* Najah Ashref, near Bagdad, which I have already mentioned. Before I left Bagdad, the prince had gone there to fulfil his vow by fixing the pump.

† Government.

will be presented to the sovereign. The King himself leaves the management of his affairs to his ministers. He himself has leisure for the enjoyment of various pleasures. He enters his carriage, he visits the garden, he inhales the odour of the flowers, and derives enjoyment from every source. Sometimes, for two or three months he does not come to his palace in the capital, and see anybody there. He goes *incognito* about the streets, conversing with whom he pleases, and even should he be discovered to be the King, he would only be respected as a private gentleman. When we were in this city, there were several royal persons and kings, who went about privately, as other people. However, on this day he came in state to his palace in the capital. Three hours before sunset we set off for the royal palace. When we came there, we were first conducted into an ante-room, till Lord Palmerston informed his Majesty of our arrival. Then we were ushered into the presence of his Majesty, and introduced by his lordship. When we entered the royal hall, where the Shah was standing, and when we saw the light of his countenance, we

bowed our heads to him, as due to his Majesty. He expressed his kindness towards us, and pronounced the joyful words, that we were as his sons, and that he would be pleased to order every thing for our welfare. We most humbly offered our thanks for his grace, and his Majesty was highly pleased with our address, which Meerza Ibrahim translated very well. After the audience we took our leave and departed. In truth, he is a most gracious, excellent king; exceedingly kind and affable. He is about eighty years old, and this is the sixth year of his reign. He is a descendant of a German royal family, of the house of Hanover. It is rather more than a hundred years since the line of Stuart (formerly kings of this country) ceased, and the present one came to the throne. Charles the First, of the house of Stuart, was a sanguinary and arbitrary prince. He wished to subvert the constitution, to dispense with Parliament, and to reign despotically. The English, however, put an end to his career by decapitating him. Here followed a short interregnum, after which his son, Charles the Second, was called to the throne, and on his death

was succeeded by his brother, James the Second. This sovereign attempted, like his grandfather, to reign despotically. But he was obliged to abdicate, and the nation invited his son-in-law, the Prince of Orange, to the throne. This last king dying without issue, Anne, daughter of James the Second, reigned, and was succeeded by George the First, prince of the house of Hanover, whose line is now upon the throne. Here we must express our best thanks to his present Majesty, for his hospitality, kindness, and friendship.

Thursday the 22nd, Mohammed Ismaël Khan called to see us. He breakfasted with us, and soon after we went with him to the painter Mr. Partridge, who lived in a house near us. This distinguished and learned artist draws and paints so exquisitely that nothing is wanting to his drawing but a soul. This artist drew out the portraits of us three on one piece of canvass, so much like, that one could scarcely distinguish the likenesses from the originals. Every day numbers of very beautiful ladies came to see our portraits. On this day also while we were there, a few of these houries came to gaze at them; we asked

them to sit down, and enjoyed with them very pleasant conversation. There was among them a very handsome young lady, who said to one of the ladies of the party, "I should like to become the wife of your brother, but I find it very difficult, because I have no brother to be married with you." Taymoor Meerza hearing this, said, "Lady! I will become your brother, and fill the same office." The ladies then fainted in laughing, and were exceedingly pleased, and thus it was agreed upon, that Taymoor Meerza should become the brother, and satisfy both the two ladies, and himself. After the contract was finished, they took the hands of each other, and held a very delightful conversation on the joke. Since this day, whenever Taymoor Meerza has met this young lady in any party, he does nothing but sit down and keep her company. All the vizirs, princes, nobles, and gentlemen, began to see Taymoor Meerza in every party always engaged conversing with this lady by signs, and endeavouring to make himself understood. The nobles and great personages said to Taymoor Meerza, "You are exceedingly fortunate in obtaining the favour of this lady, since many young

noblemen and very distinguished persons have used every means to make her acquaintance, but she has not favoured any one of them with her company." In short, Taymoor Meerza fell in love with her, and gave up the idea of returning home, and on the whole he forgot every thing, and determined to abandon every other place, and reside in London. Indeed, the love of Taymoor Meerza was so strong, as to lead me to think, that if I should insist upon his returning home, it would cause his death. Our friends seeing that Taymoor Meerza's enjoyment in their parties depended solely upon the presence of this young and honourable lady, made a point of inviting her to meet him. On one occasion we were invited to an evening party; when we arrived, Taymoor Meerza saw the house dark, not observing a ray of the shadow of his love: he looked in every direction, and did not see the star appearing from the horizon. The more he looked round, the less he saw. Then he said to himself, "Oh! how have I lost the sight of my eyes! let me die." Again he said, "Nay, what will it profit me if I lose my life. Oh! let me live, if I can only see her again. Can



I be in a party without my soul? No! It is impossible, let it not be." Then his heart forced him to rise up to the host; with an open eye he asked him, "Where is the lady?" The assemblage suddenly laughed, saying to him, "She is already out of your grasp." Two days ago she fell in love with a young gentleman with whom she went to the great church, and was married with him, and both of them have left the city. They are now walking about among the flowers, enjoying the pleasure of love. Unfortunately, Taymoor Meerza, as soon as he heard this unexpected news, was almost distracted, and could scarcely be comforted by any body. However, our friends explained to him that she did not keep her word, and that he need not be sorry, and with much pains they restored his heart.

On the next day we went to the house of the painter, and saw our portraits, for which he will receive about 1000 tomâns. Here I made the acquaintance of Miss R——, with whom I formed a strong friendship and attachment. I accordingly accompanied her to the great zoological garden,



where we gazed at the wonderful quadrupeds and birds.

Friday the 23rd, we accompanied a party of beautiful and honourable ladies to some gardens; and three hours before sunset we went to the entertainment of Sir H. Willock, who had been for twenty years ambassador to Persia. He speaks Persian with perfect eloquence, and is also a fine Persian poet. His house is like a garden full of roses, and his party resembled the beautiful blossom of flowers, which produces joy in the heart, and the brilliancy of those who were present was a nourishment to the soul; and the pride of the spring rose to its height. His garden is green like emerald, its water is rose-water, its trees are the residences of the nightingales, and verily his house is a paradise. There were also numbers of the nobility and gentry, most of whom speak Persian, which they learned in Hindostan and Persia. By this means they kept up with us a very agreeable, friendly conversation.

One of the party was a young lady, whose beauty caused the brilliancy of the sun, which

shines on the world, to be ashamed of itself. The roses of the gardens looked with humble obedience at her beauty. This handsome young lady sung very sweetly while she was playing on the musical instrument which they call a piano-forte. This lovely, delightful young damsel turned with a smiling face towards Wali, saying, "Tell me a Persian verse, that I may sing and play upon my piano." Brother Wali immediately obeyed her commands, and recited a verse of Hafiz, which she sang beautifully. On the whole, it was a very delightful and agreeable entertainment, and we had most pleasant conversation on different topics. On our way to this place we saw some domes flying in the air, which they call balloons, and here we learnt the particulars of their construction. The balloon is made of a strong silken material, which is glazed with a certain substance that renders it impervious to the atmosphere. They expel the common air, and inflate it with a lighter gas, and attach to it a boat, in which two or more persons may sit, and thus ascend to the clouds. It reaches so lofty a height, that it appears to the spectator, with a spy-glass, like

an orange. Again, by letting the gas out of it, the balloon will, by degrees, descend. They have not yet succeeded in causing it to descend to whatever place they wish, but in time the English will bring this invention under perfect control.

Wednesday the 23rd, early in the morning, Sir Gore Ouseley and Fraser Saheb called upon us, and said, "We are ordered by the King, that if you have a desire to visit Windsor, the imperial palace, you are invited by his Majesty to do so; and that her Majesty the Queen will be happy to see you as her guests in the palace." We thankfully accepted the invitation, and ordered our carriage for the palace. It was a delightful day. All along the road we enjoyed the delicious fragrance of the delightful gardens. After travelling thirty-three miles, we arrived at this heavenly palace. On our way thither, we met his Majesty proceeding to the city. The King being in his carriage, we paid our salutations at a distance, and received his Majesty's in return.

This superior palace is situated in a garden, or park, fifty-two miles in circumference, which is surrounded by a wall of iron bars, about three

yards and a half high. The park has forty gates, splendidly wrought, and through it run several fine streams like rose-water, and its trees are most noble, producing a beautiful shade. The carriage-roads are so finely paved, that a person might take his repose upon them. Roses of every kind, and flowers of every hue, are in this park. Its land is green like emerald, its prospect is pleasure to the eye. Gazelles, antelopes, and deers, are here in thousands. Pheasants, partridges, woodcocks, and game of every kind abound, all of which are enjoying this delightful place. Nightingales, goldfinches, and their associates, keep with their sweet voices watch in this garden. It is naturally carpeted with a beautiful green velvet. My pen tells me, do not proceed; I am incapable of describing it, it is Paradise. In one part of this Eden, there is a hill, two miles in circumference, on which the palace is built; it is about 2000 yards in height, and affords a most beautiful view of the park. The mind cannot but be astonished at this splendid edifice, whose description exceeds the power of human writers. Its brilliancy reproves the sun of the

world. The girdle of its cupola makes that of Kassrow\* sink into insignificance and shame. The first geometrician of the age would be unable to find out the ratio which the corner bears to the entire roof, and the most learned architect would cut his finger,† from his inability to discover the principles of its construction.

Art thou a garden and a palace, residence of victory? or a Paradise that God hath planted in the earth? In truth, thou appearest as an everlasting Paradise. O azure four-springed fountain! whence did thy colour first come? Thou must be a stream from Kauthâr!‡

In every room that we entered, our astonishment increased, and our minds were surprised. In every apartment we observed imperial splendour. All the furniture was of gold and precious stones. Even in the smallest room there appeared to be an assemblage of all the jewels in the world. The brilliancy of each article of gold and jewelry surpassed that of the sun and moon. Each

\* Cyrus.

† An expression of great despair.

‡ The immense large river of Paradise, detailed in the Koran.

of the kings, for 200 years past, has had a separate palace in this castle, with distinct majestic splendour of sovereignty, as may be now seen, just as they were when these sovereigns occupied them. And whatever unique jewels each sovereign obtained during his reign, are placed in his palace, with his statue, either of marble, jasper, or porphyry, seated on a jewelled throne; so beautifully made, that you might say, it is alive and can speak. One statue of a former king cost more than 12,000 toinâns. Thus you may imagine what is the value of all the statues, pictures, and figures in this castle. In the same manner, every one of the shahs of England has his coat of arms, together with the arms of such foreign kings as he may have conquered. All his ministers and officers of state during his reign, have also statues placed by him in the room, each with arms of the age, and appearing as if they were alive.

In the royal rooms of the late kings, all are seated on their thrones and chairs of gold, embroidered with precious stones, which cost millions of minted gold; each has his crown on his head of a hundred mauns of solid pure gold, and

adorned with precious stones, so magnificent as to take the senses away. These crowns are supported by chains of gold, and suspended over the heads of the sovereigns. In short, the majestic splendour of every sovereign who has died still exists. All the royal furniture in the palace is deposited in the different apartments, and every thing which indicates the greatness of majesty is still now in the same order as formerly, and attendants are actually waiting just as if the departed sovereign was alive. Their libraries are filled with myriads of volumes, a thousandth part of which cannot be described. One of the libraries, belonging to one of the former sovereigns, is lined with fifty thousand volumes. We also noticed several rooms, three hundred feet long, and a hundred broad, all adorned with beautiful pictures. These are for balls, where the King and Queen invite their noble guests; the King himself dances, and the Queen also with whom she pleases. When such balls take place, the sounds of the musical instruments in these rooms are heard at a distance of twenty miles. The wonderful articles which we observed are so numerous, that it is impossible to



describe them. After we had minutely examined the palaces of the former sovereigns, they conducted us to the palace of his majesty, William the Fourth, the sight of which made us forget the former ones. Imagine what must be the splendour of a king whose revenue is four hundred and eighty kerrors per annum! Indeed we were filled with amazement at what we beheld. No sovereign ever possessed such splendour, not even Solomon, (peace be upon him!)\* who had power over the Gin,† whom he commanded to find

\* Solomon, the oracle of his age. No name is more famous in the East than his: he succeeded his father David, according to their belief, when only twelve years old, at which age Omnipotence placed under his obedience, not only mankind and animals, but even the elements, and the Gin, good and bad. His throne was magnificent beyond idea; twelve thousand seats, some say twenty-four thousand, of gold, being arranged on the right for the prophets and apostles, and twelve thousand on the left for men learned in every science. The birds were his constant attendants, screening him like a canopy from the inclemencies of the weather, whilst the zephyrs wafted him wherever he wished to go, rendering horses, or any earthly carriage, unnecessary. For further particulars respecting the Gin, and also respecting Solomon, see *Ayat el Namleh*, or Chapter of the Ant, in the Koran, as I cannot here enlarge further.

† Gin, *i. e.* the well known fiery spirits of the Koran, and the Arabian Nights.

for him all the treasures of the world, even he did not possess so much as his present Majesty. Although we had not the opportunity to see one thousandth part, yet of what we saw and estimated we could easily imagine what was asserted of Alexander of the Two Horns, that he blocked up the wall of Gog and Magog\* with gold, since the gold that we observed here in this palace is four times the quantity that would be required to block up any wall of Gog and Magog.

While we were walking about, her Majesty the Queen, a daughter of a German king, sent the Royal Prince of Germany, her cousin, to inform us that the Queen would be happy to see us. We replied, that it was our greatest desire

\* The throne of gold, *i. e.* the country between the Euxine and Caspian Seas ; so called from the privileges enjoyed by the Persian governors of Derbend, to give audience on a golden throne. This province having been anciently considered as the barrier of the Persian empire, a strong mound of gold was built, from sea to sea, by Alexander of the Two Horns. This is called in general the wall of Gog and Magog, as it is believed by many Asiatics, that their territories are beyond or behind this wall. The prince, however, appears now to be satisfied that the said wall was built by Alexander of the Two Horns. This Alexander was a Mussulman and a prophet, according to Persian belief, not Alexander of Macedon.

to have the honour to be introduced to her Majesty. After a few minutes, we were honoured with an introduction to the Queen, who was surrounded by her attendants of honour, daughters of the first English nobility. We presented to her Majesty our humble respects, and the Queen most affably assured us of her sincere friendship. In the mean time a royal Mihmander, with the Prince her uncle, accompanied us to show us the different places in the palace. We afterwards visited the royal church which is near the castle. This church is supported by the vows and bequests that are presented to it by the sovereigns. The sovereigns are buried in this church. On one of the tombs we observed some magnificent statues. A royal princess lies buried here, who died when she was in the bloom of her age. She having been extremely beautiful, they carved for her a most splendid statue. After we had ceased gazing at the church, we entered the carriages that had been ordered for us, and took a ride in the park. We rode about forty miles in it. The wonderful edifices, and beautiful flowers, that we observed here, quite deprived us of our senses.

Every one of the former sovereigns, during his reign, built in this garden an edifice, and planted in it most elegant plants, according to his taste; these are opened for the visitors to enjoy. On the rivers and streams of Kauthâr, we saw some fine ships. The eye is charmed with the variety of roses and flowers which are gloriously presented to its view, minutely to describe which would require us to write for ever. We also observed about the streams some beautiful royal tents, made of rich and valuable stuffs of different colours. Having now gone far in the park, and it becoming rather late, we returned to the palace. Here we had some refreshments of all sorts of most delicious things. Then we thanked his Royal Highness for the kindness of their Majesties, and assured him that the interest we felt in what we had seen on that day was beyond measure. We again expressed our thanks to her Majesty, who was pleased to allow us to see so many most tasteful things. The Royal Prince expressed his regret that we had not time enough to examine all that was to be seen, as it would require more than ten years to see minutely the

third part of the splendour of this palace. Thus having been engaged all the day gazing at the different things, we were fatigued and returned to our mansion.

Thursday the 24th, four hours before sunset, we visited a large edifice, which we may call the opera of the horse.\* It is the same in form as the opera house or theatre, and in the same manner it contains boxes and seats for the spectators. There were on this day about 50,000 ladies with charming faces like the moon, and the ray of their beauty gave a most powerful splendour to the place. The principal parts in this theatre are performed by horses, including other wonderful exercises. In the first part, an Asiatic emperor in Eastern splendour came out upon the stage, where a fire was lighted up, the light of which made the whole place look as red as crimson.

In the same theatre there were many elevated places, like high bridges, on which they performed on horseback. The horses ran up and down exactly like cats. Some little boys, of seven years

\* Astley's.

of age and under, clad in different coloured dresses, played by turning their bodies as if they had no bones at all. They formed, by joining their bodies in different ways, any figure they liked. For instance, they wished to form an elephant. One of them represented the proboscis, another the head, one the neck, and others the feet. Thus they form an elephant, exactly like the original; so wonderfully, that one could scarcely distinguish it from a real one. Likewise, with their bodies they form the resemblance of any other animal. About 100 men were arranged in this manner,—one stood above the other, that is, the feet of one on the head of another, till all were arranged, and then they danced in that position. In truth, it was a very wonderful, surprising performance. The most astonishing part of this exhibition was a ring of wood, which was held by a man, ten yards distance, around which were fixed some spears. Some persons, while playing on the rope, passed most wonderfully through the ring, without being hurt. Afterwards some beautiful young female performers, with angelic faces, dressed expensively with jewels, came out. They played in

different ways, and with their beauty and exercises exceedingly delighted and astonished all of us.

After the rope performance was over, then the play was carried to the lower part of the house, that is, the ground, which is a round place of soft earth. First a young boy, ten years old, rode on two horses, which stood at the distance of a yard from each other. He took the bridles of both in his hand, and placing one foot on each horse's back, and lashing them with his whip, they went with extreme rapidity. The horses ran so swiftly, that their feet did not appear to touch the ground. It is said, that they go the distance of an hour in a minute. In fact, the performance of this boy on the horse's back, in such a narrow place, was so quick and wonderful that we lost our senses. Afterwards a young female appeared, of beautiful complexion, brilliant as Venus. She also, in the same manner, rode on the horses, but in a more wonderful way. She actually danced on the horses, and made these large, powerful animals themselves dance. Sometimes this young lady, with a stick in her hand, gave a sign to the horse, which he



understood as well as a human being, and fell down as if dead; again she gave another sign, which made him rise up and dance. In fact, nothing was wanted to this horse but speech. After this young lady had finished her wonders, then other performances were introduced. I would only add, that what we saw done here was as if by magic; indeed, you may call it a complete necromancy. Afterwards the master of this establishment himself came out, and performed so wonderfully on horseback, that he might be called the first horseman in the world. This man, standing on a very large and powerful horse, exhibited such distinguished powers of horsemanship, that what I have already mentioned is nothing in comparison of it. While the horse was at full speed, he filled his pipe, struck a light, and began smoking. He also took a pen and ink in his hand, and while at full gallop wrote letters. Likewise he loaded his gun, and fired. Again, two men stood and held a circular screen of paper in his way, ten yards above him, through which he jumped, though the horse was at full speed, and alighted on his back. In fine, what was exhibited

here was miraculous. Were we to describe the whole, it would too much lengthen our book.

After we had spent a few hours at this place, we went to Lady C——'s, one of the distinguished and honourable personages of this kingdom. Here we spent some delightful hours of the evening, and near daybreak we returned to our residence.

Friday the 25th, we went to a cutlery shop, to look at the various articles, such as penknives, razors, scissors, &c. Here we saw many curious and strange instruments, such as we had not before seen, for dentists, oculists, surgeons, and doctors. It never entered into our minds that there were so many and such various instruments, as we here observed, there being upwards of two million knives of different descriptions. Some of them were for anatomical purposes, to remove any part of the bones with perfect facility. These instruments are so ingeniously constructed, and adapted to their purposes, as to enable even a child to practise in medical science. Indeed, those of the medical profession in this country appear to have no difficulty in curing any disease; so that, whatever to our Persian doctors appears as incurable, to

them presents no insurmountable difficulty. We saw here a penknife that had 1800 blades; in short, we spent nearly the whole day in gazing at these different articles.

On Saturday the 20th, we visited some of the bazaars and shops, where we saw specimens of art without end. In the evening we went to the house of Lord Glenelg, vizir of the West Indies, and all the English colonies. Here we met, at dinner, princes, nobles, and vizirs, a magnificent assembly. At his residence we saw some most curious birds, such as we had not seen even in the Zoological Gardens. In truth, it was a very noble entertainment.

Sunday the 27th, an hour before sunset, we went to the house of Sir John Hobhouse, the vizir of the East Indies. Here there were present many of the vizirs and nobles of the kingdom, and many of the distinguished persons of India. The assembly was adorned by the presence of a company of beautiful ladies, the ray of whose faces lighted the place, as in daytime. After the dinner was served, the ladies favoured us with some Persian music, by which, and their

friendship, we felt exceedingly happy; in truth, it was a very noble entertainment. From thence we went to the house of Lady R——, who possesses an unequalled beauty. Here, as in other assemblies, all the guests were clad in fancy dresses, and wore false mustachios and beards, and every one danced. After we had had a full sight of these exhibitions, we returned to our residence.

Monday the 28th, we went to the house of Noori Effendi, the ambassador of Rome. His house is very fine, situated in the Park, from which any one can have an excellent view of all the beautiful faces of those angelic forms who take their walk or ride in the Park. The table was furnished with all kinds of nice dishes and delicious fruits. After the dinner was served, we had together some pleasant conversation on Persian and Turkish poetry. In truth, it was an exceedingly pleasant entertainment. From hence we went to an evening party at Lady C——'s, where the assembly was most noble.

Tuesday, the 29th, Fraser Sâheb called, and said, "There is a house in the city, which is

well worth visiting; should you be inclined to see what it contains?" Not feeling very well, and being engaged to go in the evening to the palace of the Queen Princess Victoria, I declined his invitation; but Wali and Taymoor Meerza went with him. They were conducted to a house where they saw some figures of kings, and the Royal Family, both male and female, with some figures of ministers, heroes, and princes, all made of white wax. Every one was dressed according to his rank, and his costume was richly embroidered, and adorned with jewels, in perfect order. When Wali, and Taymoor Meerza entered this hall, they were astonished at this imperial assemblage, thinking within themselves what these emperors could be doing here, and why they should be assembled in this place; why should these females and royal members be seated on jewelled chairs? Some had books in their hands, others were writing, and some appeared as if they were leisurely conversing with each other. When they were informed that the objects which they saw, were simply artificial figures, they could not believe it, but when they approached, and actually

touched them, then they were satisfied, yet with great astonishment. After they had fully inspected this exhibition, they determined not to inform me of the reality of what they had seen; and as we were to go in the evening to visit the Queen, they contrived to bring me first to this house, saying, that it was the palace. At last they carried their purpose into effect, by desiring Fraser Sâheb, to say nothing about it; but to bring us to this house in the evening on our way to the palace. Afterwards they went to another place where there was a very large edifice; here they were conducted up some stairs and saw a dark place, and the stars appearing in heaven. There were many men and women seated on chairs. Shortly after, they observed in this place a large church in which there were many priests engaged in prayer, and many large candles lighted up. A few minutes after, daybreak began to appear, and by degrees the light of the candles began to die away, and the sun which illuminates the world arose, and the stars of heaven totally disappeared. Every minute their surprise was increased from these wonderful representations.

When they inquired, what these exhibitions were, and were asked what they thought the distance might be from them, they said, that they were at least 800 feet. Quite to their astonishment, they were informed that they were not more than six feet distant, and that all these lights were so arranged in the pictures as to cause all these sights by their colours, and by drawing down the curtain it becomes dark. The light in this room, is admitted in a certain way, which enables them to carry on these exhibitions. In truth, no one could ever think that the sunny illumination in this place was artificial. Many people visit this place, and as they have to pay something for admittance, a large income is brought to the proprietors. Afterwards they moved to other seats when it became again by degrees as dark as night, and there appeared to them a village at a distance at the base of a large mountain, upon which light gradually dawned, moreover the barking of the dogs of the village was heard. Some clouds in the heavens appeared, and caused a storm of rain with dreadful thunder and lightning. Afterwards snow fell so plentifully, that in a very short time



it covered the mountain and the village with the plain, and every thing therein. After a little while the sun shone, and many carriages came from the neighbourhood in order to take out the inhabitants who were buried under the snow. All this also was artificial. After Wali, and Taymoor Meerza, had a full exhibition of these wonders they came home, and related what they last saw, and concealed what they had seen before.

About sunset we entered the carriage for the royal palace, on a visit to the Queen. We arrived at the door of the house, supposing this to be the palace. I desired Fraser Sâheb to enter first, and to announce our arrival, and to obtain permission for us to enter. Fraser Sâheb went in, and came out, saying, that the king has honoured this place with his presence, and that all the royal family are present, as well as the vizirs and nobles of state, all in full uniform, in the presence of his Majesty, who is holding a levee. I then entered the place, and found it a splendid hall. The king was sitting on the imperial throne, with the crown on his head, and clad in a splendid royal robe of jewels. In the

same manner, the Queen was seated, in her most magnificent robe of precious stones. All the members of the royal family were in their full uniform, making a circle round the King. Dukes, princes, vizirs, and nobles, all standing before him. The royal hall was beautifully lighted up, with magnificent chandeliers. When I beheld all this splendour, I said within myself, "I ought to approach the King just as I should my sovereign, the Badishah of Persia, and offer him the same dutiful obedience." Thus I approached nearer to the King, bowing down my head, after our custom, and my brothers stood behind me. The King, much to my surprise, did not appear to acknowledge my presence. I then asked Fraser Sâheb why the King was uncivil. He said, "I do not know. Perhaps," said he, "the reason is, that it was not the King, but the Queen, who invited you, so that the King has nothing to say to you; let us go to the Queen." I was exceedingly vexed and ashamed of what took place, bowed my head to the ground, and followed Fraser Sâheb to the Queen. Here I observed a throne of marble, inlaid with precious stones and valuable jewels.

On this splendid and magnificent throne was seated a young lady, with a face like the moon, dressed in royal robes, worth more than the revenues of Europe. A precious crown was on her head, and she was surrounded by a company of ladies with angelic faces, whose splendour was like the sun at mid-day, all seated upon chairs of gold. I drew near, offering the due respects; all were silent, and nobody replied to my salutation. This was quite the reverse of what I met with at other parties. I began to be quite vexed with Fraser Sâheb, and said to him, "Fraser Sâheb! this gives me to understand that the Queen did not invite me to come, and that she did not wish to see me. It is all through your fault and intermeddling that I have to bear this shame."

One of the ministers, dressed most magnificently, without a hat on his head, was standing before the Queen. I went near this minister, and desired Fraser Sâheb to tell him this, that although the Queen did not invite us, yet we were already in her palace, and it would be only politeness in her to treat us as her guests. Fraser Sâheb interpreted to him what I said, but I ob-

served that this man did not give any answer, neither uttered a word. Praise be to God! what a curious circumstance! I then took his hand, saying, "Why do not you give an answer to my question?" When I shook his hand, he fell down. I then observed that he was dead, and I was astonished to find that all of them also were dead persons. Now my brothers and Fraser Sâheb laughed loudly, and said, "These people are not dead, but all of them are artificial figures of white wax." Verily, no one would ever have thought that they were manufactured by men.

This establishment belongs to a rich nobleman, who inherited it from his father; and it brings him daily an income of a hundred tomâns. Many people from all parts of the world come to visit this wonderful place. In short, I was not satisfied till I examined all of them; and I was perfectly astonished to find that there was not the least difference between the imitation and the imitated. So wonderful are the arts of the Franks.

After I had made a full examination of this place, we left it for the royal palace, which is most beautiful, and most magnificent; the imperial

furniture in it is exceedingly costly and splendid. A number of the most distinguished nobles of the kingdom were honoured to stand before Her Royal Highness the Princess Victoria. When we entered into the royal presence, we were received by Her Royal Highness the Duchess of Kent; we also met Her Royal Highness the sister of the King, and were introduced to the Princess Victoria. We presented our humble respects, and received the utmost civility, and kind friendship. Her Royal Highness is seventeen years of age, and the only daughter of the late Duke of Kent, who was a brother of his present Majesty. Her Royal Highness is the legitimate heir to the throne, by the right of the precious blood of her father and herself. Although King William the Fourth has several children, yet as their mother is not of the royal blood, they have no right whatever to inherit, and the Princess most certainly will come to the throne, being the daughter of his brother.

It is the custom of the royal members of the Franks, not to be married to any except those who are of royal blood. When this Princess

comes of age, she must be married to a royal prince. A great many come from different parts, to be honoured with her presence; she converses with whom she pleases, and he whom she honours with her favour will obtain her hand, but will have nothing to do in the affairs of the kingdom. He will not have a penny from the treasury, he must bring from his own. The Queen may furnish him with money from her private resources, and their children will inherit the throne. In fine, their Royal Highnesses, both the Princess and her mother, were to us exceedingly kind and friendly. I related to them what had just happened, at which they, and all who were present, laughed. Their Royal Highnesses said that they had given us this private entertainment, that we might have a better opportunity to see each other. We expressed our thanks and gratitude for their kindness, and remained till midnight, hearing the royal band of music, which nourished the heart; we then took our leave and departed. Afterwards we went to a party at the house of a lady of rank, where we met many ladies with whom we were

acquainted; and after spending a little time, departed to our residence.

Thursday, the 1st of Rabeah the second, three hours before sunset, we entered the carriage, and went to a house in which the Lodge of Friendship of Freemasons was assembled. Here we had the honour to join the Lodge, where all of us took our first degree in this most noble society. Every man who desires to join it, must go himself and see. But I can say this, that it is a most honourable, desirable, and sacred secret. Every person that desires to become a member, must be above the age of twenty-two years. No slave, nor woman, is admissible. Every member must be a free person, and of a free father. A person may take the three first degrees of Freemasonry, within a year and a half, and the fourth after that period has elapsed. A freemason, after taking his degrees, will have a patent from the head of the society, signed by the nobles, declaring him to be such. The head of all the freemasons in the world, is His Royal Highness the Duke of Sussex, a brother of his Majesty. The word freemason is



composed of two words ; “free,” which signifies Azad, and “mason,” which means Banna. Freemasons of each degree have their own signs, till they reach the highest degree. This is all I can say about freemasonry. Thank God we became members, which we had had a very strong desire to do in our hearts for many years, and now obtained what we were long most anxious to know. We remained with the Lodge till four hours after sunset, and returned to our residence.

Friday the 2nd, Mohammed Ismâel Khan, the ambassador of Oude, came to see us, and dined with us with some other friends, because they had requested a dinner of Persian dishes, which Taki, our cook, had prepared. In the evening we went to a party at Lady M——’s, which was similar to those I have already described.

Saturday the 3rd, we went out of London to visit Lady F——. Her house is beautifully situated on the bank of the river Thames, adjoining an elegant garden, adorned with delightful flowers, and possessing excellent air. Here we met a company of ladies brilliant as the sun. After we had enjoyed the pleasure of the delightful

odours of the garden, and admired the rosy cheeks of the visitors, we sat down to dinner, which was served up with all kinds of delicious dishes of sweetmeats and fruits. After dinner we went again into the garden, where every one took a lady by the hand. The garden was prepared for a ball, and all danced just in the same manner as I have already described. Then we approached the ladies, complimenting them on their fine dancing. Tea was then served, after which we returned to our residence.

Sunday the 14th, some of the nobles called to see us, and we had no time to go out. Mr. Fraser called also, and said, "That the Government had invited us to go out of London, and review the royal artillery." We accepted the invitation, being desirous to witness such an exhibition.

Monday the 5th. Four hours before noon we entered the carriage, and went twelve miles out of London, where there is a very large city on the river Thames. This place is called the royal magazine of war. There is nothing in this large city but instruments of war, and every thing necessary for the artillery and troops, and other depart-

ments of the war service. Although throughout England, Scotland, and Ireland, there is not a span of land uncultivated or uninhabited, yet this city is wholly devoted to the purpose of war, being furnished with ammunition, and all kinds of military implements. Three parasangs outside of the city, in every direction, are occupied simply by soldiers, and whatever is necessary for them in their battles. In fact, there is nothing here but what is of a warlike character. The Government having sent word to this place that we were coming to the before-mentioned review to-day, when we arrived at the city, we were met by the general officers, and were conducted to a large lofty palace, which is the residence of the prince of artillery. As soon as he was informed of our arrival, he came out of the palace in full uniform to meet us. Here there were four horses belonging to the king ready for us. We mounted and rode to a fine plain outside the town, accompanied by the generals, colonels, and other officers of rank in the artillery, and were followed by some pieces of cannon, mounted on carriages drawn by horses, which went like lightning. These were pointed

at a target at two thousand feet distance. They fired at it, and hit it with every ball. Afterwards they were directed at a target more distant, and not a single ball failed. After this we went to another side, where there were some thousands of large cannons of the royal artillery, with every thing belonging to them, all in perfect order. Here we stood under the royal standard. The dexterous artillerymen loaded and fired their cannons quicker than lightning and swifter than the wind. They fired many thousand balls a minute, and the ears of the heavens became deaf from the sound of their firing, and not a single ball missed its mark. Afterwards the artillery with the officers passed before us exercising, and saluted us with the flags down as is done to royalty. After this we were conducted to another place, where we observed several thousand very large cannons, such as we had not before seen, four times larger than the celebrated cannon of Teheran, and those of Bushire.

The general officer of the artillery, and the other officers, carried on the exercise in the same manner by such firing as we had never before witnessed. So many cannons they fired, that our ears became

quite deaf. Afterwards they began throwing bomb-shells. This most wonderful exhibition I cannot describe, and our pen is astonished, and cannot write an explanation of these miracles. Then we suggested that it was enough. The balls and powder which were fired to-day, might have cost 7000 tomâns. Afterwards they invited us to see the stores of ammunition, and implements of war. We were conducted to a large plain where there were many very large edifices, any one of which must have cost millions of money: they are so large that each is a quarter of a parasang in circumference. Every one of these edifices contains about 5000 men employed in the manufacture of cannon, which look fine and bright like glass. They complete daily twenty-five of them. On one side of this establishment, we observed innumerable cannons manufactured, to be sent to the East and West Indies, and New Holland, and other countries. Afterwards we were conducted to another manufactory, where we saw several thousand men employed in making carriages. In another place, we observed as many more employed in making muskets for the troops.

In one part of the building, the barrel is made, and then it is immediately carried to another place, where thousands are employed in completing them. They send out daily many hundreds of guns. All these are made by machinery moved by steam. Afterwards we were conducted to a very large manufactory for wood-work, where they have instruments to cut to pieces in a second the largest tree in the world. Then we went to another place where we saw about 600 boys of six and seven years old, engaged in making cartridges. These little boys are instructed to do their work with the greatest facility, and each makes several in a minute, and 2000 in a day. After this we went to a place where we saw many thousand large cases placed one above the other. This was the powder magazine for the ships, troops, castles, &c. and we observed many men examining each case, that should any of the powder be spoiled, they may change it. Now if we were to describe the tenth of what we saw in these stores of balls, guns, powder, and every thing connected with war, the relation would take up fifty years. In fact, such preparations for war, complete and in perfect order,

cannot be imagined by the mind. We were exceedingly interested with this visit, which we shall not forget in all our lives. Praise be to God! What an immense power, has the God of the universe given to these people. In fine, only from looking at these things, we became quite tired, and out of our senses. Afterwards we were invited to a majestic edifice, which is the residence of four general officers, who have the direction of all these affairs. Here we saw most wonderful things which cannot be described. Then we entered our carriage, and returned to our residence.

Tuesday the 6th. About the Asser, while we were sitting at home, we heard a noise beneath our windows; we asked what was the matter; they said, a balloon is just gone up, and is passing by this way, and the people have come in crowds to gaze at it. Two minutes after, we saw the balloon ascending to heaven. It passed by our abode, and we looked at it with a spy-glass, and saw in it two beautiful ladies singing. In the evening, we went to a party at Lady H ——'s, an accomplished and distinguished lady. It was a very delightful assembly.



Wednesday the 4th. Her Royal Highness the Princess Victoria sent us, for a memento, the likenesses of herself and her royal mother, with a request to have some of our poetical composition in our own hand-writing ; which we most readily granted. We each wrote a quatrain verse of four hemistichs. Her Royal Highness was very much pleased with them ; for they were translated to her in English. This day was very rainy, but as we wished to go and see Bedlam, and the agents of that place had been informed before that our visit would take place on this day, we found it necessary to go, as appointed. We entered our carriage, and other friends accompanied us. We went out of town, and came to a large castle, about two miles in circumference, situated on the bank of the river. All its doors and windows are made of iron. We came to the large gate of entrance, which was shut. When the captain of the castle came, and was told that we were the Persian princes, he opened the gate, and we entered the place. It is four stories high, and contains innumerable rooms. There are two departments ; the upper one for the women and girls,

each of whom has a maid-servant ; the lower one for the males, each of whom has likewise a male servant. We were first conducted to the upper department, containing many clean, pleasant rooms, which have delightful views of the gardens around. Every room has a fine bedstead, and is elegantly furnished. Every thing desirable and necessary, and in perfect order. This delightful place, with such accommodations, gives any person an inclination to become insane. The maniacs here are at liberty to go about the place, and converse with each other. Every one of the females here does the same work as when she was sane. They employ them in this manner, that they may not forget what they knew before, and to occupy their time. Some of them were sewing, and others were employed in different arts which we had not seen before. Most of them looked very pale and sickly, on account of their diseases. Some were weeping, others laughing, some singing, and others dancing in an insane manner. We looked at all of them. Whenever any of them does the least thing wrong, she is immediately seized, and shut up in a room. She then begs that the door may be opened for her,

and promises repentance; then she is let out again. Every thing regarding their comfort and happiness is perfectly prepared for them, both in eatables, drinkables, sofas, apparel, &c.

While we were walking about these places, a fine neat looking girl came to us, and asked us who we were. We replied, "The Persian princes." "Is it true?" said she. "Yes," we answered. Then she said, "I shall always be able to tell hereafter a Persian, by the dress such as you wear."

We were informed that this young woman was a celebrated poetess. Afterwards she asked us, "Are you going to stay here, or will you go away?" we replied, "We are not insane, of course we shall go back." She said, "Many foreigners come to visit this place and go back, but they come here in fine weather; but as you have come so great a distance on such a stormy day for such a useless object, I believe you are also belonging to our company, and it will be necessary that you should join us for a few days till you become sane." Her words made us all laugh till we fainted away. Afterwards she took my hand, and invited us to her room. We entered her apartment, where

she showed us some of her needle-work, and repeated some verses of her own poetry. She then said to us, "Notwithstanding you are royal sons and I am the daughter of a peasant, nevertheless, I would not part with my house for your palace, neither would I exchange my insanity for your sanity." She conversed on other things which had nothing to do with her madness. We were told that sometimes she does very strange things. Afterwards she asked us, "Do you fear God as I do?" "Of course," we said. "Have you that divine grace that I have?" We replied, "Yes." Then many tears came to her eyes, and she asked us to leave her apartment, saying, "I am not inclined to converse with you any more, leave my room." When we went out, she shut the door after us. From this place we went from one room to another till we had visited all the upper apartments.

It would be impossible to describe all the strange individuals here, or the wonderful things we saw. The insane females are 275 in number. After this, we were conducted to the lower apartment, occupied by the men, who have their attendants, and every thing necessary, nice and clean. They are also employed in the same manner in their

former business. One of them was a person who twenty years ago, owing to his insanity, had fired a pistol at the king, in order to destroy him. This man is here engaged to take care of and tame birds, which was his former business. Many kinds of curious birds we observed with him in fine cages, that they may lay eggs, which are a source of profit to him. He, though in this condition, taught some parrots to speak English. We observed another person here, who tried to kill a prince. This man having been liberally educated, is a naturalist and astronomer, for which he has great taste, and he is here amongst his books and apparatus, engaged in his former pursuits. Others were engaged in reading the Scriptures, and some, who are raving, had chains on their hands. Others had heavier chains, because (as we were informed) they were in the height of madness. One of them continues incessantly to make a most terrible noise; we were told that he was an Italian, who had been here in this condition for seventeen years, perpetually making this noise. There was also one who, we were informed, is always seeking to destroy himself whenever he is left alone, in con-

sequence of which the attendant never leaves him. Two years ago this madman made a great fire, in which he put his head till his scalp was burnt. When the servants discovered him, they took him away from the fire, and a medical man was immediately brought to him, and his life was preserved. That part of his head was artificially covered. This person, while we were here, performed most singular acts, and we were persuaded that if he were to be left alone, he would immediately put an end to his life. However, we saw many sorts of insane persons, the description of which would lengthen the book. The number of men is 300.

From this we were conducted to the medical department, where there are some physicians appointed on purpose to attend upon the maniacs. They meet twice a week, and direct their food, and examine them. Whenever a person is perfectly cured, he is let out. This establishment is supported by government.

After we had seen every thing in this castle, they conducted us to another, which is built by its side. This is a very large edifice, containing two divisions, one opposite the other. In one of these

we observed some fine-looking young girls, from ten to twenty years of age, each occupied in different labours. In the same manner, in the opposite part, we saw some fine young boys engaged in different arts. We were informed that this edifice was built on purpose for such boys and girls as have been in the habit of stealing, or doing such mischiefs, and do not reform, lest they should grow up without any employment, and become bad people; they are brought here to be reformed, and are taught some art for which they show a taste. They are maintained here, and are never let out, till they become complete masters of the art they are learning. By this means the girls find husbands, and the men wives, and live by their business. In truth it is a most excellent establishment. We verily this day became quite tired of looking at so many things.

Saturday the 24th. Some princes, vizirs, and nobles called upon us. In the evening we accompanied a large number of ladies to the Opera, where we saw the same wonderful plays which we have before described.

Sunday, the 25th. We went to the entertain-



ment of some of the beautiful and accomplished ladies, for whose redemption I would give my soul.

Monday the 26th. We visited Meerza Ibrahim, at the East India Company's college. The said Meerza Ibrahim is an accomplished gentleman, whose noble conduct proves his high education. His father was the late honourable Mullah Noori Mohammed, of Shiraz, with whom we and his son learnt the grammar. He died at the holy tomb of Imaum Reeza, (peace be upon him!) in Khorassan. The Meerza, after the death of his father, came to Teheran; where he spent some time, and afterwards went to Constantinople and other parts, and at last came to England, where he is living now, quite in a different state from his father. The Meerza being a good Persian and Arabic scholar, has obtained an appointment in this college for teaching the two languages to students designed for the East India Company's service. He has, during his stay here, wonderfully learnt a great many of their sciences and laws. He is now translating a book of their best history from the English to the Persian, one-half of which he has already finished:

should he ever complete this work, it will be of very great use to the Persian historians. Now, as we happened to come to this country, he offered us night and day his services, and was never fatigued by the trouble we gave him ; in truth he is a real friend. On this day he invited us to the college, which is a noble institution, and in complete order. There are in it professors of all the high sciences, both of the Mohammedan, and the Frank, and the Greek literature, and of all languages. There may be in this college about 10,000 students. This edifice cost the sum of 400,000 tomâns. Its legacies afford an income of 100,000 tomâns per annum, for the expenses of the college, and maintenance of the students in a comfortable manner. Its rich library contains 50,000 volumes, out of which there are about 3000 of the best Persian and Arabic works. We observed among them four books of the Methnawi\* in his own hand-writing. When we had examined what was to be seen in the college the dinner was served, and afterwards we took a pleasant walk in

\* A celebrated poet of the East, who wrote a book of moral doctrine in a species of metre.

the delightful gardens which are attached to it; on the whole we had a very pleasant visit. In the evening we returned to London.

Tuesday, the 29th. We were invited to Lady K——'s, where we enjoyed the sight of some beautiful, handsome, angelic faces, which caused the assembly to be exceedingly delightful.

Wednesday, the 30th. This morning we were invited by some beautiful houries to accompany them to the Zoological Gardens; and as it was of importance to accept the invitation of the possessors of such charming eyes, we joined their party. In these gardens, we saw a very large rhinoceros, which broke his cage of iron, and made a dreadful noise; many of the attendants followed him, till he became tired, when they seized him, and restored him to his cage. We also beheld many wonderful and strange beasts and birds, which are indescribable. Afterwards we went to the Bazaars, and gazed at the different specimens of English art. Verily every thing that we saw astonished us. How wonderfully they conduct their trade! In a jeweller's shop we saw a lady's belt of brilliant diamonds, which

was ordered by a lady of rank, who paid for its work alone, 8000 tomâns. From this you may imagine the value of the articles in their shops. Afterwards we went to a large and lofty edifice which was built by Government for the public. This place is adorned with many splendid pictures. Every person is allowed to enter gratis. The innumerable and beautiful pictures that we saw here are beyond description. There is also in this place, a picture of Jesus, the son of Mary, (peace be upon him !) with his disciples, healing some diseased and dying persons. By the powerful influence of his Spirit, he granted to them restoration to health and life. These pictures cost 8000 or 10,000 tomâns. It was indeed a very interesting visit. From this place we went to the house of a person whose business is to take care of fleas, and tame them. The relation of what we saw of these fleas at this place, how they are tamed, and taught to act most wonderfully, will undoubtedly be taken only for a lie. No one would ever believe that these little insects could be instructed in such a manner. However, whether it be believed or not, we will write down what we saw of them, for

our own gratification. These fleas are kept in a damp place, where they grow. They are placed in a glass case, which magnifies them exceedingly. There are some apartments in this box where they are quartered. They are broken to draw carriages, just as our horses are taught to draw carriages of cannon. Whatever details we may give of these fleas will appear incredible; however, we are determined to mention what we observed. Four of these fleas drew a carriage of ten drachms weight, in harness, and turned exactly like horses. Two others stood for coachmen, with a whip of hair to drive the rest. On one side of their box, there is a vessel full of water, on which there is a little thing in the form of a ship, with sails, and an anchor in the water, just like a vessel in harbour. About ten or twelve fleas drew the anchor up, others went up the masts and spread the sails, their chief or captain taking the helm; and thus this ship of fleas actually sailed on the water. In another place we observed a wheel and a rope in perfect order. In the box there was a little musical instrument, on which the fleas played; other fleas played on the rope, and some danced.

We observed also a large flea, which was a soothsayer, telling fortunes and future events. This was done as follows :—A plate is figured in lines of different colours, like an astrolabe. Some of these indicate good, and others bad fortunes. There is fixed to it a kind of pointer, attached by a chain to the neck of the flea. The person who wishes to have his fortune told puts his question. The flea will then walk about, and the pointer will move. Whenever it stops, it will inform him whether he has a good or bad fortune. These fleas are fed on human blood twice a day, once early in the morning, and again in the evening. Those that are educated, that is, such as become tame, are well fed, and those that are not tamed, are allowed but little, till they become learned; and then they are sold, and purchased. The master of these fleas has one which he has kept for two years; he would not take a horse for it. In fine, we think we had better stop, as what we saw of the curious and most wonderful acts performed by these fleas, would require much time to describe.

Thursday, the 31st, we went to a celebrated

garden which is generally visited by distinguished personages. It was a beautiful, delightful spot, containing all kinds of elegant flowers. Afterwards we visited a place where there was a large balloon for twelve persons, and having witnessed its ascent, we returned to our mansion. In the evening, we went to visit the honourable and distinguished Lady S——, where we met a very pleasant and delightful assembly.

Friday the 1st, of Giamad the first, three hours before sunset, we visited an edifice in a large garden, situated on the river Thames. In this place young men are taught to ride on horseback, and perform other exercises.

Saturday the 2nd, Sunday the 3rd, and Monday the 4th. In the day-time we visited some places of consequence, and in the evenings we went to entertainments.

Tuesday the 5th, we went out of London to take the air at a town called Richmond, which is an exceedingly delightful place, supplied with pure air and excellent water, and surrounded by beautiful gardens situated on the river Thames. We alighted at an hotel called the Star, which is



pleasantly situated in a very delightful garden, containing all kinds of beautiful flowers. Here we dined, and about sunset we returned to London.

Wednesday, the 6th. I visited that place which represented the snow, and the village in the mountain, which my brothers had before seen: it is, indeed, a very amusing exhibition.

Thursday, the 7th. In the afternoon we paid a visit to Noori Effendi, the ambassador of Sultan Mahmood. He lives in a house pleasantly situated, with pure air and excellent water. We conversed a little time together on different topics, and he presented us with some leban,\* which he had just received from Constantinople: in truth we were quite pleased to fall in with such a treat, and ate of it with a good appetite. Leban is a curious dish to the Franks, as they know nothing about it. After we had spent an hour with Noori Effendi, we went to see the panorama of a celebrated city of Spanish America. This city is called Larissa; they have a picture of it, just like that of London

\* Sour milk.

already mentioned. Verily, according to its representation, it must be a very large and fine city: there are around it some lofty mountains covered with snow, and surrounded by the sea. What a wonderful sight it was!

As to America, which is known in the Turkish language by the name of Yanki Dooniah, or the New World; it is one of the four divisions of the world; but, according to its geometrical dimensions, it is nearly as large as the other three together; or, perhaps, equal to half the globe. The reason of its being called America is as follows:—After Columbus the philosopher had taken possession of the coasts of these dominions, he built some forts, and left some companies of Spanish soldiers, with artillery and ammunition, to guard the country. He also very strongly directed the officers to watch it with very great precaution, and to be exceedingly civil towards the natives: then, with the view of returning to Spain, in order to be in person the announcer of these great and joyful tidings to the king who sent him, he collected all the particulars of this new world, and prepared himself to report to his government all the details.

He then embarked on board his ship for Spain. He was a long time navigating the great sea before he reached the coast of Spain. Now there was an officer named Amerigo belonging to the ship of the philosopher Columbus, who was with him at the time. This officer, on their arrival near the coast, when Columbus had retired to sleep, took a boat, and found his way to the capital, and delivered the tidings ; for which he was satisfactorily rewarded ; and the new world was called after his name America.

The continent of America is divided into two large divisions, North and South. It is ten thousand miles long, and about two thousand in breadth. Its North, on account of the extreme cold, cannot be explored, for it borders upon the dark places, and the Russian confines. From its extreme cold it cannot be visited, and no one knows what there is to be found there, except the natives who may inhabit it. Its three sides are bounded by the great sea, and the Atlantic. The surrounding sea separates America from Asia, and the Atlantic divides it from Europe and Africa. Between the coasts of North and South America there is a

large bay, called the Gulf of Mexico, in which there are several islands, called the West Indies. The reason of their taking that name is as follows: when the wise Columbus of Spain arrived at these islands, he imagined them to be a part of the East Indies, and therefore called them islands of India. But afterwards, when more of America was discovered, and these islands were known to belong to America, the word west was added to them. Nature, as exhibited in America, is grand beyond measure; its mountains extending from the North to the South Pole. One of the ranges bears the name of Rocky, or Stony mountains. Another of them is called the Andes, in which are some of the loftiest mountains in the world; one of them, Chimborazo, being some miles in height. These magnificent mountains cause the immense rivers of America; besides which there are innumerable large and pleasant fountains of spring water. The great rivers are named as follows: Mississippi, Oronoko, Amazon, Rio de la Plata, Delaware, Ohio, Sekousi, Pedi, Santi, Savana, Bonos, Allhala, Bornos, and Missouri. The Missouri is 3090 miles long, and the Mississippi 2000; the river

Andelos is 3000 miles long, and 30 miles wide. In fact, each of these rivers is of an extraordinary size; and, together, cause the most plentiful produce. Besides, in North America there is a lake of 680 miles long, and 160 broad; and several others, which are named as follows: Michigan, Superior, and Ontario. In South America there are also four lakes, Markali, Walakia, Pitikaka, and Kesserac.

All the inhabitants of America are of European origin. Every one of the European powers has a portion of America, which they are always endeavouring to enlarge by colonizing, cultivating, &c. Besides there are several independent kingdoms which originated from Europe. They are now free in their government, and have a parliament, and general councils, and enjoy the most extensive liberty. They have too a large government, which is called the United States. Their cities may nearly be compared to those of London and Paris, and any art invented in Europe will also appear amongst them. Moreover, steam navigation was an invention of their own, and was afterwards introduced into Europe. Their form of government

is as follows: Every four years, they appoint a man to become their king, for that period of time. The following is the reason they assign for this practice. "Our country," say they, "being a liberal and free one, and the property of the inhabitants, every one has a right to govern; this being the case, let every man reign four years, and by this justice all being alike, every one will receive and enjoy his right." Their country is beautifully cultivated, and produces every thing eatable, &c. They have a large navy in the sea. It is, after the English, greater than that of any European kingdom, and perhaps even equal to the English, because there is more liberty there, than in any other part of Europe. This being the case, the people of Europe are constantly wishing to emigrate thither, and whosoever goes there, may take an uncultivated and unappropriated piece of land, and cultivate it to himself, and build a house, &c. which becomes his property, and by this means he makes his fortune. The original natives of America, now that liberty is granted them, and they are no longer slaves, are many of them advancing in civilization. Some of them, however, cannot be

tamed, they inhabit the wild forests and caves in the mountains, living on animals taken in the chase, and clad with their skins. If any stranger should fall into their hands, they will kill him and eat him just like an animal. All sorts of ore are to be found in America, that of gold is particularly plentiful. The whole present population is a hundred millions, inhabiting fine large cities; the panorama of one of which we have just visited, presenting a magnificent and splendid appearance.

After this, we visited another city of Italy, in the same way, through its picture; a description of which, as being an artificial representation, by paints, &c., could never be conceived of by the human mind, but it must be seen in person. Afterwards we went into the Park, to gaze a little at those people who go out in their carriages in the evening, and then returned home.

Thursday evening, we went to the house of Lady S——, where we met several of the nobility and great personages of this kingdom. It was a magnificent assembly, where we also gazed at some wonderful amusements.

Friday the 8th, in the afternoon, we went to



the entertainment of Mrs. L——. She is an honourable, accomplished, and well-known lady.

Saturday the 9th, the King went to prorogue the Parliament, to which we were invited, and had an excellent exhibition of their majestic proceeding in this matter.

On Sunday the 10th, and Monday the 11th, during the day we visited some places of exhibition, and at night we went to entertainments.

Tuesday the 12th, we went to the entertainment of Mrs. V. S——, and in the evening visited the opera, where we saw some wonderful and miraculous representations, which it is impossible to describe.

Wednesday the 13th, we received some news from Government, from which we understood that our departure was near, and would take place the ensuing week. This day we took a ride on horseback in the Park, where ladies and gentlemen go daily.

Thursday the 14th, we visited some beautiful gardens, a few miles from the city. On our way back, we met a crowd of people in a certain place, and asked what was the cause: they replied, that

there were several balloons just about ascending. We then directed the coachman to the above-mentioned place, a very large garden, where we saw a great number of women, men, and children, who had come to see the balloons ascend. A few minutes after, they departed to the sky, and gradually ascended some miles, till every one of them looked as if it were a ball in the atmosphere. They were five in number: one of them was deficient in its construction, so that the light air or gas which was in it, and would otherwise have caused its ascension, went out, and it filled with the heavy air. There were in this balloon a man and a woman, who both fell to the ground from that height. The bones of the man, we observed, were ground like powder, but there was life still left in the woman. She was immediately carried to an hospital, and attended by medical men, through whose learning, and wisdom, and medicine, she was restored. However, such an accident, of course, is rare; but God's protection extends beyond this.

In the evening we went to the entertainment of Mrs. R——. Here we met the beautiful circle

of the family, our hosts. With fine arms of jasmine colour, hair of ambergris odour, eyes of the gazelle, and conversations sweet as sugar-candy. These lovely houries sat around us with their splendid musical instruments, and with sweet and lovely voices revived the heart. Indeed, here we felt the unpleasant feelings of bidding them good-bye. Oh, how unsupportable is the word—farewell! how is it possible that the body can live without the soul? What a melancholy mixture of night! at first full of joy and pleasure, afterwards full of grief and sorrow at leaving this dear assembly. Alas! for the changes of time! woe! at being far from love!

Friday the 15th. We went to the stable of the king's horses. Here we examined all the royal horses, both for carriages and for riding. In truth, they were most distinguished animals. Here also we observed strange horses, which differed a great deal from the rest; they have beautiful necks, two pikes and a half in length, their hoofs are exceedingly large, their manes reach to the ground, and on the whole have a wonderful appearance. Afterwards we gazed at the different royal carriages of

state. In fine, every thing most magnificent is prepared for this king. On our way to our mansion we heard a great noise of dogs barking. I asked the reason, they replied, there is a house where dogs are sold, in fact, a dog-market; here all kinds of this animal may be seen and purchased. In order to see this also, I dismounted and entered the house, where I observed some most curious and strange dogs. Here, also, they are trained; the dealer was offered 350 tomâns for a pair of these dogs, which he refused. I asked the reason of not taking that price, and what could be the superiority of these two dogs, that they should be valued at so much, and what was their use. The proprietor replied, "There is no superiority of science or learning in the dogs, yet when ladies or their daughters take a fancy to a certain one, and desire to purchase it, then that is the value, and my opportunity for demanding as high a price as I choose, because she is determined to have it." Some dogs are sometimes sold for 1000 tomâns.

Saturday the 16th. We went and visited some pleasant gardens and other places.

Sunday the 17th. We went to see the ship

which the King of England was about to send as a present to Seid Saïd, the Imaum of Muscat. Although the Imaum has been a long time an ally of the British government, yet in the year 1252 of the Hegira, Seid Saïd, as a proof of his union of friendship, and his adherence to the British government, and for the sake of increasing these feelings, sent the well-known and most noble ship the *Liverpool*, which was in the Persian gulf, and the sea of Aman, with other valuable articles, as presents, by his friend Captain Cogan, to his Majesty the English Badishah. The King of Great Britain, in his way of kindness, has also presented the Imaum a splendid ship, and Captain Cogan has been ordered to take her to Muscat. As they knew my friendship with the Imaum, they wished us to see this royal gift that was going to him. Government had directed the Captain to invite us to see the ship, and our visit took place to-day. We, with the captain and his lady, went out of London the distance of four miles, to a place on the bank of the river Thames. Here there are some canals most wonderfully constructed for the purpose of building ships of war, where the ship

for the Imaum lay at anchor. Such adorned complete perfection we had never seen before. Although in size she is not large, yet there is no house so pleasantly constructed, nor did we ever see any edifice equal to her in beauty. She cost 160,000 tomâns, and is fifty feet long, and carries ten cannon; you cannot form an idea of the beauty of this fine vessel. Afterwards we went to the entertainment of a captain who has been long in the East Indies. On our way we observed a magnificent edifice in a most delightful situation on the bank of the river, and many ladies and gentlemen walking about, and gazing at it. In the same place we observed a great number of very old men, whose age showed that they were incapable of work. We asked what this place was, and who were those people. They replied, "This edifice is constructed by Government for sailors of the royal navy, who have offered their services during their times of strength. When they arrive at this age, and can serve no longer, they come to this place, where they are comfortably maintained and clothed by Government, and thus they spend the remainder of their lives. When they die they

are buried in the cemetery belonging to the establishment. Their children are also supported and educated at the expense of Government, till they arrive at the age of puberty, after which they are employed in the service of their fathers." After learning this account, we visited the institution, where we observed innumerable drawings of ships of war, and of all their battles, and also of the kings who reigned when they took place, and who had departed from this world while they were engaged in war. Indeed, to describe all that we saw here would over-lengthen this journal. One of the former admirals, who was killed during the war with France, was on deck during the whole of the battle, and received a ball, which caused his death while firm and active. This admiral having been so courageous on this occasion, they took the coat bedaubed with blood, which he had on, and have ever since preserved it most honourably and respectfully in a box of glass. In truth we were tired with only admiring what there is here to be seen. Afterwards we went to the house of the captain, which is pleasantly situated on the river Thames, and dined, and passed a very pleasant day.



Monday, we went to Dr. Money's, in order to acquire some information concerning the disease of the small-pox, and from him we learnt the way of preventing its dangerous consequences.

On Friday, the 19th, as our departure was to take place on the following day, we went to the Foreign Office, to bid Lord Palmerston farewell. The Foreign Office is a very large edifice, containing many rooms. This is the department where the vizir for foreign affairs transacts his business. He attends here daily, from one o'clock until sunset. In the same manner all the other vizirs have different apartments. In this department there is a separate office for the vizir himself, and several sitting-rooms for such persons as visit him. These rooms are also of three orders, first, second, and third; the higher class of people who come to see him are shown into the best room, and so the second and third. He receives one after the other: when the person is called in to him he relates his business, and when he has done he rings the bell that another person may be shown in, &c. In fact, as long as a minister remains in office, he is perpetually

visited, and, moreover, has to direct all despatches and orders to all the different parts of the world. However we, on this day, saw him, and all our business was settled according to our requests; we then bade him good bye. In truth, he was exceedingly friendly. In the evening we went to the entertainment of Captain Grindlay. His house is most pleasantly situated in a delightful garden, having pure water, with excellent air. Here we met a noble company of ladies and gentlemen, and some musicians. After dinner, some part of the night was spent in music and singing by beautiful ladies, and afterwards we returned to our mansion.

Wednesday the 24th. Taymoor Meerza was accidentally taken ill with a fever, which prevented our departure. But two of our servants this day, with some of the heavy baggage, went by sea, to proceed on their journey by the route of Damascus, as the heavy luggage could not be carried by land to Constantinople.

Wednesday evening we were invited by Captain Cogan to the ship for the Imaum. The captain gave this evening a splendid ball on board. We

saw many beautiful ladies dancing; in truth, we spent a very pleasant part of the night, and returned home.

Thursday, the 21st. We were not able to leave on account of Taymoor Meerza's indisposition, and, by Dr. Money's advice, our departure was postponed until Saturday.

Friday, the 22nd, was spent in the hotel, on account of Taymoor Meerza.

Saturday, the 23rd of Jamad the first, or September the 3rd, early in the morning, Fraser Sâheb called upon us, saying that every thing requested from Government on our behalf was settled, and that nothing was now wanting; that he was ordered by Government to accompany us as mihmandar to Constantinople, and there to arrange every thing respecting our further journey comfortably; and also that he was ready to offer us any possible service in his power for our pleasure, and that carriages, &c., for starting were quite prepared. On this day, about noon, we bade our friends, who came to see us, good bye, and left London. We were nearly four months in London, spending every other day in a

garden, and every second in an exhibition; not a day or a night passed without our receiving some invitation, and it was impossible for us to accept all that were proposed, so that such places as we were more anxiously invited to, and to which we desired to go, were fixed a month previous to our being able to accomplish the engagement. In fine, we cannot even describe an item of the friendship and hospitality which we received from the people of this kingdom, from the king to the poorest, from the highest to the lowest, from both old and young. During the short time of our stay here, we formed such acquaintance and friendship amongst them, that it caused all of us very insupportable pain to leave each other. Verily we can never forget these friends. All the time of our stay at Mivart's, which is the best hotel, we were the King's guests; indeed the kindness and friendship that he ordered towards us has imposed upon us an obligation for ever. If a man wishes to travel and examine this kingdom, and desires to know much about it; in short, if he should be a philosopher, and should every day and hour visit new arts and exhibi-

tions, &c., were he to remain here a hundred years, he would be unable to see the tenth part. But I have done according to the saying, "If it cannot all be comprehended, it must not all be neglected." In this short time I have written what I have seen and can recollect; it will be taken into consideration that I do not understand their language. May the end be happy!

Saturday the 23rd of Jamad the first, or September 3rd, 1836, an hour before noon, we started from London; and after travelling forty-one miles, towards sunset we arrived at a town called Sittingbourne. We alighted at an hotel, where every thing imaginable, both as to eatables and drinkables, was comfortably furnished for the convenience of travellers. We spent the night here most delightfully.

Sunday the 24th. After breakfast, about two hours before noon, we left this place, and travelled all the way until we arrived at a place called Canterbury. It is a beautiful city, surrounded with delightful gardens. Although it was now the season of autumn, nevertheless the ground was as green as emerald, adorned with

natural flowers. At this place we rested a little, changed horses, and set off; and after travelling thirty-two miles, arrived at Dover the same day, where we alighted at a large hotel, called the Ship Inn. Dover is a sea-port town on the English coast, situated in the channel which separates England from the main land of France. This channel is twenty-three miles across, and by means of several steam vessels communication is held four times a day between this and the opposite coast of France, which may be seen by the eye. Besides, we observed in this harbour a good number of mercantile vessels. About sunset the colonel of the place called upon us, manifesting his friendship, and it was arranged that on the following morning we should embark on board the royal packet for the opposite coast of France. During the whole of this night a dreadful hurricane took place, and continued until the afternoon; but it having calmed a little, we embarked at four o'clock, and in two hours and a half crossed the channel, and landed at Calais. Here we went to an hotel, called Dessein's, which is furnished in the same manner as those of England, and on

Tuesday, the 26th, we left. In all our way we passed by and through respectable cities and strong fortifications. The ground was as green as emerald, with fine trees in great number, and every place was thickly populated. Here we observed the curious sheep of this country, which have a tail like that of a bullock; the swine have very long tails. We travelled the whole of the day, every second, meeting with habitations and new people, until at sunset, after travelling twenty-five miles, we reached a place called St. Omer's, which is a town of France. Here we alighted at a very lofty hotel where we spent the night.

Wednesday the 27th, we left the above place, and passed through a large city called Bailleul, and from this we came to another, called Lisle; here we stopped four hours. A great number of people came around the hotel, simply to gaze at our physiognomy, and our costume. We in the mean time, had also a view of them. This city is the border of France in our direction. As to France, it is one of the celebrated kingdoms of Europe. Although in regard to size and popu-



lation, it exceeds England, yet it has not the perfect order of that country. Paris is its capital, which is one of the seven magnificent cities of the world. Its climate is better than that of England. It is bounded on the east by the Netherlands, Switzerland, and Piedmont; westward and northward, by Spain, and the West Sea. It is 650 miles long, and 560 broad. France possesses also some dominions in America and Algiers. There is here more liberty than in England, but their form of government and political order is nearly the same as that of London, as to parliament, and their council of commons. The present King of France is named Louis Philippe. France contains 35,000,000 of population, which is equal to seventy kerrors of Persia. The standing army which is under order in this kingdom, amounts to 600,000; they have likewise a very large navy. The French during the reign of Buonaparte possessed the greatest part of the European kingdoms. The generality of the people believe in transmigration. Their language is different from that of other Franks. Corn and fruits are cheaper than in England, and its produce is more abundant than

that country. Their flag consists of three perpendicular colours, blue, white, and red. The French is the most spoken, and common in Europe. Every kingdom of Europe has a different language, but that of the French is the general one. The kings correspond with each other in this language. One of the most interesting regulations of the French government is this; when merchants export any goods from the country, instead of paying duty or tax, they receive from the treasury a grant of ten per cent. on all goods manufactured or produced in the kingdom. This is a wise encouragement to trade; and merchants, on this account, are led to purchase the merchandise of this country, seeing that they receive one tenth of what they pay from government; whereas, in other kingdoms they have to pay duty.

After resting a few hours at Lisle, we left, and entered the Belgian territory, and arrived at a beautiful city, called Enghien. Here, in order to change horses, we alighted at an hotel, where about 3000 persons crowded to see us. They came in such multitudes, as led us to infer that they had never

before seen any such beings as ourselves. They brought ladders to get up and look at us, while some climbed upon one another to get a sight. In fact, it was to them a new amusement; and to us, their crowding together caused a curious spectacle. After changing horses, we left, and travelled by habitations, and through the shade of beautiful trees and gardens, until after having made a distance of sixty miles, we arrived at another city, where we alighted at a lofty hotel.

Thursday the 28th, we departed, and travelled twenty-five miles through habitations and gardens, and arrived at Brussels the capital of Belgium. What a wonderful, magnificent city! of lofty edifices, the appearance of which displayed its grace and riches. Here on account of some accident befalling our carriage, and for the sake of seeing this city we alighted at a large hotel, to spend the day and night.

Soon after our arrival, Taymoor Meerza went out to visit what might be seen. He came to a place where there was a very large church, built 800 years ago. This day being the commemora-

tion of a feast with the Christians, all the Armenians\* of different parts, beautifully dressed, crowded to this church, and engaged in offering up their prayers. The sound of the bells of this church reached to some miles distant. It is beyond the power of writing to describe the construction of this church. It contains a figure of one of the former kings, studded with precious stones, and with a crown of jewels. This king was buried here 400 years ago. Having been a generous person, he is visited by them as a saint, to receive his blessings. They have also in this church a statue of Christ, (peace be to him!) made of solid pure gold, together with another of silver of the Virgin Mary, &c. These weak-minded people have a picture of the Lord the Omnipotent, having a long beard, with a rose in his hand, and looking at Jesus. This picture is so beautifully drawn that nothing can exceed it. They adore

\* The Armenians are considered by the Persians to be the nobles of the Christians. I believe that they enjoy this name nominally, (see H. Martyn's residence in Shiraz) because they are under Mohammedan Government; they would not be called so, if they were independent. Armenians and Nestorians are the only Christian sects in Persia.

these three images as their Gods.\* In another part of the church, there is a picture of Paradise, and Gabriel with sword in his hand driving out Adam and Eve. They are represented as running away from the face of the angel who pursued them. In truth, it was most wonderfully executed.

Outside of this church there is a very large fine square, where 4000 men, natives of this place, were buried in one day, having been killed in battle. The fact was as follows: a few years ago, there arose a misunderstanding between the people. The two parties rushed upon the royal arsenal, half of which fell into the hands of one party, and the remainder was possessed by the other. A battle immediately took place between

\* Mohammedans cannot but be disgusted at Popery, for surely it is a disgrace to the Christian name. Would God that other sights had been presented to these Princes, so that they might have known the difference between true and nominal Christians. It was exceedingly painful to me, when the Prince Wali began to argue with me on these sights, at the very time when I was reading and explaining to him the beauty of Christianity, as he and his brothers permitted me to speak freely, and thus I had the honour of speaking to them the name of the Prince of Glory, the Lord Jesus Christ.

them, and upon the first assault these 4000 men were killed. After this, four pieces of cannon fell from their carriages, the war was terminated, and the two parties made peace. Taymoor Meerza made a careful examination of this place. Two hours before sunset, Sir Hamilton Seymour, the English ambassador at this capital, called upon us, and manifested his exceeding friendship and politeness.

In the evening we visited the place of pleasure, which is the opera. It is of the same construction as that of London, where plays, music, dancing, &c. were performed.

Friday the 29th, we remained at this place until noon, as our carriage could not be made ready sooner, and after lunch we departed.

Belgium was under the King of Holland until a few years back. It is bounded on the east by Hanover and the river Rhine, on the north and west by the North Sea, and southward by France. A few years ago the people of Belgium strove for liberty, and revolted against the King of Holland. The Prince of Orange, who is the son of the King of Holland, and whom we met in England,

had marched against them with his army, in order to suppress them, but he was unhappily obliged to retreat. A second time he marched, with a strong, numerous, and disciplined army. The Belgians, now feeling themselves incapable of withstanding the force of the royal Prince, supplicated France for protection; and in the meanwhile surrendered to the Prince. France, taking side with the cause of liberty, directed a renowned general, with 40,000 soldiers and artillery, to drive out the Prince of Orange from Belgium, and to render the people and the country independent. When the General arrived with the army, the Prince of Orange, not being capable of coping in war with France, left the country, and returned to his kingdom. Thus Belgium became independent, and invited a prince of Germany to become the King. When this was done, the King was crowned, and acknowledged by the different powers of Europe as independent. This, their first king, is named Leopold, and on his coins is stamped this motto, "Union forms liberty and salvation." In short, the people of this country at present are enjoying all the pleasures of liberty



and tranquillity. The whole population is 2,000,000. Corn and fruit are more plentiful here than in England or France.

The city of Brussels, on account of its beauty and architecture, is called "little Paris." One of the celebrated edifices of the world is the palace of the Prince of Orange, in this city. Before leaving this place, we visited this superb and majestic palace. In truth, we were exceedingly amazed at the display and the taste therein exhibited.

When this country was in the possession of the King of Holland, he gave its government to his son, the Prince of Orange, who is married to the daughter of the Emperor of Russia. The Prince, on account of the beautiful situation of this city, the pure air, and excellent water, built this palace here. It is surrounded with most delightful large gardens of all kinds of trees and flowers. The building cost one million of francs, which is equal to four kerrors of our money. The magnificence of the precious articles which we observed in this palace are entirely beyond description. All round the outside of the palace there is a balustrade

of gilt iron bars three pikes long, and all its walls are built of beautiful marble, and are 100 feet high. The furniture is of mosaic work, made of sandal wood and mahogany. There were also velvet shoes on purpose for entering the palace, so that whosoever came thither on a visit found at the entrance a pair ready for him. No idea can be formed of the valuable and sumptuous furniture of this palace. There are twelve large candlesticks of solid gold, with twelve branching lights, each of which cost 1000 tomâns. The walls, are constructed of marble of different colours, and between each stone is a line of gold. The interior walls are all covered with rich velvet, each room with a different colour. The chairs about the different parts of the palace are of gold and silver. The statues, portraits, likenesses, and figures which are to be seen here are unequalled, and take away the senses. One picture of a young lady cost the royal prince twelve thousand tomâns. We observed in one of the rooms a splendid specimen of a valuable stone, standing on a mineral pillar, the whole highly wrought like glass, which was sent by Alexander, Emperor of Russia, to the

Princess of Orange. In truth, it is a beautiful and rare present. We saw also another vase of a mineral substance, of a beautiful emerald colour: this specimen was purchased by the prince for 100,000 tomâns, and many other such splendid articles attracted our admiration, of which we can give no sort of description. One of them cost 200,000 tomâns. Besides all this, there are numerous and most superb and unrivalled pillars. In fact, such a splendid edifice for the residence of man does not exist in any other place under the sun. However, when this palace was finished, the people here, as before mentioned, desired their liberty, revolted against the Prince, and by the assistance of the French, obtained their independence, and the Prince was driven out of the country without enjoying the pleasure of his heavenly palace, and with a hundred thousand feelings of remorse relinquished it, and returned to the kingdom of his father. But as this palace was built by the private money of the Prince, the present King of Belgium cannot obtain a residence in it, it being the private property of the Prince of Orange. He therefore asked the Prince to sell it, but he would not

consent on any account, for even, said he, "should it go into decay, I will not sell one stone of it." It cost him altogether sixteen kerroors of Persian money, and he now, as usual, keeps some of his servants there, to wait upon and take care of it. Many people come from nigh and far countries to visit this palace, and indeed all feel sorry that the Prince is not enjoying a residence in it. At present it looks as new, and in as perfect order as ever. In fine, after we had made careful examination of it, we left Brussels.

As soon as we left this place, we entered a forest seven miles square, covered with fine large trees which afford masts for ships. It is a beautiful and pleasant place throughout the seven miles, the sun is hid from you by the beautiful shade of those innumerable trees. God only knows their number and value.

After we passed this forest we came to a place called Orey. This is a fine city of Belgium, and the natives are very handsome. Here we observed a very large edifice, which was built by the natives as a memorial of their honour. We had now travelled thirty-two miles, and about

sunset arrived at a city called Tirlemont. We did not make more progress, because we did not start until noon.

Saturday the 1st of Giamad the second, we left this place, and continued our journey, passing by habitations and gardens, until we arrived at a place called St. Trond. Here we observed an extraordinary concourse of people, changed horses, and travelled until noon, when we arrived at a large city called Liege. This is the last place belonging to Belgium in this direction. It is a very pleasant town, the men of which must be drunk with the pleasure of the countenances of the captivators of hearts.\* In this place a noble river runs through the place, which is navigable for vessels, a number of which were sailing on it. The city is long. Here we alighted at an hotel, where about 20,000 souls crowded together to gaze at us. They were astonished at our appearance and costumes; it was to them quite a wonderful sight. We now rested a little, changed horses, and left. About sunset we came to the borders of Prussia. The

\* Ladies.

officers who guard the frontier here, after seeing our passports, permitted us to pass; and at three o'clock at night we arrived at Aix-la-Chapelle, a city of Prussia. This day we travelled fifty-five miles.

Aix-la-Chapelle is one of the celebrated cities of Prussia: on account of its crowded population and numerous visitors, we applied this night, at different hotels, in vain for a lodging; however, at last, in some way or other, we succeeded.

On Sunday morning, the 2nd, we departed; after travelling a few miles, we passed through a very well fortified city of Prussia, Juliers; around which there is a good ditch, through which runs a river surrounding the town.

We afterwards arrived at another fine city, called Cologne; here we found new customs and costumes, and alighted at an hotel to breakfast. Their way of eating here is different. The master of the hotel, at a certain hour, has a table prepared with all kinds of dressed and undressed victuals. More than five hundred souls from this city, nobles, merchants, travellers, and foreigners, at the fixed hour, come to the hotel, sit down at the

table, and take their dinner, which consists of every thing desirable. While they eat, there is music playing, and the whole company remain two hours at dinner, men and women sitting down together, and enjoying the society of each other. After this, every person pays the charge fixed, and goes about his business. In short, we also to-day sat down with them, to take our dinner, and to enjoy the sight of their affable manners in company. This custom prevails all over Prussia and Germany. The same is repeated every day, and yields the hotel keeper a large income. After an hour's time we left this place, and in proceeding a few miles, arrived at a noble and magnificent river, called the Rhine, whose source is between France and Italy; it runs through Prussia and Holland, and empties itself in the North Sea. Its water is like that of the Tigris of Bagdad in promoting digestion. It is navigable for ships, a great number of which are constantly sailing upon it. The Rhine is 900 miles in length, along which there is not a span of uncultivated land that is not shaded with fine lofty palaces and strong castles. The gardens and orchards on both banks are innumerable. Such a



pleasant and delightful place is scarcely to be met with in the world. Its water is the best in Europe. Its air is delicious, and the land about it is perfect emerald. We enjoyed the odour of its roses and flowers all the day, until at sunset we arrived at a city called Bonn, where we alighted at a large lofty hotel. Here we saw a new thing, which is this ; instead of chimneys in their houses, they have in every room an iron stove, to which is attached a pipe, which is carried through the roof, where the smoke goes out. In this pipe there are some holes, like those in an urn. Whenever they wish to heat the place, they make a little fire in the stove, and in five minutes the room will be as hot as you may wish, and however severe the cold may be, by this means they will never feel it. In fact, it becomes like a warm bath, and the beauty of it is that it does not produce any smoke whatever in the room. Here we spent the night, after having travelled this day sixty-two miles.

Monday, the 3rd, we left this place, journeying along the river Rhine, and passing by beautiful fields, and delightful gardens of lovely flowers and

delicious fruits. To-day we entered between two very high mountains, opposite each other, through which the Rhine flows. These mountains are covered with beautiful trees, and are finely cultivated. The apples that we saw here on the trees were finer than we had ever tasted before. There were grapes in abundance. The carriage road along the mountain is most wonderfully cut out of the solid rock. In short, in the autumn season, the ground here is as beautiful as that of Radwon.\* The fine air, and the beautiful roses of this place, are not to be met with elsewhere. We travelled on, continually passing by habitations and large cities, until we came to the top of a hill, from whence we saw a large city at a distance, on the bank of the Rhine, with a fine large plain, which was covered with troops. Nothing was to be seen but the glittering of swords, the smoke of artillery, the clashing of cavalry, and multitudes of people coming from every direction to see this sea, with its military waves. We asked who these multitudes of people were, and of whom this large, disciplined army consisted. They replied, that the

\* The place in Paradise for the heavenly ladies, or houries.

laws and regulations of the Prussian government were, that all the people of this kingdom, from the king's son to the poorest, from the merchant to the meanest peasant, both learned, great and small, that every one as soon as he reached the age of puberty, must enter the army, and be drilled as a regular soldier for three years, &c. At the end of this time, he may go home to his business. In every city and town there are many barracks for soldiers, with their military uniforms and arms ready provided for them, and servants to take care of them. Thus, when an enemy attempts or invades this kingdom, if the royal sturup\* under pay should not be able to drive out a powerful enemy, all, both great and small, will clothe themselves in their military dress, and go forth as warriors against the enemy. In order that they may not forget their military discipline, and that they may be always ready to engage in battle, three days in a year the population of each province dress in their military uni-

\* Sturup of a king, is a Persian, Arabic, and Turkish idiom for a standing army of a king; called sturup, because the men always stand erect when the king rides.

forms, with their arms, and go out for exercise in a certain place. This day happened to be the appointed time for their drill. The troops of this city of Coblentz, to the number of about 40,000 cavalry and infantry, headed by four royal princes of Prussia, were here met together; in fact it was a very fortunate day which brought us this occurrence, for which we were exceedingly happy, as it afforded us an interesting sight. There were about 40,000 cavalry, infantry, and artillery, all in perfect order; but the cavalry was very superior, with very fine horses. Indeed the Prussian cavalry is celebrated all over Europe. They are armed with a lance, bearing a white flag, a pair of pistols, a sword, and the infantry with a musket and a sword only. We had a very interesting view of them, and, moreover, we had an opportunity of seeing people who came to see this from different parts of the kingdom. We afterwards went into the city of Coblentz to take breakfast. We approached to alight at an hotel, but it was so full that we could not be accommodated in it. A nobleman, however, of this city, on hearing who we were, invited us into his

house ; we accepted his invitation, and alighted at his residence. He offered us all sorts of refreshments, in some rooms which were finely furnished ; we rested here two hours, and proceeded on our way. Again we travelled along the river Rhine, passing by habitations and through fine cities, until at sunset, after travelling sixty-two miles, we arrived at a small town called St. Goar, where we alighted at an hotel, and passed the rest of the night.

On Tuesday, the 4th, we departed, and, like the preceding day, passed along the river, gazing at some large strong forts which are situated on the mountains, on both sides of this river, sea-like, until we came to a city called Mayence, which terminates the Prussian territory.

Prussia is one of the celebrated kingdoms of Europe. Berlin, its most noble city, is its capital. The climate is better than that of England or France, and living is cheaper than in any other part of Europe. The amber mineral is found here, from whence it is exported to all quarters of the world. Here there are more students in science and literature, and knowledge is more

cultivated than in other countries. Their oculists are celebrated all over the world. Their cavalry is the best in Europe. The name of their present king is Frederick, whose standing army under pay consists of 120,000; and, as already mentioned, during the time of war, if necessity calls for it, he will have all his people under arms, for troops. He has a council, and ministers to advise him in the government, like other nations of Europe, but there is no parliament or popular assembly. The whole population is 12,000,000, which is equal to twenty-four kerroors of Persia. The royal coat of arms is a black eagle holding a sword in one hand, and in another a dagger.

After this, we entered Mayence. This is a very fine and ancient city, with well constructed buildings. The Rhine, which runs through it, is 750 pikes broad, over which they have constructed a wonderful bridge, sufficient for four carriages to traverse abreast. This city, with its dependencies, belongs to the three kings of Austria, Prussia, and the independent prince, the Duke of Darmstadt. The three powers keep separate garrisons here, and also agents, who consult each other concerning

the management and the direction of the political affairs of the place. It is now under the government of the Prince Duke ; yet on account of its perfect fortifications, should it become the possession of a foreign king, it might very much injure the kingdoms of Prussia and Austria, for which reason, the said two powers send troops here, in order to defend it. After we had entered it, we departed, and travelled the whole day a distance of sixty-two miles, until we arrived at Frankfort.

This place is the bride of the cities of Europe ; on account of the figures, (ladies) the superiority of their handsome countenances, and symmetrical faces, this city has obtained the first rank in Europe. Its streets and quarters are very clean and large, like those of London, with lofty edifices. The river Maine, which flows into the Rhine, runs by this city. The natives here, with those seven other towns belonging to it, are quite free and independent, and have no king. The whole population of Frankfort is 120,000 souls.

The kings of Europe acknowledge their independence ; and, moreover, they take a very great interest in their welfare, and send ambassadors to



reside in it. Their form of government is like a parliament, that is, forty-two of the most learned men of respectability direct the government. These members are composed of three classes, nobles, merchants, and representatives of the public in general. They meet, and by their consultations, give directions to all their affairs, both civil and political. They appoint a person to reign for one year; this their law is acknowledged in Europe. We took up our residence here at a noble hotel, and at about three o'clock in the afternoon we went to a very fine bath near the river, which we enjoyed very much, and passed a very pleasant night.

Wednesday, the 5th. News arrived here that the royal Duke Miguel, brother to the Emperor of Russia, was on his way here on a visit to his sister in Holland, and other parts of Europe, and that he was expected to-day. While we were preparing to start, Mr. Koch, His Britannic Majesty's Consul here, called upon us on the part of his minister, saying that the ambassador had just heard of our arrival, (for we came late,) and begged that we would spend the day here, as the royal

princess, sister to the King of England, who is now in this city, would be glad to see us; that, in the mean time, we might visit the different exhibitions, and in the evening meet Her Royal Highness; he therefore begged that we would be pleased to have our feet moved into his house this evening.\* We therefore postponed our departure until the next day. On inquiring of the consul what there was to be seen in this city, he said, "If you are inclined to visit what exhibitions there are to be seen, allow me to have the honour of offering my services in conducting you." We immediately entered the carriage, and, with the consul, went to a garden of very delightful and pleasant appearance. In this garden there are some beautifully built edifices, inside of which there are splendid statues of marble, one of which is of a young female riding on a lion. The mind can only be amazed at this most beautiful and unequalled statue; indeed it is so exquisitely wrought that one might say, it speaks. This statue cost 4000 tomâns.

After we had an exhibition of these figures, we

\* This is the mode of expression when a royal Prince is invited to honour some friend with a visit.

were conducted to another edifice of several stories. In the first story, which consists of many rooms, there were stuffed skins of all kinds of land and sea animals, which have been heard of or mentioned in histories, or that can be imagined, all so cleverly stuffed that it could not be distinguished whether they were alive or not. These are brought from all parts of the world, and placed here under glass. We observed more than a hundred thousand different kinds, and were we to mention every one, it would occupy many volumes. All that we saw in the Zoological Gardens of London, we beheld here; besides many animals some thousand years old, the skin of which was stuffed with cotton; the sight alone of which would take the senses away. One of them, the hippopotamus, is in the form of an elephant or rhinoceros, which was found in the Nile during the time of Pharaoh. Its teeth are of ivory, two pikes long. Indeed it was a wonderful object to behold. One of the sea animals that we remarked here was a fish, from the head to the waist exactly resembling a female of the human species, with a breast; and the lower part resembling a fish. This animal was brought from the north pole, the sea of the New World.

We observed here another animal like a monkey, but having feet several pikes long, which was brought from the islands of the north pole. We also saw here a sea animal which was brought from the extreme parts of the Russian sea near the north pole, several times larger than an elephant, with yellow eyes and ivory teeth of three pikes long. Birds of all species, both large and small, some from Abyssinia, having two heads and one beak, and others with two beaks and one head. Some again with numerous feet, of an extraordinary form; and others most curious, and innumerable kinds. In fact, it would be too tedious to describe them all. After we had gazed at these birds and animals, we were conducted to another story, where we beheld skeletons and anatomised bodies, presenting such a sight as cannot be described. In another story we observed a number of preserved human bodies, (mummies,) of persons who had lived three or four thousand years ago in Greece and Egypt. These were placed under glass covers, having their bones not at all dislocated, some of them are in sarcophagi in the shape of a human figure. In short, this

day we became quite tired with looking at so many things, and returned to our lodging. Afterwards Mr. Cartwright, the British Ambassador, called, and gave us an invitation to his house, which we accepted. In the evening after sunset we went and met with a noble and adorned assembly, consisting of a party of nobles and foreign ambassadors, and ladies of superior beauty, each of whom had a full moon in her face. At the head of the assembly was sitting on a golden chair, the sister of the English Badishah, who is named the Landgravine Hesse Homberg, with four noblemen playing at cards. When I entered the company, the royal princess rose, and received us with great politeness, honour, and friendship. We also paid this queen all that was respectfully due on our part. After the regular compliments were past between us, she continued playing at cards, and we sat on one side. The Russian ambassador came near to us, and, after complimenting us, said, that the brother of the Emperor of Russia, Duke Miguel, was every minute expected, and that he would be very happy to see us. We replied that we should be very happy to see him, if an

opportunity should present itself. After the Russian minister had finished his conversation all the other ambassadors of foreign powers came one after another to compliment us, and to manifest their friendship. After we had formed their acquaintance, their ladies came, and each offered us her polite and friendly compliments. Afterwards these ladies, with full moon-like faces, made a beautiful circle around us. Every one had a distinct language, they being of different nations. Khoojah Assaad, our principal interpreter, who is of Hellenic origin, and a well qualified scholar, considering his youth, being well versed in all languages, and well informed in all European manners and customs, translated for us and for the beautiful ladies like a nightingale. In fact, he called forth the praises of all, for they were astonished how he could so fluently speak these different languages. We conversed here on many topics, and it was indeed a very pleasant and noble party. The assembly was composed of the French, Prussian, Russian, Austrian, Dutch, Bavarian, Saxon, Sardinian, Swedish, and Italian ministers. After spending a part of the night, we pre-

sented ourselves to the king's sister, bade her and all our friends farewell, and returned to our residence.

Thursday the 6th, Taymoor Meerza felt a little unwell. In the morning the English ambassador came and bade us farewell. At two o'clock in the afternoon we started, and after travelling a few miles, passed the Frankfort border. Here the officers of the Bavarian confines looked at our passports, and we then entered the territory.

After travelling twenty-five miles, we arrived at a city called Aschaffenburg, which is a fine town, with a delicious country. Here we alighted at an hotel, and spent the rest of the night.

Friday the 27th, we left this, travelling all the way over mountains and hills, thickly covered with trees, which cannot be crossed but by the roads which are made on purpose for carriages, (for in this country both the planted and wild trees are innumerable). In short, this day, after travelling fifty miles, we arrived at a large city called Würtzburg. Through this city runs a noble river, on which there are many vessels sailing up and down. There is a very fine bridge of



stones over it, on which there are cut some very fine figures of their priests, to whom this city once belonged.

Here we alighted at an hotel, and on Saturday the 8th, on account of our carriage having got out of order, our departure was delayed till the afternoon, and as it became late, we postponed our movements till the next day.

On asking what there was to be seen here, they said, that during the time the priests governed and had possession in Europe, one of them built a palace here for himself, which edifice is not to be equalled by any other in the world, and that the architects of the age cannot form one like it. After learning this account, we entered the carriage, in order to visit this splendid and strong palace. In truth, it is worthy to be seen, and there is a pleasure in visiting it. In short, what we had already seen in edifices of Europe, in pictures and statues, we here found much finer and more abundant. In one direction of this edifice there is a fine large court, and at the other a large beautiful garden, which had truly the aspect of the garden of Paradise, and of the meadow of

Radwan. The edifice is 12,000 feet long, and 800 broad. We entered this wonderful palace, the court and pillars of which are of fine marble, with splendidly arrayed statues of human figures of the same material, which appear as if they possessed minds, tongues, and motion. On the ceiling we observed a picture, or map, of the four divisions of the world, so beautifully drawn, that they cost several thousand tomâns each quarter,—Asia, Africa, Europe, and America, with the beings and animals which inhabit them.

After we had gazed at this entrance, we visited the upper part of the structure, and here the tongue becomes weak and incapable of recording. The least part of this palace must have cost some thousands of pounds. One of the rooms we observed, whose walls were overlaid with gold, on which were painted all kinds of birds and strange animals, of so many different species and colours, that the eye never expected to see so much.

In another room, we examined a fine wheel of iron, fixed on the floor, with pillars, and props to support it, in the shape of a cross;

to each of these props there is fixed an artificial horse, with saddle and bridle, &c., all made of marble, and by touching some of the machines of the wheel, the four horses will walk by themselves: it was, indeed, a very fine sight.

In one part of this palace there is a church, which was built 2000 years ago; such beautiful marble pillars of a serpentine shape as are in this church, do not exist in any other part of the world. There are in it many figures of Jesus, (peace be upon him!) made of gold, silver, and stone of different colours. In short, we cannot mention all that we beheld and enjoyed to-day. We afterwards took a ride, and returned to our lodging.

There is another edifice in this city, which is a very large fortified castle, situated on the top of a hill, which commands the city. This was built during the times of the bishops, who endeavoured to fortify their dominions against all accidents. In fine, we had not time to see more here.

Sunday morning, the 9th, we started, and travelled until two hours after sunset, a distance of seventy

miles, constantly passing by respectable habitations, until we arrived at a city called Nuremberg. This is a very populous city, having fine buildings; here we could scarcely find a lodging, all the hotels being full, as near this place there is a rail-road, which causes these frequent visits. However, we spent the night here; and on the following morning, Monday the 10th, travelled seventy miles, and reached a village, where we spent the night.

Tuesday the 11th, we continued our journey, and, after travelling fifteen miles, came to a city called Ratisbon, where we breakfasted. Here the Danube, which is as large as the Nile, passes by the town, and divides itself into many streams, which run through this town, which is one of the large cities of the Bavarian dominions. The river, however, at the end of the town re-unites, over which there is a fine bridge. The gardens, on both sides, present a most delightful appearance, with excellent air and water. The source of the Danube is near the Rhine. It runs from the high mountains of Switzerland, between France and Italy. This noble river passes through the Ba-

varian, Austrian, and Russian territories, and at last empties itself into the Black Sea. It is 1050 miles long, and its water promotes digestion. This river, below Vienna, the capital of Austria, which it skirts, is frequently frozen four months in the year, and in this state many carriages traverse it, laden, as far as the Black Sea. However, after we took our breakfast here we departed, and continued travelling, and by sunset had made forty-two miles. We now arrived at a city called Straubing, where we alighted at an hotel.

Wednesday the 12th. We left this place, and about noon arrived at a city called Vilshofen, where we alighted at an hotel. As soon as the people of the city heard of our arrival, they crowded about the hotel, both old and young, upwards of 30,000 souls; some stood in the windows, others at the door, in order to have a sight of the exhibition which we made. At this hotel they put on the table some fine grapes, of which we ate a little. Assaad Alla Khan having taken with him into the carriage some bunches of these grapes as we were in a hurry to start, and he had no time to eat, had put them into a piece

of paper, and placed them within the lining of the upper part of the carriage. When going out of the hotel, and upon entering the carriage, in the presence of the multitudes and crowds of these people, my honourable brother Wali wished to take another cap of his which he had deposited in the lining where Assaad Alla had put his grapes. Brother Wali, not aware of the latter circumstance, snatched the cap, and accidentally the grapes fell down before the people. The crowds understood the matter as follows: that my brother Wali had treasured up the grapes in his cap, which caused them to raise such a noise and laughter as made us feel exceedingly ashamed. We therefore desired the coachman to drive as fast as he could, in order to get out of town as soon as possible. Thank God, they did not know who we were, and whither we were going. This accident was the cause of our spending the day in laughing. After travelling a few miles, we came to a large river called the Inn, which unites with the Danube. There is a bridge over this river, half of which is in the Bavarian dominions, and the other half belongs to Austria.

*Account of Bavaria, &c.*

Bavaria is a well-known kingdom of Europe, and is colder than other parts of Frankistan. Its capital is Munich, and the present king is named Louis Charles. Their language and that of Prussia and Austria is one. The coat of arms of the king is a crown supported by two lions. The standing army is 40,000 ; the whole population is 5,000,000. On arriving at manhood, every male must become a soldier for six years ; during this period he is exercised and drilled for a few days in each year, and in the intervals goes home to his employment. This is done in order that all the natives may be united and capable of meeting an enemy, and of securing the country from invasion. The poor in this kingdom are more numerous than in any other parts of Europe, although living is cheaper than in other places. When we arrived at the beginning of the Austrian dominions, the officers who guarded the confines, and had charge of the custom-house at this bridge, asked for our passport ; after examining it, they allowed us to pass.



*Account of Passports.*

The regulations concerning passports are as follows:—In all the kingdoms of the Franks, every person, from a royal prince to a beggar, travellers, or merchants, who may wish to go abroad, or to journey through any other kingdoms beyond their own, must be furnished with a passport. In every capital, there are residing ambassadors, or diplomatic agents, from all the powers. The traveller takes his passport, which is a printed paper, from the ambassador of the country to which he is going. In this passport, there will be the name of the bearer, his profession, whither he is going and whence he is from. Wherever he presents himself, if he has not a passport signed by the ambassador of the nation residing in his country, he will not be admitted into the territory. In every hotel and lodging house, the master of the house will present the traveller with a pen and ink, and a book, where he must sign his name. All this is done, that in case the traveller should have run away from his country on account of some crime committed, he may, by this means,

be detected. The officers on every border are always watchful, and never neglect this duty of demanding the passports of travellers. It was by this regulation they demanded our passports, and allowed us to pass. To-day we travelled seventy miles, and arrived at a city called Grieskirchen, where we alighted at an hotel, and spent the night.

Thursday, the 12th, we left our lodging, and notwithstanding its being the autumn season, we travelled through a beautiful country, green as emerald, cultivated with delightful gardens, quite paradisiacal. We passed through respectable towns, and after travelling a distance of sixty-five miles, reached a city called Linz, where we alighted at an hotel. Barberries, and nut bushes, and haw trees, abound in this country ; from the barberries we had some sherbet made here.

Friday, the 13th, we moved from this place, and about noon arrived at a city called Mölk, by which the river Danube passes. On the side of this place there is a hill, on the top of which is a convent, and a church, which was built by the monks 180 years ago ; and as it is a fine edifice, we spent an hour in seeing it. It is a magnificent

edifice, and cost some thousands of money. It is inhabited by monks, who believe that any person who wishes to please Jesus, (peace be upon him!) and act according to his law, must purify his soul, by abandoning marriage and worldly society; that he must dress in black, and go to the superior monk of the convent, who will receive and consecrate him as a member. There are different orders of monks in these convents. There is also an establishment for females, who become nuns, have convents to themselves, and female servants &c., to attend them. This convent is held by the natives as a holy place; it has many bequests and legacies, from which the monks draw their living. The monk must spend his whole life in the convent, and be continually engaged in prayers. Male and female monks will not, and can never be married. This is an ancient custom among the Christian sects, but at the present time, some people of Europe are advancing in worldly advantages, and do not believe in things which restrain human progression; so that this custom is diminishing a little amongst them. In other parts, however, this order still exists in its ancient

vigour. All this aside, we to-day made a thorough examination of the convent, and in truth it is a fine edifice, affording a fine spectacle. The church of the convent contains such a quantity of gold and silver articles, of images, clerical vestments, &c., as is beyond the power of describing. One of the curiosities which we observed here, was the persons of two of their kings, who died in this religion some hundred years ago. Their bodies, which are nothing but bare skeletons, are yet dressed with such a quantity of jewels, that the bones cannot be seen. They are placed under glass, and covered with rich velvet. These men were buried here, and are now most respectfully visited and bowed to by the natives. One is called St. Kissnat, and the other Banoltiarist; the convent belongs to the Benedictine order. The monks here are forty in number, each having a separate room. The library is rich, consisting of several thousand volumes. After we saw what was worthy of notice at this convent, we departed, and after making seventy miles, arrived at a small town called Pärshling, where we spent the night at an inn.

Wednesday the 14th, we left, and after travelling forty miles, arrived at Vienna, the capital of the Emperor of Austria; here we alighted at a large hotel. On our arrival at this city, we met with many Osmanli people, (Turks,) which made us feel very happy. After such a long absence, thank God we again see some people of the east. An hour after our arrival, we went to the baths, and had a washing, and in the evening, we visited the opera, where all tunes of music and every sound which can cause pleasure, were played. One thing here was quite new to us, and indeed it was a perfect exhibition of art. A man dressed up as an ape, acted so much in every respect like a monkey, that no one could tell that it was an imitation. This he performed, by entering into a skin of this animal, or one made like it. Many other plays were performed, which were calculated to astonish the mind.

Sunday the 15th, we remained at Vienna. The British chargé d'affaires called to see us, and was our guest this evening to dinner. One of the new dishes which we had on the table was a glass

vase, full of all kinds of fruit; every person took of whatever kind he pleased, but all were artificially made of ice—so perfect, that nobody could distinguish between them and nature.

After dinner we went to the house of pleasure, (the opera) like that of London. Daughters of the race of the houries, with moonlike faces—quite a Paradise of themselves—were present at this assembly, playing and reviving the heart by their dancing movements, putting the sense and the heart into two different conditions, for the first was astonished, while the latter was nourished. In short, to describe all this to the poor unfortunate who has not seen it, will be too lengthened a story for my book; and after all he will be nothing the better—he must come and understand for himself.

Monday the 16th, we changed our dress, in order to walk about the streets and bazaars, and were, from morning until three o'clock in the afternoon, engaged in gazing at the wonderful and rich articles here displayed, and admiring the fine edifices and strong lofty buildings.

Tuesday the 17th, we went out also through the bazaars, and in the evening we visited the opera, with which the eye is never weary.

Wednesday the 18th, we went to the armoury of the Emperor of Austria, which has existed in its present state for several thousand years. All kinds of arms are here arranged in such beautiful order, that the mind cannot but be astonished. Every one of the Cæsars who succeeded his predecessor added some arms and splendour to this place, and all the spoils which the rulers of this kingdom have obtained in their battles and victories from the conquered, and all the arms and standards that have fallen into their hands, are placed in this house in the most beautiful order, and make it quite complete.

There are here likewise portraits of their nobles and heroes, in their ancient costume, with their armour and their helmets placed round the house. Some of the arms are 5000 years old, when the world was young, and men were like beasts. Indeed, the curious arms that they then had, and which are now to be seen here, show that they were such. How much soever I may be inclined



to describe these different kinds of arms, I am unable to do so, for there are many thousand kinds and forms. Whatever may be imagined, or has been mentioned in history, is to be seen here in its original state. In truth, what there is here to be seen is most curious and wonderful.

At this place we met Captain M'Wamolt, who had just arrived from Hindostan, through Persia, and speaks the Persian language. We formed his acquaintance, and brought him with us to our lodging, and from him we learnt the present state of Irân, &c. Mr. Fraser, the chargé d'affaires of the English ambassador at this Court, called to see us, and it being about dinner time, we asked him to dine with us, and so conversed together.

Thursday the 19th, we started from Vienna, and by travelling at full speed, by sunset we arrived at a village of Hungary. Here we rested two hours, took dinner, and departed. We travelled all night long, and the next day, Friday, at noon, arrived at Pest, the capital of Hungary, and here we alighted at an hotel. During this night and day we travelled 170 miles.

*Account of Hungary.*

Hungary was formerly an independent kingdom of Europe, ruled by its own sovereigns, and was numbered among the principal European powers. But not long ago it came under the dominion of the Emperor of Austria, who directs all the necessary concerns relating to this country. The Emperor's agreement with the Hungarians is this, that instead of paying taxes and duties, they shall form a part of his army. The Hungarian soldiers are very active and courageous.

The people of Hungary are of Persian origin, and anciently settled in this country; even at present their dialect has a great similarity with the ancient Persian. Although all the people of Germany claim the same descent, yet the Hungarians are, without doubt, of that origin; however, God alone knows the reality.

Pest is a lovely and delightful city; the river Danube runs through it, over which there is a very fine bridge. The climate of this place is warmer than other parts of Europe, and much

like that of Persia. Its population consists of 120,000 souls.

We spent a day and a night in this city, and on Saturday the 21st, we again set off.

Here a thirsty land, without water or green, presented itself before us. Our carriage every now and then sunk in the sand, and we were obliged to get out, in order to extricate it. This continued so all the day long, together with a thousand troubles, and myriads of bitter accidents, till three hours after sunset, when we arrived at a village, where we alighted at a place, and obtained a poor dinner. This day we travelled fifty miles.

On Sunday the 22nd, we left, and met with a worse road than that of the day before, entirely of sand. We were constantly rising and falling in this desert, being obliged to walk almost all the time, till we became quite powerless; the horses of our carriage were also every now and then down in the sand. At noon we arrived at a village, where we changed horses. Here we got a little rest under the shade of its trees, for we had undergone a great deal.

At the time of starting Assaad Alla Khan was asleep under a tree, and we set off without once thinking of him; until, after proceeding a few miles, it was known that he had been left behind in that desert, where there was no water. Unfortunate Assaad Alla Khan, after walking fast for about two hours, at length reached us, just ready to perish.

We travelled on foot the whole of the day in this desert, and by four hours after sunset arrived at a ruined village. We were almost dead from the sufferings we had endured this day, both from walking and hunger, and our eyes had well nigh lost their sight. Besides, we had to wait for our dinner till nearly daybreak, when they presented us with some old beef, which, after all, was not half cooked; however, we ate it. This day we travelled forty miles.

Monday the 23rd. Mr. Fraser's lady was indisposed on account of having eaten the uncooked meat, so we stopped at this village for her until noon. In the afternoon we started; and, after travelling ten miles, arrived at a city of Hungary called Szegedin. Here we spent the remainder of the day and the

night, being quite fatigued with the hardships of the preceding day. A large river runs through this, over which there is built a wooden bathing-house, where we had a bath.

Tuesday the 24th. Before noon we departed ; and, after travelling a few miles, arrived at a large river called the Teiss, which we crossed in a large boat. We continued our travelling till three hours after sunset; we had made fifty miles, and arrived at a town called Komlos, where we alighted at an inn, and spent the night. At this inn we saw a very large dog, as large as a bullock: such an animal we had never seen before. Multitudes of people come from great distances to see this creature.

Wednesday the 25th. We left this place; and about noon we arrived at a town called Temeswar, which is very strongly fortified with a wall and castle. Here we observed many people belonging to Turkey. After dinner we departed, and continued travelling for sixty-five miles; when, at about three hours after sunset, we arrived at a village called Rimagoros. Here we alighted at an inn, and spent the remainder of the night.

Thursday the 26th. We set off; and, after

making a distance of forty-five miles, arrived at a village called Vimzink, which is situated by a mountain.

Friday the 27th. We departed. A mountainous tract was now before us, but the road was very skilfully cut out in the mountains; well adapted for the easy passage of carriages. An hour after noon we quitted the Hungarian territory, and entered that of Transylvania. What we saw of Hungary was not in that fine order in which we found other parts of Europe, nor are the people here to be reckoned of the same class as other Franks. The grain, however, is plentiful, and their cattle are very fine. To-day, after travelling fifty miles, we arrived at the village of Kerzo, where we spent the night.

Saturday the 28th, we started. This day our way lay through mountains and hills; and, after making fifty-five miles, we arrived at a city called Hermanstadt, the capital of Transylvania, which is also a part of the Austrian empire.

Sunday the 29th. We spent the day at this place. We had desired to go to Bucharest, by the route of Cronstadt; but, being informed that the plague was in our way, and that it was raging at

Constantinople, we changed our plan by going direct to Bucharest, notwithstanding its mountainous road.

Monday, the 1st of Rajab. We set off; and after travelling a few miles, arrived at the beginning of the mountains, which were very rugged; yet, notwithstanding, there are roads cut out of the rock for carriages to pass. To the one side of the valley, there is a deep ravine, through which a river runs. The eagle could not soar as high as some parts of this mountain, nor could the black eagle see the top of them; however, we passed the most difficult part of the roads, and a little before noon, came to a pass between two high mountains which the river crosses. Here the Austrian territory terminates, and that of Walachia begins. At this place there are some buildings for the officers who guard, and direct the quarantine. Every person who comes from the East must perform ten days' quarantine, the order and regulation of which have been already mentioned in the account of Malta.



*Account of Austria, &c.*

The kingdom of Austria, which is known by the name of Namsseh, is one of the great and respected parts of Europe. The climate is very cold. It is bounded eastward by Moldavia and Walachia, two kingdoms which are known by the Arabs of Boghdan and Falack; westward, by Piedmont, Switzerland, and Bavaria. Its northern boundary extends to Poland and Bavaria, and it is bounded on the south by the Ottoman territories, the Venetian sea, and Italy. The river Danube, which is the largest in Europe, passes through the greatest part of this empire. The coat of arms of this emperor is two eagles, between which is a crown; each of these eagles has also a crown on his head, and in the claw of one is a sword, and in that of the other a ball, which indicates the terrestrial globe. The three crowns denote that the emperor possesses three large kingdoms, viz., Austria, Bohemia, and Hungary. The whole population amounts to 33,000,000, and the standing army under orders is 300,000, consisting of cavalry, infantry, and artillery, &c. The annual

revenue of the royal treasury is eight kerrors. The name of the present badishah is Ferdinand. The capital of this kingdom is Vienna, which is in Austria, and is one of the seven celebrated cities of the world. The population of Vienna is 370,000 souls. They have not in this kingdom a Parliament of Commons, as in other parts of Europe; the direction and management of the public affairs is in the hands of vizirs, especially the prime minister, who is a very clever man, and celebrated all over the world. He is about ninety years old, and the people of this empire have great confidence in him. The Badishah of Austria is despotic, and may do whatever he thinks proper in the affairs of government. Formerly frequent wars took place between the Ottoman Sultans and the Austrian Cæsars; sometimes the Austrian empire was taken by the Ottomans, and held in their possession, until other kings of Europe assisted Austria and retook the kingdom.

On account of the frequency of war between these two kingdoms, the Austrians, for the better security of their money, goods, and families, constructed a very strong wall, fifty pikes wide, round

the city of Vienna, and completely fortified it in all directions. For this cause also their houses are very strongly built, and the streets narrow. Without the walls there are gardens, and other buildings. Napoleon, who is known by the name of Buonaparte, after several battles, took possession of this capital, and married the daughter of its king, who bears the title of emperor. Any foreign European, in the Frank costume, who may visit the city of Vienna, can only remain twenty-four hours; if he wishes to remain longer, he must give a respectable guarantee for his conduct during his stay, otherwise he will be sent away. This regulation applies to European foreigners, for there is nothing of the kind in regard to other strangers. Besides this, there are many other regulations in this kingdom; but, in order to shorten the account, let what has already mentioned be sufficient. Well, when we arrived at the place of the entrance into the Walachian territory, Alexander, the Prince of Walacha, having learned of our coming to his country, sent one of his officers to meet us, with a few horsemen and footmen, and with several horses to draw our car-

riage, in order to facilitate our travelling in these mountains. They applied twenty horses and bullocks to our carriage, and footmen laid hold of strong cords tied on both sides to keep it steady. In this difficult manner we continued our travelling, till at noon we arrived at the house of an officer named Yogha Bey, who is about 100 years old, and speaks Turkish. He was very condescending and friendly, and offered us some refreshments. After resting about an hour, we mounted.

We continued travelling in the same manner through these difficult roads, over mountains adorned with cheerful green flowers, with pure fountains of digestive water, which imparts an excellent appetite for eating. This day we took meals four times, for the mountains were delightful, and we alighted at almost every fountain, to enjoy the water. About sunset, we arrived at a village, where we spent the night. On account of the roads, we were not able to make more than thirty-five miles during the whole day.

Monday the 2nd, we started. A worse road presented itself than the day before, and the people conducted us with great difficulty. At

noon we arrived at a village where a brother of a governor met us, and invited us into his house, where we took dinner, and soon after departed. After proceeding a few miles, we met Mr. Lloyd, an assistant of the English Consul at Bucharest, who was sent to meet us, with some janissaries. We continued travelling, till we arrived at a large and strong monastery, dedicated to Mary. Here other officers and men sent by the Prince of Walachia met us, and brought us fresh horses. After sunset we reached a town, where we alighted at the house of the governor, took dinner and tea, and soon after departed. We continued travelling all the night long, and on the morning of the following day, (Wednesday the 3rd,) came to a fine plain, without making any stay. At about noon we discovered at a distance the city of Bucharest.

When we approached the city, a company of cavalry, and officers of rank came out to meet us, on the part of the Prince of Walachia. They brought us a very condescending, polite, and friendly letter, inquiring after our health. The escort, with their flag, conducted us with all

honourable respect, until we entered the city, and alighted at the house of entertainment, which was already prepared for us. Here some soldiers were placed to guard the doors, as sentries. Mr. Colquhoun, the English Consul, was waiting for us at the door of the house, and after the usual compliments, we entered the sitting-room. The house was fine and large, and attendants were provided to wait upon us. In the preceding two days and a night, we had travelled 130 miles, through mountains and rocky places. It is said that these mountains were formerly impassable, and not at all capable of being traversed by carriages; but that six years ago, when Russia brought her army against Constantinople, and took possession of many parts of the Ottoman empire, the Russian troops having to pass by Walachia, which they also possessed, levelled these mountains for carriages, in which work they spent many thousands of money. The roads are covered with beams and planks, nailed together with large nails; in fact, the workmanship is very astonishing.

At about three o'clock in the afternoon of the same day, we went to the baths. Seven months

had elapsed since we had entered a bath, which we now enjoyed very much. In the evening we went to the entertainment of the Consul, at his house ; where we were received by Mrs. Voshie, a very friendly and modest lady, a sister to the Consul. The table was furnished with all kinds of delicious dishes. Here we spent a part of the night, conversing on different topics, and inquired about the road to Constantinople. They informed us, that there were two ways to that city ; one of twelve days' journey, by land, by Adrianople ; but that all this road was infested with the plague ; the other was by Galatz, by steam, down the Danube, and through the Black Sea, which might be accomplished in five days. They informed us, moreover, that the plague was raging in Constantinople, and daily carrying off many people. We now became quite perplexed as to what we were to do, and returned to our residence full of thoughts on this subject.

Thursday the 4th, we wrote an answer to the letter of Prince Alexander of Walachia, which we sent by Khoojah Assaad, who was received by the prince with great hospitality, politeness, and civi-



lity. To-day we received farther accounts of the plague being at Constantinople, and decided to remain at this place, and to write to Lord Ponsonby, H. B. M.'s Ambassador Extraordinary at Constantinople, requesting his advice as to our movements. We wrote to him, and determined to remain at Bucharest fourteen days, until we could receive an answer. In the evening we went to the Consul's, where we met a company of English ladies, and spent some part of the night conversing in different languages.

Friday the 5th, news arrived from Constantinople that the plague was very violently increasing, and that 1000 persons were dying daily. To-day also Prince Alexander sent one of his generals to inquire after our health, and to testify his friendship. In the evening we were invited by Mr. Anderson, an English gentleman, to an evening party. Mrs. A. is a lady of unequalled beauty, and the whole assembly was very pleasant. Music makes every person forget his home, and the shadow of the beauty of the possessors of hearts, and the brilliancy of wine in the glass, good health, and the sweet conversation

of ladies, will deprive every wise man of his mind. What an assemblage of pleasure it was!—and what a heavenly party we met! We spent two hours at this cheerful lovely place in conversing with those who received the heart, and admiring the beautiful faces which shone like the full moon.

Saturday the 6th. On account of the friendship which Prince Alexander had manifested towards us, the Consul proposed that we should pay a visit to his Highness, so word was sent to that effect. When the prince was informed of it, he sent his gilt carriage of state, with some of his principal officers and royal guard to escort us. We entered the carriage, and the Consul entered in another, and we set off for the palace. The noble Prince received us most condescendingly, friendly, and politely. His divan was attended by noble personages, and his principal officers of state. The usual compliments being passed, we conversed together on different topics. After sweetmeats and coffee were presented to us, he introduced to us all his nobles and the generals of his government. Every one of them pronounced the appropriate

compliments, which we returned. When we rose to leave, the Prince walked a little with us, we then entered the same carriage of state, and returned to our residence. In the evening we went again to the entertainment of the Consul, where we met the uncle of the Prince, an old gentleman who spoke Turkish and many other languages ; on the whole it was a very pleasant night.

Sunday the 7th. Prince Alexander, accompanied by some of his relations and principal ministers, came in royal state with his guard to visit us. The necessary and usual compliments having passed between us, he spent an hour with us conversing on different subjects and then left. About noon of the same day we mounted with Mrs. D——, the Consul's sister, and went to a seat in the country. This building is pleasantly situated in a beautiful garden, with pure water and excellent air. The garden is constructed very much after the manner of those of Paradise. In this place there is a fountain of fine water issuing out of a lion's head made of stone, and close by a fine church, which we visited, and also other gardens. About sunset we returned to town.

Monday the 8th. Some of the nobility here called to see us, and in the evening we dined with the Consul.

Tuesday, and Wednesday the 10th. News reached us from Constantinople that the plague was raging, and that more than a thousand were dying every day. In the evening we went again to the Consul's, where we met the Prince's sister. This lady played music very well, and had a sweet voice. The usual compliments having passed between us, the lady, who was fond of music, herself asked us whether we had a taste for it? We replied, "It will be a happiness, and you will confer an obligation on us to allow us to hear it from you; dear possessor of our lives, this will be our utmost desire." She then rose and played the musical instrument, and in the mean time delighted us with her sweet songs. Here we remained until midnight, and then returned to our residence.

Thursday the 11th. In the afternoon we went with Mr. Colquhoun, the Consul, some other nobles, and a company of ladies, who possess light like the moon, to the country seat of the Prince's sister. When we arrived there, we amused our-

selves with fishing in the lake, and afterwards walked about the gardens with the ladies. At dinner time we conducted them to the table, which was here prepared and well furnished with every thing. After dinner, in the light of the moon, we accompanied the ladies, who resembled the unveiled sun, and returned back to the city.

Friday the 12th, Saturday the 13th, and Sunday the 14th, were spent in the same manner. During the day-time and at night, we either went to the Consul's, or he came to us; and every now and then we visited the gardens together.

Monday the 15th, Tuesday the 16th. News came from Constantinople that the plague was still increasing, and more than a thousand persons were perishing daily. On hearing this account we were quite perplexed as to what course to pursue. Unfortunate people! after an absence of two years, what are we now to do with this incurable disease? Sometimes we thought of going to Constantinople, but all the dangers of the plague that might befall us, presented themselves to our minds. Almost in the same moment we thought of again risking ourselves in a ship, and of going to some

part in the Mediterranean. At other times the wisdom of the mind was occupied in changing and forming projects, of going by way of Greece to end this embarrassment. In fact, every day we spent sorrowing, and every night in changing thoughts, and could not tell what to do, where to go, or where to stop, in order to avoid the frightful road, and the terrible disease. We however trusted upon the Lord, who gives every thing, and delivers from every difficulty, and stopped at Bucharest waiting for fresh news.

Wednesday the 17th, Thursday the 18th, Friday the 19th, and Saturday the 20th, were spent in going into the country, and visiting friends, while we were all the time anxious to hear from Constantinople.

Sunday the 21st, Monday the 22nd. Letters arrived from Lord Ponsonby to the Consul, saying, that (thank God!) the plague at Constantinople was diminishing very much, and that his Imperial Majesty Sultan Mahmood, after hearing of the arrival of the royal princes, had ordered a palace of his at Yanki kōi to be prepared for their re-

ception; that Najaf Bey, a great officer of government, was appointed to be our hirkamander, and that, by his extremely kind and gracious order, every thing was made ready for our reception. When we heard this news we were exceedingly glad and happy, and now waited only the arrival of the steam-vessel at Galatz, by which we had concluded to go.

Tuesday the 23rd, and Wednesday the 24th, we spent at Bucharest. During these two days the Divine mercy (rain!) did not stop, but continued incessantly falling, which caused a very severe cold.

Thursday the 25th. The snow fell plentifully, and it was severely cold; this will put an end to the plague. During these days we were getting ready for starting.

Friday the 26th, and Saturday the 27th. Wali was seized with an accidental illness.

Sunday the 28th, was a great feast with the Christian sects. Multitudes of people came from different parts of Walachia to the capital. Both men and women were beautifully clad in rich



dresses, and entered their churches and places of worship to commemorate this feast. It was altogether worth seeing.

Monday the 29th. I arose up early as usual, and, after offering up morning prayers, ordered a hookah. It now became known that the bowl of the pipe was stolen, for we sought after it in every part of the house, and could not find it. By our house was a sort of ruined place, which was made into a sort of poor garden, where all the dirt was thrown. As Taymoor Meerza was walking about this garden, having with him two dogs, which he had bought at Vienna at a dear price, for doing which we had ridiculed and teased him; these two dogs observing their master looking about as though he had lost something, and was seeking after it, began also to search into every place, and to look into every hole, endeavouring to find what was unknown to them. These creatures continued tearing up the ground, and seeking every where, until blood came out of their noses. We endeavoured to make them quiet and desist, but it was all useless; they still went on in the same manner, examining every place around them. At last we

became tired, and sat under a tree. After a few minutes, one of the dogs came to Taymoor Meerza and ran back to the ruin. As we did not take any notice of this, the dog came again, and returned to the ruin a second time, but still we did not notice the dog's anxiety. When the dog came the third time, he took hold of the end of Taymoor's dress ; I then told Taymoor Meerza to go with the dog, and see what he wished to point out. Taymoor Meerza went, and when he entered into the ruin, he saw in the dunghill something producing a light like jewels. When Taymoor Meerza had examined what it was, he found it arose from a quantity of our goods to the value of 2000 tomâns, which one of our servants had stolen, and buried in this place. We took them, thanking God for such a favour. The cursed, saltless servant, who did this, was one whom we had kept for many years, and was constantly benefited by our favours. Some of the things he had already sold. However, we were rejoiced at this occurrence, and at night sat together reading and conversing upon different things. Brother Wali had been restored to health, but to-night he

felt a little pain in his throat, yet he did not regard it, but remained with us until late, when every one retired to bed. As it is my custom to retire without a light, always extinguishing it before I go to bed, when I awoke, to my astonishment I found a light in my room, and somebody falling at my feet; I thought that it was the worthless, saltless thief of a servant, who had come to throw himself at my feet to beg forgiveness, and as I was excessively angry with him, and wanted to give him a good beating, I arose from my bed in a bad humour, and in perfect vexation gave him a sound licking; he did not say a word, and appeared as if he were dead; however, I determined to put him out of the room, and so I lifted him up, but to my astonishment found that it was my brother Wali, who after retiring to bed had been seized with a dreadful quinsy, which came upon him on account of the great heat of his blood. The unfortunate Wali was so bad, that he was not able to pronounce a word, and could hardly take a breath; he, however, had taken a light and had come to my room, but was so ill that he fainted away, and I taking him to be the lawless

servant, had given him a few beatings on the head. I was now exceedingly agitated at Wali's state, and immediately awakened Taymoor Meerza and Khoojah Assaad, but as a medical person could not be procured at this time of night, Taymoor Meerza gave him some gargle out of his chest; so that, although we could not restore him, we preserved him alive. At daybreak we sent and informed Mr. Fraser of the accident, and Dr. B——, who is an old physician, and who was some time in the service of Yooseph Pasha, was brought immediately. The doctor said that he had never before seen such a quinsy as that of Wali's, and that unless leeches were applied in half an hour he would die. Several men were instantly despatched after a barber and some leeches, which, thank God! were immediately brought, and the physician himself applied twenty large leeches to Wali's neck. After a few minutes, Brother Wali opened his eyes, and little by little he began to breathe, after we had given up all hope of his life, and we adored the Most Merciful for his mercy. The leeches drew out a good quantity of diseased blood, with which Wali was overcharged.

The doctor ordered that warm handkerchiefs should be hourly applied, and afterwards a poultice; that the bleeding must continue; and that Wali should eat nothing but apple, pear, and barley water. Wali's bed-clothes, and every thing about him, were steeped in blood, which, the more it left him, the better he felt. This continued till sunset, by which time about 1500 drachms of blood had been drawn from Wali's neck; nor did it stay even at night. Indeed it was a wonderful spectacle! We remained some part of the night with him, and afterwards we placed two servants by him, and we ourselves retired to bed. About the latter part of the night, I heard a loud voice from my brother Wali, and thought that he was calling the servant. Upon hearing him a second time, I went to him, to see what was the matter. I found him in the agony of death; the signs of which were visible on his face. He was not able to speak. Every thing about him was covered with blood, for he was still bleeding. We, however, succeeded in stopping the bleeding with herma, and in the mean time, poured down his throat some strengthening refreshments. Myself

and Taymoor Meerza now attended him, and gave him some medicine, so that towards morning, thank God, he grew better.

Wednesday, the 1st of Shäeban, the most noble Wali felt better, and by Sunday, thank God, he was quite recovered.

Monday the 6th, Mr. Colquhoun, the Consul, who had gone a few days ago to Moldavia, on some duty, returned to-day, and came to our residence, to inform us that the steam vessel would soon be at Galatz, in order that we might be ready for starting. We then complimented him on his safe return. To-day also a medical man called upon us, sent by Mr. Colquhoun. This doctor told us that he could cure all inveterate diseases, and that he was a student of an old celebrated modern physician, and head of a party of eleven medical men in Germany, who have publicly declared their opinion, and warmly defended their views; for the rest of the medical professors do not agree with this party. He further informed us, that the said old physician is ninety years of age, fifty of which he practised in medicine, and that his principles are founded on experiments,

and that he has written many books on the subject; but the public at large have not yet reposed their confidence in his doctrines. Then this new kind of a doctor took out of his pocket a small box, which opens with a key. In it we found more than a thousand little bottles, containing pills as small as the head of a pin. This doctor said, "What you see in this little box, is what is contained in a large apothecary's shop; my master has invented this art of taking the substance or essence of medicine. The apothecaries are angry with my master for bringing down the profession to such a small scale." At last he gave us some of his medicines, and said that we might use them in time of need.

In the evening we went to the Consul's to dinner. Mr. Colquhoun, the Consul, offered to accompany us to Galatz on the following day, which was fixed for our departure. The Prince Alexander Ghica, of this place, sent us an officer of his, Colonel Jacob, to bid us farewell, and to assure us of his true friendship.

Tuesday the 7th, we were invited to dinner with the Consul, in order to bid his sister Mr. and Mrs.



and Miss F—— good bye. Soon after dinner we bade our hosts farewell, and started.

The Prince having sent an escort to accompany us, when we got out of the town we desired them to return. We travelled all that night long, and the following day, in a fine plain, abundantly rich with game, and exceedingly fertile. Thus we continued our travelling during six hours of the night, when we arrived at Brahilov; we have made in the last seven hours, 150 miles. At Brahilov we alighted at the British Consulate. Brahilov is the last town of Walachia, situated by the river Bouzeo. Before the Russian war with Turkey, in the year 1225, this city was a very well fortified place, had exceedingly strong walls and castle. The Russians were a long time before they took it, the Turks being within the walls, and having the castle they kept out the Russians, and kept their fire up against them. The Russians at last contrived a ditch, and filled it with powder, and gave it fire, by which, 14,000 men were destroyed on both sides; but it affected the walls, and thus the Russians entered the place, and took possession of it. The bones of the

perishing soldiers may be seen till this day about the town. At present this place is under the Prince of Walachia.

---

*Account of Walachia.*

Walachia, known to the Arabs by the name of Felakh, is a province of Europe. It is 250 miles long, and 160 wide. It is bounded eastward, by Moldavia, or Boydan; westward, by Hungary; northward, by Transylvania; and southward, by Turkey. Walachia was formerly entirely under the Sultan of Constantinople; but when the Russians, during their last war with Turkey, took possession of it, and when a peace was concluded between the two powers, this country, as well as Moldavia, was taken from Turkey on paying annually 20,000 purses to the Porte, and that they should be under the Russian protection. At present it is independent, and it follows a Russian policy in its government. The Prince resides in Bucharest, and has a standing army of 4000 men.

Bucharest contains 120,000 inhabitants, and the whole population of the country amounts to 2,000,000. And if what we have seen through this country, does not contain edifices so grand as other parts of Europe, yet we believe that through the ingenious management of the present Prince, it will before long become as good as other kingdoms in Europe. The principal trade of this country is fur, which is exported to all parts of the world.

Thursday the 5th, we left Brahilov, and when we entered the Boydan and Moldavian territory, we found some cavalry, sent by the Prince of Moldavia to await our arrival, and to accompany us to Galatz. On the eve of the same day, we arrived at Galatz, where we were met by the English Consul, and alighted at his house. Soon after our arrival, dinner was served, and while at table, the Governor of the place, with some noblemen of the country, called upon us. The Governor was very polite, offered us his services, and placed a sentry at our residence.

Friday the 10th. I (here Reeza Koolee Meerza speaks) was suddenly seized with an attack of fever.

Mr. Colquhoun, the Consul at Galatz, brought me a German doctor named Beyg, who happened to be at this place on the occasion. The doctor attended me, and my brothers as well; other friends came and spent some time at my room, in order to comfort and keep me in company. During the conversation, the subject of the indigestion of the water of London was brought forward. The Consul of Galatz said, "I was many years in London, but I never drank water, so that I cannot judge." This account was indeed not a little surprising.

Saturday the 11th. I was worse, and the doctor gave me some jalap and an emetic, so that I spent the day in a most dreadful state. The Russian Consul called to see us to-day, and Mr. Colquhoun, the Consul at Bucharest, who accompanied us to this place, bade us farewell, and returned to Bucharest. To-night, on account of my incessant vomiting, and the pains of my disease, I had not a minute's sleep.

Sunday the 12th. The doctor applied some leeches to my stomach, which drew out some diseased blood. To-day the Austrian Consul called

upon us, and news arrived that some accident had happened to the steam vessel on her passage here, and that therefore she would not run any more this season.

Sunday night, and Monday 13th. My illness increased, so that the doctor applied more leeches, and in the evening he bled me, and let out 150 drachms of blood. At night I was exceedingly weak; during the last few days, while undergoing the opening and vomiting medicines, I had not taken a drachm of food, which could prove a support to human life, or contribute to produce the physical blood, so that I felt very weak, and was weakening every minute, and continued in this state until Tuesday 14th, when I became so exceedingly debilitated as to be unable to speak or to breathe. This night the doctor took about 150 more drachms of blood from me, so that I was brought to the borders of the grave, and was almost dead. I lost both my internal and external feelings, and did not know myself.

Wednesday the 15th. I was just as bad, without the least strength, and the illness was still increasing.

Thursday the 16th. I was as bad as ever, and without any feeling. In the evening, notwithstanding my weakness, my doctor, Auberg, gave me several sorts of medicine, and applied a blister to my breast, which took off some pieces of flesh and skin, and the same night applied some more leeches to me. I now suffered a great deal, and was not able to sleep from the effect of the medicine all the night, and from suffering a most dreadful pain in the breast.

Friday the 17th. More leeches were applied to my breast, and a quantity of blood came out. In the night I was exceedingly restless.

Saturday the 18th. All the medical men of this place and the neighbourhood were brought to see me, and to consult each other in regard to my illness. They all testified that my medical man was pursuing the right course.

Sunday the 19th. I was, thank God, a little better, and the fever decreasing. I slept about one hour and a half.

Monday, and Tuesday the 21st. Praise be to God, I was rapidly advancing to recovery, and I felt an appetite for eating. The doctor ordered

that I ought not to take more than a roasted apple during the day, saying that my stomach was so weak that it could not bear any thing else ; I was so pale and weak that I did not feel my clothes on. But myriads of thanks be to the God of the world, and thanks be given to him who bestowed his mercy upon me, for every minute I felt his mercy stronger.

Wednesday the 22nd. I was as well as could be expected.

Thursday the 23rd. The steam vessel arrived here from Constantinople, and brought news that the plague was diminishing, for that while lately 4000 persons had been dying daily, now there were not more than 2000; that 200,000 had already died of this disease at Constantinople, and that it had never been so bad as this year, nor was it ever known to last so long and to be so severe. Let us take refuge in God from the wrath of the Almighty ; notwithstanding our hearing such alarming news, together with the view of a dangerous journey, yet as our health at Galatz had seriously suffered from no ordinary indisposition, so much so that death was almost certainly ex-



pected from the nuisance of this place, and the filthiness of the neighbourhood, we determined not to remain here any longer, and thought it much better to risk all the dangers to be encountered in going through the Black Sea and the plague, than to remain in this horrible town.

Friday the 24th. At two o'clock in the afternoon the governor of Galatz sent us his carriage, which we entered, and embarked on board the steam vessel on the Danube. As to Galatz, it is the most dirty town of Moldavia, which country is known to the Arabs by the name of Bagdan. Moldavia is bounded eastward by Russia, westward by Transylvania, northward by Poland, and southward by Turkey. It is 200 miles long, and 120 broad. Jassy is its capital. This country was a part of the Ottoman dominions, but since the peace, which followed the last war with Russia, it has been placed upon the same footing as Wallachia, by simply paying a certain sum annually to the Porte. They have an independent prince, under the shadow of the Russian protection. Its population is 500,000 ; Galatz is situated upon the river Danube. It is the most miserable and foul

place in the world ; the people here are very dirty, their streets are so filthy and muddy as to be almost impassable ; indeed I was astonished how people could live here and bring up children, for it is in fact the abode of hell. However, this day, with the greatest difficulty, we reached the river, and embarked on board the steamer *Ferdinando*, commanded by Captain Anderson, who received us respectfully and honourably, and gave us very good accommodation. The captain is an Englishman, but the vessel belongs to an association. This company consists of a body of very rich men in Europe, who have formed themselves into a partnership, to navigate the Danube and Black Sea as far as Constantinople, Greece, and Smyrna. Thus they have raised a large capital, and built several steam vessels, which are now navigating the above mentioned places, except that during three months in the year, when the Danube is frozen, they go to other places. The Emperor Ferdinand, of Austria, is a member of this company, and on this account these vessels bear the Austrian flag. The *Ferdinando* certainly is a fine and elegant ship. This night we spent comfortably on board.

We left Galatz on Saturday, the 25th, about noon; the wind was favourable, and the sun very brilliant and beautiful. In two hours we reached the coast of Bessarabia, which is a part of the Russian dominions. Here we observed many regiments of Russian troops, both cavalry and infantry, companies of which were watching the coast, in order that no one from Turkey should enter this country, on account of the plague. All persons from Turkey, who wish to enter here, must perform quarantine. On this bank we observed, at the distance of every 1000 feet, a mounted sentry, so that no one from Turkey could enter the Russian territory. When our steamer reached one of these sentries, he immediately accompanied us at full gallop, as far as the next, and so on, until we entered the Black Sea. This is done on all the Russian coast, which is on the left hand, the opposite Turkish coast being on the right. In the evening we arrived at a town of Bessarabia, where the Danube divides into two streams; and here we observed several vessels belonging to the Russian government; on the other side was the Turkish province of Tutktcha, which is governed by Mo-

hammed Pasha. At this place, on account of the many windings of the river, and being a dark night, the vessel anchored. Hossei Bey, a very fine, handsome, and respectable young man, the son of the Pasha, and other nobles of their country, paid us a visit on board, offering us their services and friendship.

On Sunday morning, the 26th, the anchor was weighed, and the steam set. The guards, as on the preceding day, accompanied us, until we reached the end of the river and the beginning of the Black Sea. Here is a town called Kilia, where we saw many Russian ships of war guarding these coasts. To-day we entered this sea, yet, thank God, notwithstanding the winter season and the sea-sickness, we passed the day very pleasantly.

Tuesday the 27th. One hour before noon, we came to anchor before Varna, a sea-port of Turkish Roumelia. The captain and passengers went on shore, and, after remaining three hours, we again started. This city contains 10,000 inhabitants, and the governor is named Najib Pasha. The wind continued favourable until sunset, when the

waves rose up like mountains, and the storm was so violent that we felt as bad as ever, and continued vomiting all the night until the sunrise of the following day.

Tuesday the 28th. We reached the beginning of the straits of the Bosphorus; on both sides of which there are mountains, with pure air and excellent water, covered delightfully with green; indeed, such a place is rare in the world.

The strait is not more than a mile broad, and in some places it is less. On both sides there are some fine buildings and beautiful gardens, with fountains which run through the houses and flow into the sea. The mountains are covered with gay trees; the cypress is very plentiful. These trees are planted round most of the palaces and houses, and yield a delicious shade. There are, besides, many palaces belonging to the Sultan and Pasha, and such great personages, each having beautiful, paradise-like gardens. One of the palaces especially, belonging to the Sultan, which is called Astoray Taray, situated to the east of the strait, is in such magnificent splendour that we never saw its equal before. We passed by these palaces until

we came to the harbour between Constantinople and Scutari, where we cast anchor. The Bosphorus bounds the extremity of Europe, and separates it from Asia. Europe is one of the four quarters of the world, of which one is called Asia, another Africa, one Europe, and the fourth America. But Europe, over most of which we have travelled, though it is smaller in size than any other of the three continents, is yet more thickly populated than any one of them; for there are not three inches of land in its length and breadth where you do not meet with cultivation and habitations, except in Russia, which is a vast country: some parts of which, on account of their distance, and others on account of their being so far removed from the sun, are extremely cold and cannot be cultivated; yet all the parts are thickly populated. Europe is 3000 miles long, and 2000 broad. It is bounded by the Atlantic, and is surrounded on all sides by seas, except on the side of Asia, where it has the river Don in Russia. Europe terminates towards the east by the Asiatic Ottoman territory, on the south by the Great Sea, on the north by the Frozen Ocean, on the west by the West Sea.

The kingdoms of Europe which are governed by independent kings are as follow : England, France, Belgium, Russia, Austria, Spain, Bavaria, Portugal, Holland, Switzerland, Hanover, Wirtemberg, Sardinia, Naples, Rome, Tuscany, Greece, Denmark, Sweden, Saxony, Nassau, Walachia, and Moldavia. Each of the above-mentioned kingdoms has a king, with a crown and mint, except those of Walachia and Moldavia, which are governed by Princes. There are many islands belonging to Europe in the different seas, the largest of them are as follow : in the Atlantic are England and Scotland, generally known by the name of Great Britain, and Ireland ; those in the Mediterranean are six in number : Sicily, Majorca, Minorca, Malta, Crete or Candia, and Cyprus. Those in the Baltic and North Sea are also six in number : Zealand, Bornholm, Oland, Gothland, Aland, and Iceland, which last contains many curious and wonderful things. Besides these, there are a great many inferior islands. The rivers of Europe are as follows : the Danube, the Volga, the Rhine, the Thames, the Rhone, the Tagus, the Neva, the Vistula, the Elbe, the Tiber, the



Dnieper, the Don, and the Dwina. Of many fine lakes in Europe those in Switzerland are the largest. The principal mountains are the Dofrines, the Pyrenees, the Alps, the Apennines, the Krapak or Carpathian, and Castagnat, or Chain of Haemus.

The whole population of Europe, according to the last census of the year 1230 of the Hegira, was 182,000,000; these all profess the Christian religion, except a few who are Jews. However, to-day we arrived at its extreme point towards the east, which is this strait. Mr. Fraser directly after went on shore to see the ambassador, and we remained on board the *Ferdinando*. The distance from Galatz to Constantinople is 400 miles; it being to Sulineh, which terminates the Danube, 110 miles; from Sulineh to Varna 160, from Varna to the beginning of the Bosphorus 120, and the strait itself is twenty miles long.

The dangers of the Black Sea are very great; yet, thanks be to God, we passed it in perfect safety. After Mr. Fraser had announced our arrival, the Reis Effendi, who is at the head of the foreign department, sent a trustee on board to us,

saying, "that His Imperial Majesty the Sultan, having been informed of your coming before your arrival, has prepared a residence for you, Yani Koï, which is pleasantly situated on the Bosphorus, where there is no disease, and every thing made ready for your reception." We expressed our thanks for the kindness of the Sultan, and it being now late, we slept on board, and read the letters which had just reached us from Bagdad and other parts.

Wednesday the 29th. We entered into boats sent by the Government, and landed at the palace which was prepared at Yani Koï. This residence is large, and beautifully situated on the sea, completely furnished. Mohammed Nadi Beg, an officer of government, was appointed our Mihmander. On entering the mansion we were fumigated, with all our baggage.

Thursday, the last of this month. Mohammed Ayá Khoili, who is the Elchia of Persia at the Porte, with some other officers, called upon us.

Friday the 1st of Ramadan. The blessed Lord Ponsonby, His Britannic Majesty's Ambassador, and the French chargé d'affaires called upon us,

complimented us on our safe arrival, and manifested towards us the utmost friendship and politeness. Lord Ponsonby is a thoroughly experienced nobleman, and a complete scholar, having spent all his life in political affairs and offices, and possesses a perfect talent for every thing. After some friendly conversation they returned.

Saturday the 2nd, there was a strong hurricane, and the waves of the Bosphorus nearly rushed into our residence. To-day some English gentlemen called to see us.

Sunday the 3rd, Taymoor Meerza was seized with a strong attack of fever, and suffered extremely.

On account of the plague in Constantinople and its neighbourhood, no one approached us, nor would any medical man come to attend on Taymoor Meerza. However, we ourselves, by inspiration and the word of God, gave him some medicine which we had brought with us from London. The servants who were left here to attend us, on seeing Taymoor Meerza's illness, all ran away, and the Shawhat Bey, the son of our Mihmander, learning the same, lost no time in leaving the house, and

we were left quite alone. We were now reduced to a most miserable condition, on seeing this, and the sufferings of Taymoor Meerza, and had nobody to comfort us, but the trust in the mercy of Omnipotence, who provides for and helps his servants, and into whose care we surrendered ourselves. To-day Mr. Fraser came as usual to see us, with an English officer, who commanded the British man-of-war here. As soon as I informed them of Taymoor Meerza's illness, they rose up and departed, without looking behind them. This increased our alarm, and we were nearly perishing, without knowing what to do.

At night, by the word of God, we gave our brother some medicine, and two hours afterwards he perspired, and the fever left him. He afterwards rose and sat up, and ate with an appetite. We now adored God, with myriads of thanks, for he gradually got well, and it did not turn out to be the plague.

Monday the 4th, Gimal Effendi, the Naib of Reis Effendi, called upon us on the part of the Government, to compliment us on our arrival, and to offer an apology for their not being able to come

sooner to see us, on account of the plague, they being in quarantine: that, further, the Government would be very happy to render us any assistance required; that nothing should be neglected for our sakes; and that, as we wished to proceed to Bagdad, the royal Mihmander was appointed, with the necessary firman, to conduct us agreeably thither. We expressed our thanks and gratitude for the kindness of the Sultan; and Gimal Effendi remained with us till late at night, conversing in Turkish and Persian on different topics, and then departed.

Tuesday the 5th, nothing new occurred, but we were invited to an entertainment given by Lord Ponsonby. In the evening the ambassador sent us his boat, which we entered, and rowed by the different buildings on the shore, till we arrived at the palace.

The ambassador used formerly to reside in the city of Constantinople, but his palace having been burnt a few years ago, the Sultan gave him one in its place at Therapia, as a grant to him and his successors. It is pleasantly situated, having pure air and excellent water. When we entered the

palace, we were respectfully received in a very honourable and friendly manner by his Excellency, and were conducted into a majestic assembly, and introduced to the honourable and accomplished Lady Ponsonby. The dinner consisted of all kinds of dressed and undressed eatables. Here we also met Monsieur Gardova, the Spanish minister, with other persons of high distinction. Some of the party spoke in Turkish. The Spanish ambassador spoke a little Persian. After spending some very pleasant hours of the night, we returned to our residence.

Wednesday the 6th, Thursday the 7th, nothing new occurred. Monsieur Gardova, the Spanish ambassador, called upon us.

Friday the 8th, Saturday the 9th, nothing of consequence happened worth mentioning. Every day we were expecting to leave this place.

Sunday the 10th, Monday the 11th, and Tuesday the 12th, were spent at home.

Wednesday the 13th, was the birth-day of Sultan Mahmoud, which caused a very great feast in the great capital.

To-day Hossein Mohammed Effendi called upon

us from the Government, and said that he was ordered by Government to conduct us, as a Mih-mander, as far as Bagdad, by the route of Diarbekir and Mosul, and had come to see what was required, and what was necessary for the convenience of our travelling.

Thursday the 14th, Friday the 15th, Saturday the 16th, and Sunday the 17th, nothing of import-happened.

Monday the 18th, and Tuesday the 19th, we received no news respecting our departure, and spent the days in the weariness of fasting, it being the Ramadan.

Wednesday the 20th, we heard news from Constantinople, that Khooloossi Pasha, the minister of foreign affairs, was attacked by the plague, which was again increasing in the city. This put a stop to our departure. We also heard that a royal Prince of Persia was coming to Constantinople by the route of Diarbekir, and his arrival was expected on the following day.

Thursday the 21st, Friday the 22nd, and Saturday the 23rd, nothing particular happened. We ascertained that the expected royal Persian Prince,



named Allah Wardi Meerza, had just arrived at Constantinople.

On Sunday the 24th, and Monday the 25th, we sent Khoojah Assaad, our interpreter, to the city, to call upon Allah Wardi Meerza with our compliments, and to get information from him.

From this day to Sunday, the 1st of Shewal, and the feast of Fatar, we were quite idle and melancholy, on account of our delay here, nor did we know when our departure was to take place. To-day there was a great and wonderful feast here.

It is the custom in this place, to keep up the feast of Fatar for three successive days, which are spent in pleasure and amusement; and notwithstanding the existence of the plague, the feast was commemorated, according to the usual custom. On this day the Prince royal, Allah Wardi Meerza, honoured us with his presence. He spent the night with us, and the following day, until sunset, when he returned to his residence at Constantinople. We accompanied the Prince in our boat a part of the way, and amused ourselves by shooting sea-fowl. We learned from his Royal Highness

all the news of Persia, and what he knew of our affairs there, &c.

Monday the 2nd, Tuesday the 3rd, we again entered a boat and went to shoot some sea-fowls, but took none. From Wednesday the 4th, until Monday the 9th, we were idle, doing nothing all this time, not having heard any thing from the Ottoman Government.

Tuesday the 10th, we were invited by the British ambassador, at whose palace we spent a very pleasant part of the evening.

Wednesday we spent at home.

Thursday the 12th, we went to honour ourselves by visiting Prince Allah Wardi Meerza at Constantinople, with whom we spent the night. On the following day, Friday, we went out with the Prince to visit the mosques and places of worship at Constantinople ; they are most splendid edifices, and of wonderful construction, which I hope to describe hereafter.

Wednesday the 18th, Khoojah Assaad our interpreter bade us good-bye to go to Damascus ; we were quite unhappy in losing his company, for he had now been to us more than a year a good

friend and a pleasant companion. We felt exceedingly sorry at his leaving us. To-day his Royal Highness Allah Wardi Meerza honoured us with a visit, and spent the day and the night with us.

Friday the 20th, we accompanied the Prince to Constantinople, and visited some of the edifices there. All this time we heard nothing from the Ottoman Government, and did not know when our departure was to take place, or what they had done on our behalf, for notwithstanding the solicitations of H. B. M.'s ambassador, nothing was yet settled, and our time was being spent in vain. However we passed a few days in Constantinople, and afterwards returned to our residence at Yauï Koï; we were idle and doing nothing until Tuesday the 24th, every day waiting for news from the Government.

Friday the 27th, we received intelligence that a Mihmander from the Sultan was certainly appointed, that the firmans were written, and that we most undoubtedly should leave soon. This news made us happy, and we awaited the result.

Tuesday the 2nd of Zelkedi, notwithstanding its being the 10th of Pisces, the snow fell in great quantity at Constantinople and in the neighbourhood. so much so, that the old people said

that they did not recollect such a fall of snow at this season of the year in their lives. It was so excessively cold that none of us would venture out of doors. After having waited so long the arrangement of our affairs by Government, and now that all was settled, we were delayed by the weather; which did not abate until Friday the fifth. To-day Prince Allah Wardi Meerza honoured us with his presence at our residence. Taher Bey called also upon the part of Government, and said that he was appointed to be our Mihmander, that our leave was granted by the Sultan, and that the following Monday was fixed for our departure.

Friday and Saturday. Taher Bey came to our residence with some boats from Government, and said that every thing was ready and prepared for our movements. We could not express our joy at these happy tidings, which gave us to hope that we should soon see home and friends. Moreover, our delay and stay at Yauï Koï had been to us like a dreadful prison. To-day the Hon. Mr. Fraser, who accompanied us as Mihmander from the English Government to Constantinople, came to bid us farewell, to whom we presented a valuable

diamond ring, for the sake of our remembrance, and then entered the boat with Taher Bey and left Yaui Koï. We afterwards landed at Askidau or Scutari, where we stopped a few hours gazing at the multitudes of people, and four hours before sunset set off.

Constantinople is one of the seven great cities of the world, but in regard to its structure, situation, and climate, it is more distinguished than any other part of the world, and especially in regard to its position, it is unrivalled by any other city on the globe. This magnificent city was built by Constantine the Great, in the year 330 of the Christian era, or 254 years before the Mohammedan Hejira, and was named after him. This noble city continued for a thousand years to be the metropolis of the Eastern kingdoms, for the emperors who resided in it ruled over most parts of the Eastern world, in which direction their authority extended very far. In the year 1453 after Jesus, it was conquered by Sultan Mohammed el Fateh, and it has ever since been the possession and residence of the Ottoman Sultans, to whom, after having taken possession of this

capital, all its dependencies surrendered. Constantinople is built on seven mountains, in a triangular form, and is situated between two long straits of the Black Sea, Kara Denkey, and the Sea of Marmora or Macmais. Each of these straits is twenty miles long; the harbour of Constantinople is sufficiently large to receive 12,000 ships of the line. The external appearance of this noble city is beautiful and delightful to the eye, but inside the streets are narrow and the houses mostly built of wood, and subject to fire, so that it often happens that a fire accidentally breaks out, and in an instant these large lofty houses, with every thing therein, are reduced to a heap of ashes—such a dreadful occurrence is called by the Turks, yaghin. It is on account of this danger that every one of the vizirs, or pashas, has in his house a long minaret, where there are always some persons watching, so that when they see any fire break out, they immediately report it to the pashas, who then take their servants and attendants, and help in putting it out. The unfortunate beings whose houses take fire, may perhaps one day be worth millions of money, the next may be reduced to

poverty and made beggars; this is indeed a very dreadful plague to this city. Most of the ancient celebrated edifices of Constantinople are going to decay, except the mosque of Agra Sophia, which was built by Constantine for a church, but was afterwards converted into a mosque when Constantinople was conquered by the Mussulmen. It is stated that when Sultan Mohammed el Fateh entered Constantinople, 12,000 Christians were killed at the door of this church. Such an edifice is not to be seen any where else, nor is there a mosque equal to it existing in the world. It is 270 feet long, and 240 broad. It would lengthen this work too much to enter into a description of the palaces, baths, and khans belonging to the Sultan. On the whole such wonderful mosques and splendid remains exist in this city, as are not to be met with in any other place. The large Mussulman mosques in Constantinople are 300 in number, each of which is wonderfully constructed. In most of the burying grounds, the cypress is planted, which grows here larger than other trees. After the mosque of Agra Sophia, the next in order is that of Sultan Solyman, and after-



wards that of Sultan Achmet. The followers of Jesus have thirty churches here. The population of Constantinople is 1,300,000 souls. Its water is very digestive, and its air is exceedingly pure and healthy; the best of its fountains is that of Yaui Koï. All kinds of fruit are imported from all parts, and much grows here. Corn is principally imported from Russia, rice from Egypt, as they do not grow sufficient for their consumption. All kinds of flowers are found in this metropolis. In the straits there is a kind of small fish, possessing a flavour that we never tasted before, and it is probable there are none to be found in any other part of the sea. The great people of this country are in general polite in their manners; their meetings for conversation are carried on in the coffee-houses. The custom in other countries of friends entertaining and visiting each other, is here unknown. The common and lower class of people are very much addicted to practising what is known to the Arabs by drink-money, or brothership, and among the Persians by tribute. The English travellers who visit the East cannot but know the word baksheesh.

One day after going about the streets, and

gazing at what was to be seen, we returned to our residence. A man followed us, and demanded of us a baksheesh. I said to him, "What hast thou done for us to entitle thee to it?" He said, "While you were walking about the streets in the heat of the sun, my wife put the clothes out on the terrace to dry, which no doubt gave you a shade, which you must have enjoyed, while resting from the heat ; it is therefore necessary that you should give me a baksheesh." Another day, while we were at Constantinople, as we were going to visit the Mosque of Sultan Achmet, a man came to us, and demanded a baksheesh. I said to him, "What good hast thou done for us?" He replied, "Some persons saw you at a distance, and thought that you were people of this country, but I, knowing that you were not of this place, but Persians, began to praise you before them ; now you must give me my rights." Such is their endless way of asking for baksheesh, and their generosity in demanding charity.

A similar occurrence happened to us, after departing from Constantinople. On our way to Bagdad, we arrived at a large city, where we

alighted at a lodge. Having travelled very hard during the day, we felt exceedingly hungry on our arrival, and demanded something to eat. They told us, that our dinner was to come from the Palace of the Governor of the place. Now, for the sake of receiving the Governor's entertainment, we consented to wait. Thus some hours elapsed, and the expected dinner had not made its appearance. We waited till three hours after sunset, but the promised supper was not brought; until at last we could wait no longer, as our hunger had vastly increased. At this time, some men came into our room, of whom we asked their business. The eldest of them said, "I am the head cook of the Pasha, and one of these two, is his chief lawees, or janissary, and the other is his water cup-bearer. The Pasha has ordered a dinner for you, which is ready, and we are now come to demand a baksheesh, and then we will bring it." Being very hungry, I could not help giving the fellow a blow on his head, and desired him to leave the room. Upon this, they all stood at the door, begging forgiveness; for they knew that if the Pasha should be informed of this, he

would be exceedingly angry with them. After they had solicited pardon, it was agreed that we should not mention the matter to the Pasha, and that they should bring us one half of the dinner, and the other half they were to keep, instead of their baksheesh. Such is the manner in which they conduct themselves in this habit of theirs ; the higher class of the people of this kingdom, however, are very noble, rich, and honourable in their dealings, and their kings are just and generous.

Formerly the Ottoman Sultans were not to be seen in the bazaars, and no one dared to approach them with an application or petition. Whenever they went out, it was always in imperial state, and the people were obliged to bow their heads to them most respectfully. The present Sultan Mahmoud, the Badishah of the age, is a wise man, and possesses a high degree of talent, kind feelings, and superior intellect. His Majesty has already introduced into his kingdom such European regulations, as are calculated to promote the advancement and prosperity of his empire and subjects. But in so doing, he is perplexed beyond measure,

by the ignorance of the people of this country. However, he has succeeded in having his views executed. During this reform, some of the foolish people, called janissaries, attempted to interrupt his proceedings, and declared themselves against the interest of the public. His Imperial Majesty was displeased with their conduct ; and in a short time, 30,000 of them were destroyed, which restored tranquillity to the government. The form of their government, is at present similar to that of the Franks, but the Sultan still remains despotic, having all the power in his own hands. The vizirs of government are intrusted with great power ; they are twelve in number, and carry on all the affairs of government. Each of them has a department in the Sublime Porte, where they sit daily. After they decide on any point, they send in their conclusion to the Sultan, who also makes his decision, and gives out his orders accordingly. If the answer from the Sultan should be delayed, however important it may be, it is not a rule with the vizirs to apply for it a second time. It must be left entirely to the Emperor's pleasure. The ancient condition of the Ottoman government has

suffered a great deal through neglect. Russia has seized upon many of its territories. Algiers, with some of its dependencies, has been taken by France. Walachia and Moldavia, are free principalities. The islands of Greece, with the Morea, have become entirely independent, and have a new Badishah; and Mohammed Ali Pasha is almost sole Regent in Egypt, Syria, and Arabia. Such are the very injurious losses which have befallen the Ottoman government, on account of the negligence of the vizirs. At present, however, by the wise proceedings of the reigning Sultan, the empire is advancing and flourishing; so we see that God fulfils his own will, and orders what he pleases. Notwithstanding that little remains of the former vast possessions of the Ottoman government, still the yearly revenue of the treasury is 600,057 purses, each purse amounting to ten Persian tomâns. The standing army under pay, is 120,000 regular infantry, and 30,000 cavalry, some of whom are in the capital, and others in different parts of the empire. The artillery consists of 150 pieces of cannon. One portion of the army is drilled according to the French discipline,

and the other according to the Russian. Their cavalry is also regular, and the old companies of horsemen are done away with. The Imperial Sultan is very fond of building new edifices, and has already constructed some most splendid and enlivening palaces in Constantinople. Such an one he has lately erected on the European side of the Bosphorus, as the eye never saw elsewhere, nor the ear of men ever heard of before. The building was commenced seven years ago, and it is said that it will require four years more to complete it. It is a palace and paradise, and is called the Charagan Seraï, and is indeed beyond any description. All the vizirs, pashas, and great people of this kingdom, have palaces on the Bosphorus, where they spend the summer, and where they dwell during the time of plague. The borders of the Bosphorus are unrivalled by any other part in the world. Constantinople, which is also called Stamboul, suffers from two different plagues, fire, and disease, which two evils operate very strongly against its prosperity. This metropolis is the best spot on the globe, but the people are never so happy as those in Europe, on account



of the two above mentioned calamities. It is never free from plague. This disease, according to the opinion of European doctors, is an overheating of the blood, and is therefore generally less dangerous in cold climates. It breaks out alike on man, and animals, uncooked victuals, cloth, cotton, and woollen manufactures, fruits, vegetables, and flesh, in which articles it is ascertained to remain forty days. The articles which are not susceptible of plague are metals, coins, jewels, stones, and prepared or baked food, all which are not contagious, even if taken from a hand infected with the plague. There is no better safeguard against this disease than to be cautious in intercourse, and to abstain from contact. If you do not touch a man who has the plague, or any thing else infected by it, you can receive no injury. You may even be quite close to a man who has the plague, but so as you do not touch him, and keep a span's distance from him, you will not be endangered. As to the contagiousness of the plague, it seems to depend on the state of the constitution of the person. For instance, twenty persons might touch the pestilence and all take it,

or, on the other hand, perhaps not one, or only five of them may be infected, while the others escape. Moreover, it is sometimes very irregular and mysterious in its effects. It may be that a man may unknowingly have the plague about him, and may communicate it to another, while it produces no effect upon himself; whereas, at another time, by touching the least article, he may catch the disease. A few years ago a fine educated and rich young Turk, named Hassan Aga, left Smyrna for Europe, for the purpose of trading and travelling. On arriving at Malta, where, as has been already mentioned, the law is that every person coming from the East must perform quarantine, this young gentleman, with all the other passengers and the ship, performed his quarantine. After taking pratique, Hassan Aga landed at Valetta, and, while walking about the town, his eye fell upon a young lady, who had a face like a full moon, and by her he became bound, and fell into the chains of her love. However, after enduring a great deal on account of her love, he at last, by means of large sums of money, succeeded in entering her door. While conversing together in the height

of their amorous intercourse, Hassan, as a token of his love, and for the sake of increasing the friendship, presented his beloved with a diamond ring, which he had on his finger. The ring having been too large, by unforeseen predestination, he had tied a little thread around it, which, during the time of his performing quarantine, he had neglected to air or to have smoked; Hassan's constitution not being then susceptible, he did not take the plague; but now the ring being put on the young lady's finger, while the heat of her blood was at the highest, the plague immediately infected her, and she communicated it to the young man. The consequence was that both of them died soon after. From them the people of that place became infected, and infected others, and a great number of the people of the city of Malta were destroyed by the plague. Irrational animals may take the plague, and communicate it to man, but it does not affect them. This disease rages in the temperate climates. During the extreme cold and heat, it diminishes, and grows mild, but it does not entirely disappear. During our stay at Constantinople, it was raging dreadfully on ac-

count of its being the beginning of Capricornus; the roses were opening, and all the gardens and fields were dressed in the flowers of spring. It is on account of the temperate climate of this city that this dreadful disease never leaves it.

This plague (from which may God defend us!) breaks out as follows. After a person has touched any thing infected with the plague, and becomes himself infected, if he be in good health, he suddenly alters, and feels as if a glass of ice were thrown down his back; he is then immediately seized with a violent ague, which lasts for two hours; after which a high fever follows, which deprives him of his senses. If now his attendants and family wish to avoid coming in contact with him, they will bind him, and prevent his rising to do what he pleases. He will feel exceedingly thirsty, and will drink any quantity of water that may be given to him. The more he drinks the more the fever will increase, which continues from twelve to seventy hours, according to the constitution of the person. The plague then appears in him, which is of two kinds, internal and external. If it should be internal (God protect such!) in the

heart-level, he will instantly die; the external is attended with buboes, which appear in number from one to seven. The buboes are of two sorts, red and black. If they should be black, the man will undoubtedly die; but if they should be red, he will certainly recover. Should they be of both colours, the denser colour will be the stronger; but he who recovers will remain about three months ill, weak, and feverish. The larger and more obstinate the buboes may be, the longer it will remain, and the more the patient will suffer from it. The doctors and philosophers of Europe, with all their experiments and exertions, in the treatment of this disease, have not found a remedy besides abstaining from contact; they are, however, always endeavouring to make further investigations in regard to it. Ten years ago a celebrated philosopher of France was sent by the French government to Syria, accompanied by ten other clever medical men, in order to use his utmost ability and skill by examining this disease, to endeavour to find out by experiment some remedy against it, for the universal benefit of mankind. When the said doctor arrived at Beyrout, he began making inquiries in

regard to this disease, what sort of sickness it was ? While pursuing his investigations, he was informed that whenever this disease broke out in this region it spread every where, and no village escaped it, except one in Lebanon, called Zaffad, the inhabitants of which are never distressed by this calamity. When the plague rages at Beyrout, the people of Zaffad bring to it oil and other provisions, mix with the people in the town, carry on their business, and go back to their village in perfect safety. The wise doctor, after hearing this account, visited Lebanon, in company with his associates, and spent a few days at the village of Zaffad. He observed that the people here were generally occupied in the oil trade, that their principal food was oil, and their business was chiefly the pressing of olives, which they carry over the country for sale, and that their bodies and clothes were generally daubed with the same. By this the doctor learned that the oil was their protection, and he returned to Beyrout. At that time the plague was raging in Tripoli, in Syria, to which city the doctor proceeded with his associates : when they arrived near the city, they all clad themselves with

clothes steeped in oil, and thus entered Tripoli. They communicated quite freely with persons infected with the plague, and used their utmost skill in giving them whatever medicines they thought best, but none of them proved efficient. However, although they had communicated so freely with the diseased persons, even putting their hands into the matter of the plague, and into the wounds, yet they were not in the least affected by it. They daily dipped their clothes in oil, and had the same mixed with their food. After having been three months amidst the plague, and prescribing all sorts of medicines, which all proved in vain, the chief doctor said to his companions, "We have been so long in this place, and have done all that we could, which I am sorry to see has all turned out fruitless, that we must return to France without having succeeded in our object; yet, before we leave, I have one thing more in mind which I should like to try,—I think this matter of the plague may be similar to that of the small-pox, and perhaps if we inoculate with the matter just as we do for the small-pox, it may be effectual in modifying the disease." The disciples ap-



proved of this suggestion, and said, "Let us now try this by an experiment, which of course cannot but be exceedingly dangerous." The first assistant of the old doctor, who was the wisest among his disciples, said, "I will try this experiment upon myself." So they brought some matter from a man infected with the plague, and his companions opened a wound upon him, and put in the matter, just as in inoculation for the small-pox; the doctor, however, expired five hours after. The chief doctor and his disciples now learnt that this also was of no avail, and so returned to France, saying that this disease baffled all skill, and was incurable; but that the oil of olives was of invaluable use, before the breaking out of the disease. The plague does not communicate itself to liquids; and if any thing infected by it, should be put into vinegar, it will soon be freed from it. There are two remedies against the plague; one consists in keeping away from it, and in not holding communication with any person, and in fleeing to some place which is free from the disease, and where diseased persons are not allowed to enter. Those persons who happen to be in the

city, when the plague breaks out, and are obliged to remain there, must perform quarantine in their houses, and touch nobody, and, if possible, have no communication with others. As, however, every one will always require some important articles from the market, he must follow the quarantine regulations in regard to them, which are as follows:—He must, if possible, have in his house all necessary provisions, and give strict orders to his family not to move a step out of doors, and if any one should go out of the house not to receive him in again. He must not keep in the house any animals, such as dogs, cats, &c. What may be required from the market, ought to be sent for through the servant who is out of doors, which should be brought in a basket, and put into vinegar before being used. As to wearing apparel, it must be put into a copper vessel, and thoroughly smoked. Money must not be received, except it be first passed through vinegar; and all letters ought to be fumigated. Each letter should be smoked separately, for one letter may be enclosed in another, so that by fumigating the outer one, you cannot prevent the danger of the inner, which, therefore, ought to

be opened and fumigated also. By strictly observing these regulations of quarantine, and the will of God, the plague will not be communicated to the house. Cotton and wool are the articles most susceptible of plague, and the best remedies against it, are vinegar and oil. Clothes which may be infected with the plague, may be purified by being put into the open air. Rubies, and rings made of that stone, are very beneficial in time of plague ; this, however, rests with my informant to sustain. The people of Constantinople are careless in respect to the plague, and very few of them keep quarantine, on which account they are never free from it. Did not this disease carry off the population of Constantinople, the number of its inhabitants would be beyond enumeration. However, if I were to describe all the things connected with this magnificent city, I should have to write a book by itself ; therefore let what has been said suffice.

The day after we departed from Constantinople, we travelled all the way by the coast of Marmora, which is the beginning of the West Sea. The country was green, beautifully adorned

with the flowers of spring. There are here many fine fountains of water, and edifices pleasantly situated on the coast, and the roads in some degree resemble those of Europe. After travelling four parasangs we arrived at a village called Cartal, which is on the coast of the sea of Marmora, where we alighted at a decent habitation.

Wednesday the 24th, we started, and again travelled by the coast of Marmora, and through a beautiful green country and delightful climate, and after making five miles, arrived at a town called Zele. The cypress trees are here very plentiful.

Along the road to-day we met at every little distance a fountain of good water, flowing from a lion's head, by which was also a coffee-house for the convenience of travellers. This road is adapted for carriages. At this place we alighted at the Governor's house, took coffee, and spent the rest of the night, and on the following morning, Thursday the 11th, we left, and travelled by delightful mountains, from which pure streams of water were running, and having exceedingly healthy air.

As we passed the Straits of Marmora, we gazed at the enchanting sight the scene presented, and after making nine parasangs arrived at a beautiful city called Azruit, where we spent the night at the residence prepared for us. This city is pleasantly situated on the coast of Marmora, and is thickly populated. It contains some very distinguished palaces belonging to the Sultan. Pines and other large trees are plentiful here, in consequence of which they have a dockyard, and build ships of war for the Sultan. There are now two very fine vessels being just finished, each carrying sixty guns.

Friday the 12th, we departed. The weather was cloudy and rainy. The road was very muddy in some parts, and it was with difficulty that we crossed this plain, through which there are some fine and large rivers running; several parts of the road were paved with stones.

After travelling six parasangs, we arrived at Shauchak. The Tartar conducted us to the house of Achmet Aga Doochi Pashi, where we alighted, and rested a little, until the horses were changed. The Aga was very polite, and invited us to spend

the day with him, but as we were hastening on our journey, as soon as the horses were ready we turned our faces towards the road.

High mountains, covered with fine and sturdy trees, and large forests, now presented themselves along our road, from which refreshing streams of water were running. Snow was falling upon the mountains, and it continued raining upon us, until, after travelling six parasangs, we arrived at a village called Vuebeh. To-day we made twelve parasangs, and alighted at a comfortable lodge, where we rested the night.

Saturday the 13th, we started, and after travelling six parasangs, through a muddy road, we came to a village called Darakli. This day, the road having been tiresome and difficult, we were quite fatigued, and spent the night here. The natives of this village manufacture combs and spoons; the latter article they make very fine.

Sunday the 14th, we left this. The air was excessively cold; however, we continued our journey, and after making six parasangs, arrived at a town called Serahli. This town is situated in a

valley, amidst large mountains, covered with large and fine pines, from which delightful streams of water were running through the town, and in all the houses they have water-cocks.

We continued our journey through these mountains, which were almost entirely covered with snow, and after making in all about fifteen parasangs, three hours after sunset we arrived at a habitation called Amderley, where we alighted at a house. The governor of this place called upon us, with whom we conversed a little, and being fatigued with our journey, we soon after retired to bed.

Monday the 15th, we left this place, and ascended some high mountains, on which the snow was very thick and deep, and the pines very large and tall. After travelling eight parasangs we reached a village called Nevali, where we spent the night.

Tuesday the 16th, we rose to leave this place, but just as we were about mounting, we heard lamentable weeping in the house. Upon asking what was the matter, they said that the master of the house, and the head of the family, who was



last evening in perfect health, had died during the night, and that his family were bewailing him. We were quite astonished at this, and therefore hastened to leave the place. It was our general custom that wherever we alighted on our journey, we got the master of the house to prepare some provisions to carry with us for the journey of the following day, which we ate by some stream of water on the road. The day that we arrived and lodged with this family, the master of the house died, so no meat was prepared for our breakfast, and as none could be obtained in the place, we were obliged to do without. The Turks who accompanied us laid hold of the sweetmeats which were in the house prepared for the family, as was customary on like occasions. After travelling five parasangs we arrived at a village called Sari, where we stopped an hour, took a little coffee and departed. After making six parasangs more, we arrived at a town called Booyooh Bazar, where we spent the night. This day we travelled fifteen parasangs. To-day our travelling lay over barren hills, and with scarcity of water.

Wednesday the 17th, we left the place, and

after winding along for the distance of eight parasangs, arrived at a habitation called Ayash, which appertains to Ango ; and is situated between the hills. This town belongs to the Pashalic of Angora, and is a very cold place; however we spent the night in it.

Thursday the 18th, we mounted, and passed over very high mountains covered with snow, and then came to a fine large plain. After marching nine parasangs we arrived at Angora, which is one of the large and well known cities of this empire, and the residence of a Pasha. It is situated at the foot of a mountain, and is surrounded by three large and fortified castles. From the mountain there run fine streams, through the city, and through the houses. Here the fine Angora shawls are manufactured, and very fine gloves and stockings made, but sold at good prices. The fruits are superior, and the apples are particularly delicious. The seed was brought from England. The present Pasha of the Ottoman Government who resides here is the Sabek Sodar Azam, or the ex prime minister Azet Mohammed Pasha. The Pasha being informed of our arrival, afforded

us a good entertainment. In the evening Taymoor Meerza was taken ill with a violent attack of fever. The next day, Friday, we spent at this city, went to the baths, and visited the bazaar, and at night both myself and Wali felt exceedingly unwell. It was a very bad night.

Saturday the 20th. We left Angora, and after travelling eight parasangs, arrived at a village called Aloshe, where we alighted. The following accident occurred this day. One of the Tartars who was with us, used every day to start before us, in order to arrive sooner, and prepare horses, provisions, and lodgings for our reception. This man used to put any thing into his mouth, ripe or unripe, hot or cold, and used to carry about with him such a quantity of heavy useless arms, as a mule or camel could not carry. Having upon this occasion eaten a great quantity of cooked and uncooked flesh, he became extremely ill, so much so, that a good quantity of jalap would have been necessary for his relief. He was one of those men in fact, of whom it is said "He created man with a voracious appetite, and as craving as dogs." This man from eating so constantly and perpetually,

together with the fatigue of the journey, was seized with a violent cholic. When we arrived at this place, we found this poor fellow lying on the ground, suffering exceedingly from the stomach ache, with a crowd of the natives of the village around him. They had a bag full of mould, from which two men, who were sitting beside him, were giving him into his mouth handful after handful to swallow; we were exceedingly surprised at this, and asked them the reason why they gave him such a quantity of earth? They replied, "This man has the heart ache, and we are now curing him with this earth, which comes from the holy cemetery of this place, the dust of which cures any illness." Our hearts now felt for the sufferings of this man, both on account of the cholic and his being physicked in such a manner with holy dust; for we conceived the man would die before the lapse of five minutes. We immediately reproved the people, and drove them away with their holy medicine, and Taymoor Meerza, from his medicine chest, gave him a good dose of jalap and other medicines. The medicine soon operated, and by vomiting what he had lately been stuffing, the

man was restored, so as to be able to follow when we started.

Sunday the 21st. We left this, and ascended a very high mountain, entirely covered with snow, over which we travelled for three hours. The snow was so deep that the horses sank into it up to their breasts, and it was with great difficulty that we reached a town called Kaaluakak. The governor of this place, Hadji Mustapha Bey, received us into his house, and showed us every token of friendship and civility. This town is situated in the lap of the mountain, and contains several ancient buildings. It was formerly a very strong castle, and was taken by Prince Koorkan, who fortified it. At present it has not the fortifications that it had once. In the summer season, the water from the snow runs through its delightful gardens. Hadji Mohammed Radina, a Persian, from Kazween, who is residing in this place, came and offered us his services. After spending an hour at the governor's, we changed horses and mounted. We then crossed a river called Darmac, in which we observed some very strange and curious fish of every imaginable colour. We continued travelling till two hours

after sunset, and then alighted at a village called Sleihi Shamieh. This day we travelled fifteen parasangs, and spent the rest of the night here.

Monday the 22nd. We started, and travelled the whole day; so that by three hours after sunset we had made the distance of fifteen parasangs. We then arrived at an habitation called Amsenkarley, where we alighted at the house of the governor, Säid Ali Mina, a very condescending, friendly person, who offered us all his services and hospitality.

Tuesday the 23rd. About noon we left this place, and, after making eight parasangs, arrived at a place called Layha. The principal Dewag, or officer of this town called Ismael Bey, a very affable man, and extremely fond of the chase, presented us with a very fine falcon trained to hunting. It is said that in these mountains this bird abounds. It is taken when young, and brought up for the chase. The people of this place are hunters, and game hereabouts is plentiful.

Wednesday the 24th. We started, and after travelling six parasangs, arrived at a village called Deway, where the chief man, who is called Ali Bey,

offered us every kind of service. This place is situated in the mountain, which is beautifully covered with flowers. And on the 5th of Maharen we reached Bagdad.

THE END.













PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

D	Najaf Quli Mirza
975	Journal of a residence
N319	in England
1839a	

UTL AT DOWNSVIEW



D RANGE BAY SHLF POS ITEM C  
39 14 12 05 15 001 1